

# **Panasonic**

DIGITAL SUPER HYBRID SYSTEM

## *User Manual*

Model No. **KX-TD500**



**Please read this manual before connecting  
the Digital Super Hybrid System.**

Thank you for purchasing the Panasonic Telephone System.

## *System Components*

	<b>Model No.</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Service Unit</b>	KX-TD500	Digital Super Hybrid System
<b>Telephone</b>	KX-T7220	Digital Proprietary Telephone
	KX-T7230	Digital Proprietary Telephone with Display
	KX-T7235	Digital Proprietary Telephone with Large Display
	KX-T7250	Digital Proprietary Telephone
	KX-T7420	Digital Proprietary Telephone
	KX-T7425	Digital Proprietary Telephone
	KX-T7431	Digital Proprietary Telephone with Display
	KX-T7433	Digital Proprietary Telephone with Display
	KX-T7436	Digital Proprietary Telephone with Large Display
	KX-T7450	Digital Proprietary Telephone
<b>Optional Equipment</b>	KX-T7240	Digital DSS Console
	KX-T7440	Digital DSS Console
	KX-T7441	Digital DSS Console with Answer and Release buttons
<b>User-supplied Equipment</b>	Single Line Telephones	

### **For your future reference**

SERIAL NO. \_\_\_\_\_ DATE OF PURCHASE \_\_\_\_\_  
(found on the bottom of the unit)

NAME OF DEALER \_\_\_\_\_

DEALER'S ADDRESS \_\_\_\_\_

### **Copyright:**

This manual is copyrighted by Kyushu Matsushita Electric Co., Ltd. (KME). You may print out this manual solely for internal use with TD500. Except above, you may not reproduce this manual in any form, in whole or part, without the prior written consent of KME and its licensee.

© Kyushu Matsushita Electric Co., Ltd. 1999

# Cautions

## When using the KX-T7200 and KX-T7400 series, keep the following conditions in mind:

- If there is any trouble, unplug the extension line and connect a known working phone. If the known working phone operates properly, have the defective phone repaired by a specified Panasonic Factory Service Center. If the known working phone does not operate properly, check the Digital Super Hybrid System and the internal extension wiring.
- Keep the unit away from heating appliances and electrical noise generating devices such as fluorescent lamps and motors.
- The unit should be kept free of dust, moisture and vibration, and should not be exposed to direct sunlight.
- Do not use benzine, thinner, or any abrasive powder to clean the cabinet. Wipe it with a soft cloth.
- Do not use any handset other than a Panasonic handset.

## When you ship the product

Carefully pack and send it prepaid, adequately insured and preferably in the original carton. Attach a postage-paid letter, detailing the symptom, to the outside of the carton. DO NOT send the product to the Executive or Regional Sales offices. They are NOT equipped to make repairs.

## Product service

Panasonic Servicenters for this product are listed in the servicenter directory. Consult with your authorized Panasonic dealer for detailed instructions.

## WARNING:

**TO PREVENT FIRE OR SHOCK HAZARD, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS PRODUCT TO RAIN OR ANY TYPE OF MOISTURE.**

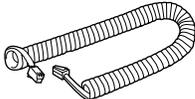
## NOTE

If you connect the Panasonic Wireless System (model KX-TD336900) to the Digital Super Hybrid System, the following features do not work with the Wireless System:

- Call Forwarding — Follow Me
- Limited Call Duration (See Installation Manual)

## Accessory Order Information

- Replacement parts and accessories are available through your local authorized parts distributor.
- For ordering accessories, call toll free: 1-800-332-5368.

Part No.	Picture	Description	Comment
<b>KX-J07W/B</b> <b>KX-J15W/B</b> <b>KX-J25W/B</b>		Handset cord	7feet 15feet 25feet

W: White  
B : Black

# *Introduction*

---

## *Who Should Use This Manual*

This manual is designed for users of Digital Super Hybrid System KX-TD500. It is to be used after the system is installed and System Programming is completed. The focus is Digital Proprietary Telephones (DPTs); KX-T7220/KX-T7230/KX-T7235/KX-T7250/KX-T7420/KX-T7425/KX-T7431/KX-T7433/KX-T7436/KX-T7450, Digital DSS Consoles; KX-T7240/KX-T7440/KX-T7441, Single Line Telephones (SLTs) and their features. The step-by-step procedures required to activate each feature are discussed in detail. Illustrations of the KX-TD500 system and the required System Programming are provided under separate cover in the Installation Manual.

## *Construction of This Manual*

This manual consists of the following sections:

### *(Section 1) DPT Overview*

Provides configuration information on DPTs. It provides an illustration of each telephone, identifies their feature buttons, supplies background information on these feature buttons, and provides initial settings.

### *(Section 2) Station Programming*

Provides the steps required to assign features to DPT flexible buttons and to the DPT system.

### *(Section 3) User Programming*

Provides the steps required to assign some features to the system.

### *(Section 4) Station Features and Operation (PT/SLT)*

Provides background information on the PT features and lists the steps required to activate each feature.

### *(Section 5) DSS Console Features*

Provides configuration information on the DSS Console. It gives background information on the DSS Console features and lists the steps required to activate each feature.

### *(Section 6) Appendix*

Provides Display Examples, a Feature Number List, Tone List, and other information are explained in this section.

# *Introduction*

---

## *Features and Capabilities*

The KX-TD500 System is a sophisticated and powerful system that satisfy just what you expect of an office communications system. Some of the remarkable features are listed below. “\*” are only available for the KX-T7235 and KX-T7436.

- **Automatic Callback Busy (Camp-On)** informs you when the selected CO line or the called party becomes idle.
- **Call Log, Incoming (— Option)** allows you to confirm the incoming CO call information on the display. You can also call back the caller by selecting one of the memorized numbers. This feature is available only for the KX-T7230, KX-T7235, KX-T7433 and KX-T7436.
- **Call Log, Outgoing\*** redials by selecting one of the last five CO calls you made, according to the number information on the display.
- **Conference, Unattended** When you are in a conference with two outside parties, you can leave the conference and allow the other two parties to continue the conversation. You can also return to the conference.
- **Data Line Security** prohibits various tones, such as call waiting tone or hold recall tone, from sounding at the extension in the data communication mode. It also blocks overriding by other extensions, such as Executive Busy Override.
- **Doorphone and Door Opener (— Option)** enables the conversation between you and a visitor at door. You can also unlock the door a few seconds from your phone.
- **Executive Busy Override** allows you to enter into an existing conversation at an extension/CO line.
- **Full One-Touch Dialing** allows you to have easy access to a desired party or system feature by pressing just one button.
- **Message Waiting** allows you to leave a message notification for another extension. The message waiting lamp (MESSAGE indicator) gives a visual indication that a message notification has been received.
- **Paralleled Telephone Connection** allows you to connect your DPT in parallel with an SLT. Each telephone can have the same extension number so that you can use either telephone. If the eXtra Device Port (XDP) feature is available through System Programming, each telephone can be connected to the same extension port but have different extension numbers so that they can act as completely different extensions.
- **System Feature Access Menu\*** allows you to access various features easily by following the display on the large LCD and pressing corresponding buttons.
- **VPS Integration ( — Option)** enables forwarding any incoming call to Voice Mail. Recording or Playing back the message(s) is also available. To use Voice Mail services, installing a Voice Processing System (VPS) is required.

# *Introduction*

---

## ***Terms used in the Descriptions***

### ***Feature Numbers***

A feature number is an access code for various functions when programming or executing features using proprietary or single line telephones connected to the system. You can access available features by dialing the corresponding feature number (and additional number, if required).

There are two types of feature numbers as follows:

- Flexible feature number
- Fixed feature number

While fixed feature numbers cannot be changed, flexible feature numbers can be changed. Refer to the Installation Manual for details. In this manual, the default numbers are used to describe each operation and illustration. Use the new programmed number if you have changed a flexible feature number. The lists of fixed numbers and default flexible feature numbers are shown in the Appendix (Section 6).

***If you use a dial pulse (DP) type single line telephone (SLT);***

It is not possible to access features that have “\*” or “#” in their feature numbers.

### ***Illustration***

All illustrations of DPTs used in the User Manual are KX-T7235's.

### ***Tones***

Various tone types, such as Confirmation tone, Dial tone, Call Waiting tone, etc. are explained in the Appendix (Section 6).

### ***Display***

The display examples are in each operation step, if required. The display information list is in the Appendix for your convenience.

### ***Programming References***

The related and required programming titles are noted for your reference. System Programming should be done with PC. Station Programming is individual programming at your own proprietary telephone (PT). You can customize the extension to your needs using any type of proprietary telephone.

### ***Feature References***

The related feature titles are noted for your reference.

# Table of Contents

---

## Section 1 DPT Overview .....1-1

### 1.1 Configuration .....1-2

Location of Controls .....	1-3
Connection .....	1-12
Feature Buttons .....	1-13
Fixed Buttons.....	1-13
Flexible Buttons.....	1-16
Line Access Buttons .....	1-17
Initial Setting for KX-T7400 Series .....	1-19
Display Contrast Adjustment.....	1-19
When using the headset.....	1-20
Changing the ringing tone of a CO button/INTERCOM button .....	1-20
Volume Control — Handset Receiver/Headset/Ringer/Speaker .....	1-20
Initial Setting for KX-T7200 Series .....	1-23
Display Contrast Adjustment (KX-T7230 and KX-T7235 only).....	1-23
When using the headset.....	1-23
Changing the ringing tone of a CO button/INTERCOM button .....	1-23
Volume Control — Handset Receiver/Headset/Ringer/Speaker .....	1-24
LED Indication .....	1-26

## Section 2 Station Programming.....2-1

### 2.1 Station Programming Instructions .....2-2

### 2.2 Station Programming .....2-7

Bilingual Display Selection .....	2-7
Call Waiting Tone Type Assignment .....	2-8
Flexible Button Assignment .....	2-9
Account Button.....	2-9
Alarm Button .....	2-10
Answer Button .....	2-11
Conference (CONF) Button .....	2-12
DAY/NIGHT Button .....	2-12
Direct Station Selection (DSS) Button.....	2-13
FWD/DND Button.....	2-14
Group-CO (G-CO) Button.....	2-14
Live Call Screening (LCS) Button .....	2-15
Live Call Screening (LCS) Cancel Button.....	2-15
Log-In / Log-Out Button .....	2-16
Loop-CO (L-CO) Button.....	2-16
Message Waiting (MESSAGE) Button .....	2-17

# Table of Contents

---

One-Touch Dialing Button .....	2-18
Phantom Button .....	2-19
Primary Directory Number (PDN) Button .....	2-20
Release Button .....	2-21
SAVE Button .....	2-22
Secondary Directory Number (SDN)Button .....	2-23
Single-CO (S-CO) Button .....	2-24
Tone Through Button .....	2-25
Two-Way Record Button .....	2-26
Two-Way Transfer Button .....	2-27
Voice Mail (VM) Transfer Button .....	2-28
Full One-Touch Dialing Assignment.....	2-29
Handset / Headset Selection .....	2-30
Initial Display Selection .....	2-30
Intercom Alert Assignment.....	2-31
Live Call Screening Mode Set.....	2-32
PDN/SDN Button Delayed Ringing Assignment.....	2-33
Phantom Button Ringing On/Off Assignment.....	2-34
Preferred Line Assignment — Incoming.....	2-35
No Line Preference — Incoming .....	2-35
Ringing Line Preference — Incoming .....	2-36
Prime Line Preference — Incoming .....	2-36
Preferred Line Assignment — Outgoing.....	2-37
No Line Preference — Outgoing .....	2-37
Idle Line Preference — Outgoing .....	2-38
Prime Line Preference — Outgoing.....	2-38
Ringling Tone Selection for CO Buttons .....	2-39
Ringling Tone Selection for INTERCOM Button.....	2-40
Self-Extension Number Confirmation .....	2-41
Station Programming Data Default Set.....	2-41
Station Speed Dialing Number/Name Assignment [KX-T7235/KX-T7431/KX-T7433/KX-T7436 only] .....	2-42

## **Section 3      User Programming.....3-1**

### **3.1 User Programming Instructions.....3-2**

General Programming Instructions.....	3-2
Programming Methods .....	3-6

### **3.2 User Programming .....3-8**

[000] Date and Time Set.....	3-8
[001] System Speed Dialing Number Set .....	3-10
[002] System Speed Dialing Name Set.....	3-12

---

# Table of Contents

---

[004] Extension Name Set.....	3-14
[005] Flexible CO Button Assignment.....	3-16
[006] Caller ID Dial Set .....	3-19
[007] Caller ID Name Set.....	3-21
[008] Absent Messages.....	3-23
[009] Quick Dial Number Set .....	3-25

## **Section 4 Station Features and Operation (PT/SLT) .....4-1**

### **4.1 Before Operating .....4-2**

### **4.2 Basic Operations .....4-4**

Making Calls.....	4-4
Receiving Calls.....	4-6

### **4.3 Station Features and Operation .....4-7**

#### **A**

Absent Message Capability .....	4-7
Account Code Entry .....	4-9
Alternate Calling — Ring / Voice .....	4-13
*ANSWER and RELEASE buttons Operation .....	4-15
*Answering, Direct Trunk .....	4-17
Automatic Callback Busy (Camp-On) .....	4-18

#### **B**

*Background Music (BGM).....	4-21
Busy Station Signaling (BSS) .....	4-22

#### **C**

Call Forwarding — SUMMARY .....	4-24
Call Forwarding — All Calls .....	4-26
Call Forwarding — Busy .....	4-27
Call Forwarding — No Answer .....	4-28
Call Forwarding — Busy / No Answer.....	4-29
Call Forwarding — to CO or TIE Line.....	4-31
Call Forwarding — Follow Me.....	4-34
Call Forwarding — CANCEL.....	4-36
Call Hold.....	4-38
*Call Hold, Exclusive.....	4-40
Call Hold Retrieve.....	4-42
Call Park .....	4-44

# Table of Contents

---

Call Pickup, CO Line .....	4-46
Call Pickup, Directed.....	4-47
Call Pickup, Group .....	4-48
Call Pickup Deny .....	4-49
Call Splitting.....	4-51
Call Transfer — to CO .....	4-53
Call Transfer — to Extension.....	4-55
Call Transfer — to TIE Line .....	4-59
Call Waiting .....	4-61
Call Waiting from Central Office .....	4-65
Conference.....	4-67
*Conference, Unattended .....	4-71

## D

Data Line Security .....	4-73
Direct Inward System Access (DISA).....	4-75
Do Not Disturb (DND).....	4-80
Do Not Disturb (DND) Override.....	4-83
Doorphone Call.....	4-85

## E

Electronic Station Lockout .....	4-88
Emergency Call .....	4-90
End-to-End DTMF Signaling (Tone Through).....	4-91
*Executive Busy Override — Barge-in.....	4-93
Executive Busy Override — Extension.....	4-95
Executive Busy Override Deny .....	4-97
External Feature Access.....	4-98
*External Modem Control .....	4-100

## F

*Flash.....	4-101
Full One-Touch Dialing.....	4-102

## H

*Handset Microphone Mute .....	4-103
*Hands-free Answerback.....	4-104
*Hands-free Operation.....	4-105

## I

Inter Office Calling.....	4-106
---------------------------	-------

## L

*Live Call Screening (LCS) .....	4-109
Lockout .....	4-117
Log-In / Log-Out .....	4-118

# Table of Contents

---

<b>M</b>	
Message Waiting.....	4-120
*Microphone Mute .....	4-124
<b>N</b>	
Night Service On/Off.....	4-125
<b>O</b>	
Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA) .....	4-129
*Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA), Whisper .....	4-133
*Off-Hook Monitor.....	4-137
*One-Touch Dialing .....	4-139
Operator Call .....	4-140
Outward Dialing, Trunk Access — SUMMARY .....	4-141
Trunk Access, Direct .....	4-143
Trunk Access, Idle .....	4-144
*Trunk Access, Individual Trunk .....	4-145
Trunk Access, Trunk Group .....	4-146
<b>P</b>	
Paging — SUMMARY.....	4-147
Paging — All .....	4-148
Paging — External .....	4-149
Paging — Group.....	4-151
Paging — ANSWER .....	4-153
*Paging Deny.....	4-154
Paging and Transfer .....	4-156
Paralleled Telephone Connection .....	4-159
*PDN Call.....	4-161
Phantom Extension .....	4-163
Pickup Dialing (Hot Line).....	4-167
*Privacy Release.....	4-169
Pulse to Tone Conversion.....	4-171
<b>Q</b>	
Quick Dialing .....	4-172
<b>R</b>	
Redial, Last Number.....	4-173
*Redial, Saved Number .....	4-174
Released Link Operation .....	4-175
*Ringing Transfer .....	4-176

# Table of Contents

---

## S

*Secret Dialing .....	4-177
Station Program Clear .....	4-178
Station Speed Dialing .....	4-180
System Speed Dialing.....	4-182

## T

Timed Reminder (Wake-Up Call) .....	4-184
Toll Restriction Override .....	4-188
Toll Restriction Override by Account Code Entry .....	4-188
Toll Restriction Override for System Speed Dialing .....	4-189
Trunk Answer From Any Station (TAFAS).....	4-190
*Two-Way Recording into Voice Mail .....	4-192

## U

UCD Login Monitor .....	4-194
UCD Monitor Mode .....	4-195

## V

*Voice Mail Transfer .....	4-196
VPS Integration .....	4-197

## W

Walking COS .....	4-200
Walking Station .....	4-202

## **4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features .....4-204**

Background Music (BGM) — External .....	4-205
Control of Call Log Incoming, Log Lock .....	4-208
Live Call Screening Password Control .....	4-209
Local Alarm Indication .....	4-210
Outgoing Message (OGM) Record/Playback.....	4-213
Remote DND (Do Not Disturb) Control .....	4-222
Remote FWD (Call Forwarding) Cancel - Once.....	4-225
Remote Station Lock Control.....	4-228
Timed Reminder, Remote (Wake-Up Call) .....	4-229
Trunk Busy-out Setting.....	4-236
Trunk Route Control.....	4-242

# Table of Contents

---

<b>4.5 Special Display Features .....</b>	<b>4-244</b>
Call Forwarding / Do Not Disturb.....	4-245
Call Information Display .....	4-247
Call Log, Incoming .....	4-249
Call Log Incoming, Log Lock .....	4-254
Call Log, Outgoing.....	4-256
KX-T7235 Display Features .....	4-257
Call Directory .....	4-259
System Feature Access Menu.....	4-260
KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features .....	4-269
Call Directory .....	4-272
System Feature Access Menu.....	4-277

## **Section 5      DSS Console Features .....**

### **5-1**

<b>5.1 Configuration .....</b>	<b>5-2</b>
Location of Controls.....	5-3
Feature Buttons.....	5-5
<b>5.2 DSS Console Features .....</b>	<b>5-6</b>
Station Programming.....	5-6
Account Button .....	5-6
Answer Button.....	5-7
Conference (CONF) Button .....	5-8
Direct Station Selection (DSS) Button.....	5-9
FWD/DND Button.....	5-10
Group-CO (G-CO) Button.....	5-11
Live Call Screening (LCS) Button .....	5-12
Live Call Screening (LCS) Cancel Button.....	5-12
Message Waiting (MESSAGE) Button .....	5-13
One-Touch Dialing Button .....	5-14
One-Touch Access Assignment for System Features.....	5-15
Release Button.....	5-16
SAVE Button .....	5-17
Single-CO (S-CO) Button .....	5-18
Tone Through Button .....	5-19
Two-Way Record Button .....	5-20
Two-Way Transfer Button .....	5-21
Voice Mail (VM) Transfer Button.....	5-22
Direct Station Dialing.....	5-25
One-Touch Dialing .....	5-25
One-Touch Access for System Features .....	5-25
Call Transfer .....	5-26

# *Table of Contents*

---

ANSWER and RELEASE Buttons Operation .....	5-27
Monitoring an outside line activity .....	5-28

## **Section 6      Appendix .....**

Display Examples .....	6-2
Feature Number List.....	6-9
Tone List .....	6-14
Troubleshooting .....	6-16

# *Section 1*

## *DPT Overview*

### *Contents*

<b>1.1</b>	<b><i>Configuration</i></b> .....	<b>1-2</b>
	<i>Location of Controls</i> .....	1-3
	<i>Connection</i> .....	1-12
	<i>Feature Buttons</i> .....	1-13
	<i>Initial Setting for KX-T7400 Series</i> .....	1-19
	<i>Initial Setting for KX-T7200 Series</i> .....	1-23
	<i>LED Indication</i> .....	1-26

**<Note>**

All illustrations used in the initial setting are based on the model KX-T7235.

# 1.1

# Configuration

Panasonic Digital Proprietary Telephones (DPTs) are available to utilize various features of the KX-TD500 System, in addition to supporting basic telephone services (making and receiving calls).

There are nine DPT models.

## ■ KX-T7400 Series

	<b>KX-T7420</b>	<b>KX-T7425</b>	<b>KX-T7431</b>	<b>KX-T7433</b>	<b>KX-T7436</b>
<b>Display</b>	None	None	16 char./line, 1-line LCD	Tilt-up, 16 char./line, 3-line LCD	Tilt-up, 24 char./line, 6-line LCD
<b>Soft Buttons and Function Buttons</b>	None	None	None	3 Soft Buttons	3 Soft Buttons/ 10 Function Buttons
<b>Jog Dial</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>CO Buttons</b>	12	24	12	24	24
<b>Fixed Feature Buttons</b>	Refer to the “Fixed Buttons” in this section.				

## ■ KX-T7200 Series

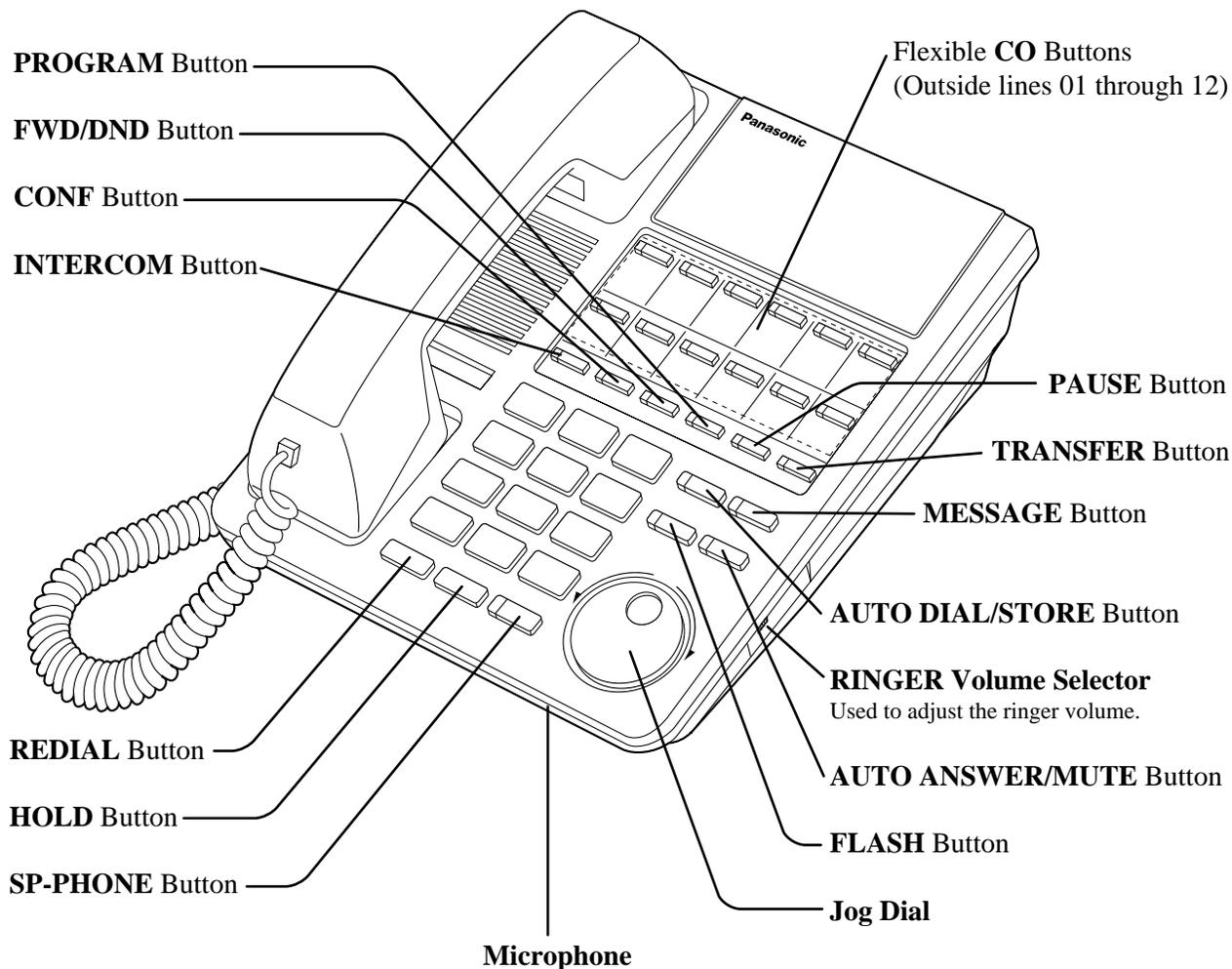
	<b>KX-T7220</b>	<b>KX-T7230</b>	<b>KX-T7235</b>	<b>KX-T7250</b>
<b>Display</b>	None	16 char./line, 2-line LCD	Tilt-up, 24 char./line, 6-line LCD	None
<b>Soft Buttons and Function Buttons</b>	None	3 Soft Buttons	3 Soft Buttons/ 10 Function Buttons	None
<b>Speakerphone</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Monitor only
<b>CO Buttons</b>	24	24	12	6
<b>Fixed Feature Buttons</b>	Refer to the “Fixed Buttons” in this section.			

# 1.1

# Configuration

## Location of Controls

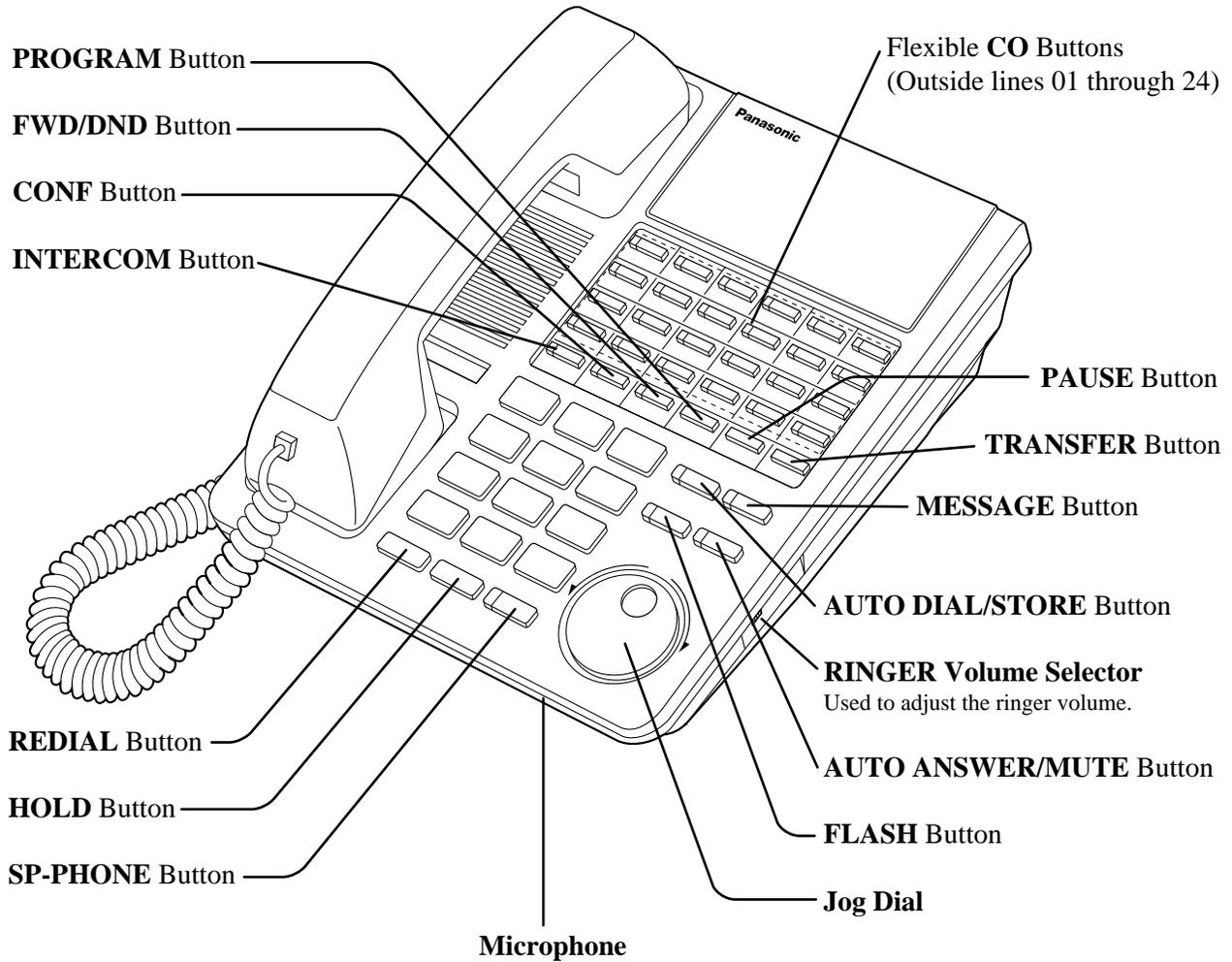
### ■ KX-T7420



# 1.1

# Configuration

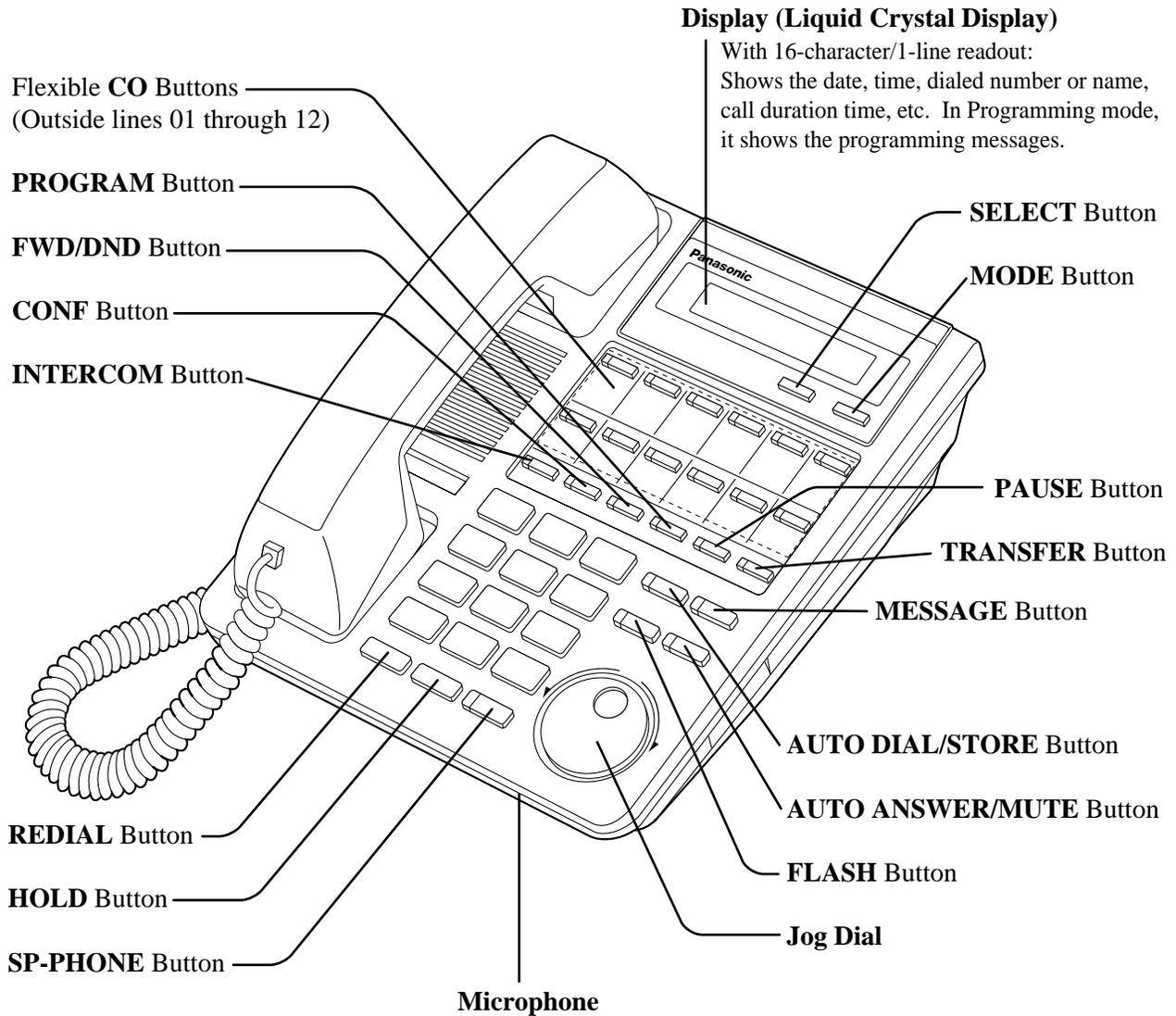
## ■ KX-T7425



# 1.1

# Configuration

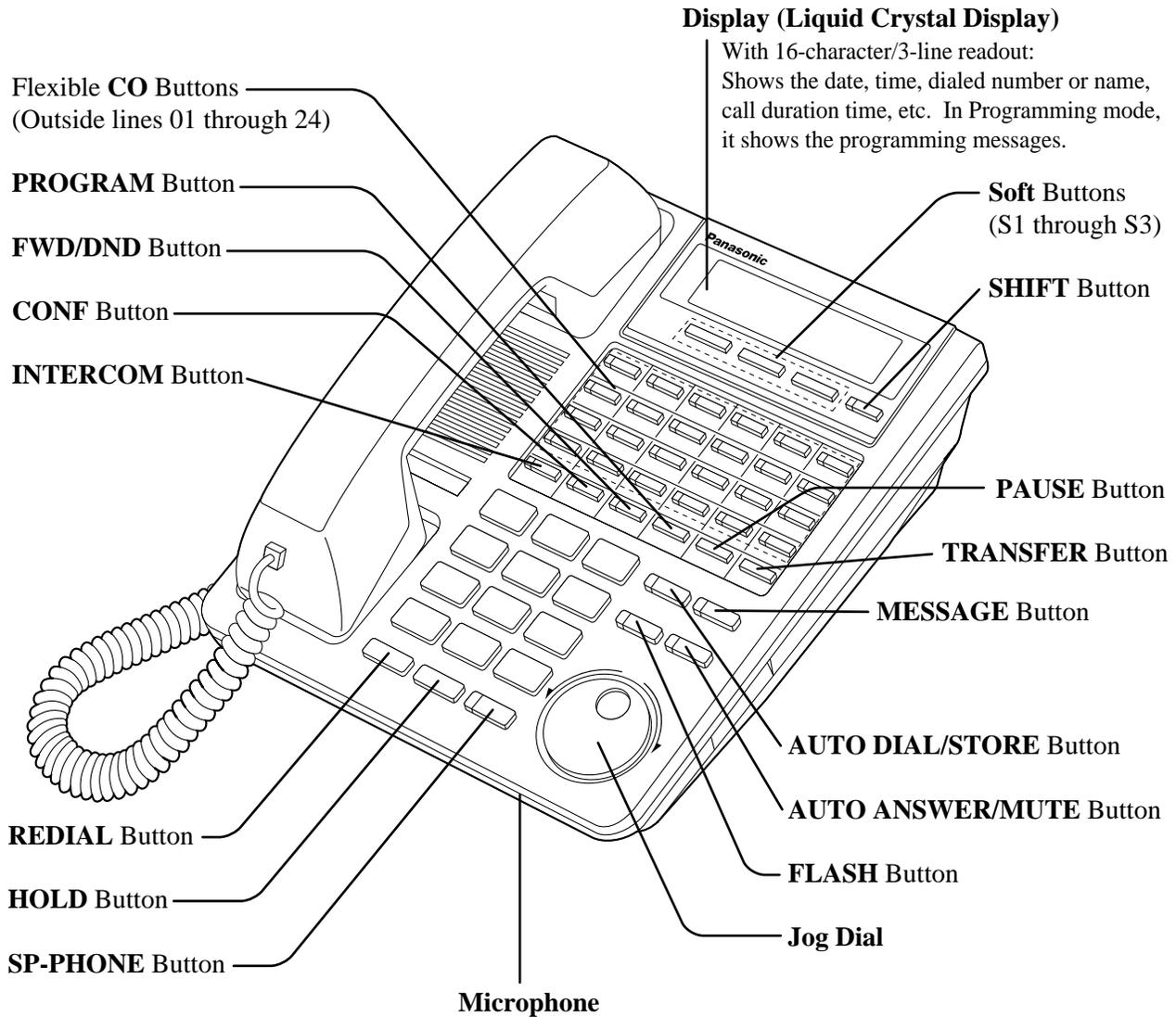
## ■ KX-T7431



# 1.1

# Configuration

## ■ KX-T7433



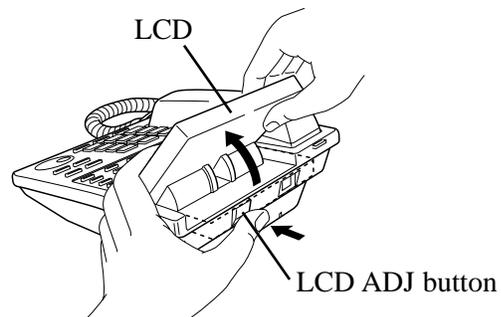
### To lift or set down the display:

#### - To lift the display

- 1 Press the LCD ADJ button.
- 2 Lift up the display.

#### - To set down the display

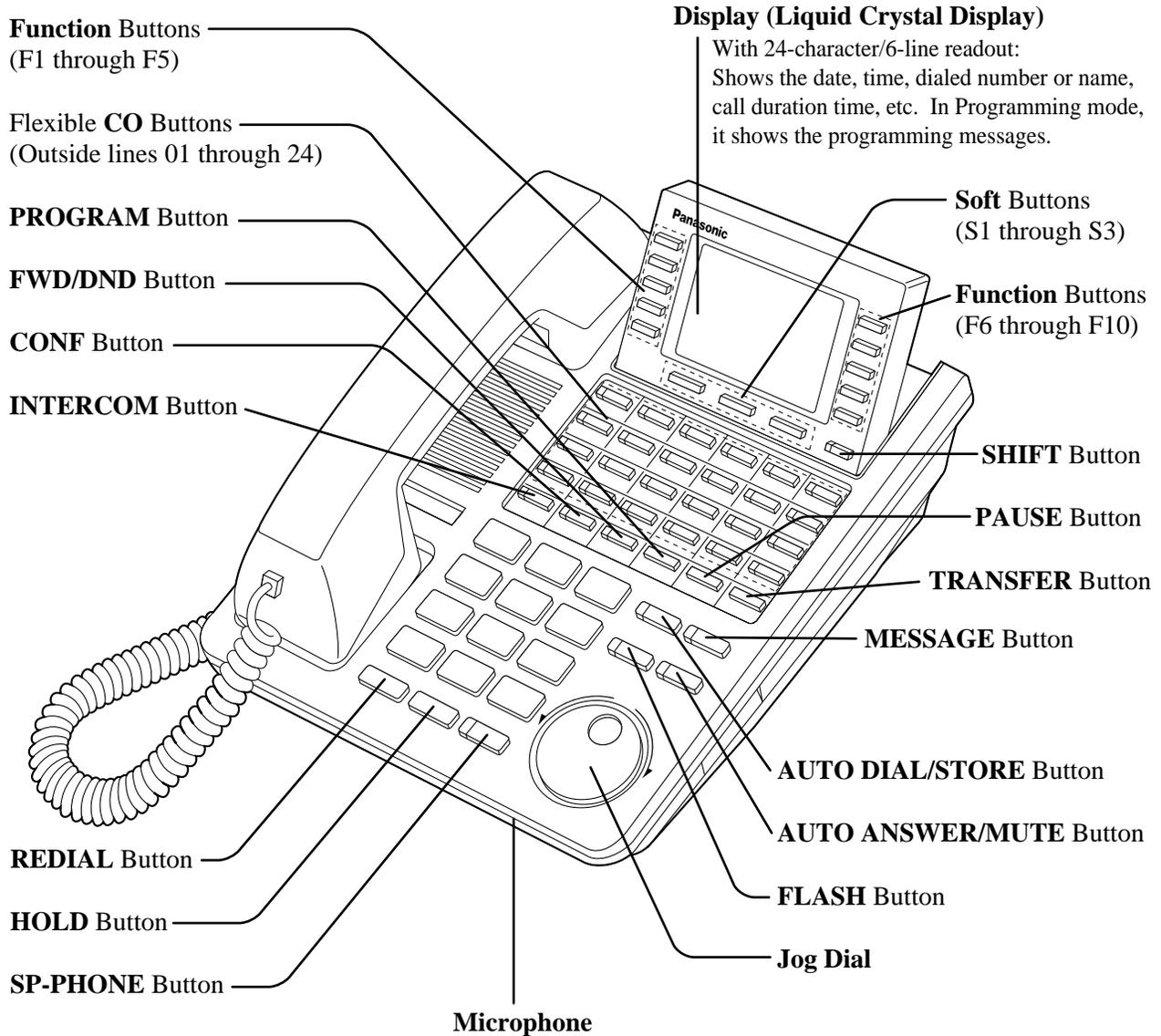
- 1 Press the LCD ADJ button.
- 2 Press down the display.



# 1.1

# Configuration

## ■ KX-T7436



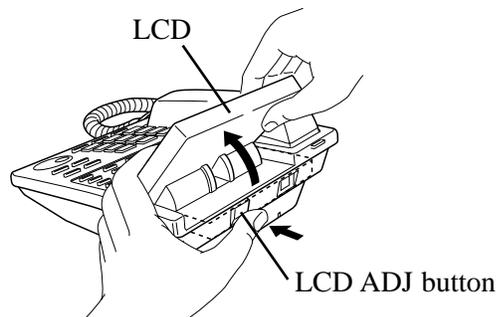
### To lift or set down the display:

#### – To lift the display

- 1 Press the LCD ADJ button.
- 2 Lift up the display.

#### – To set down the display

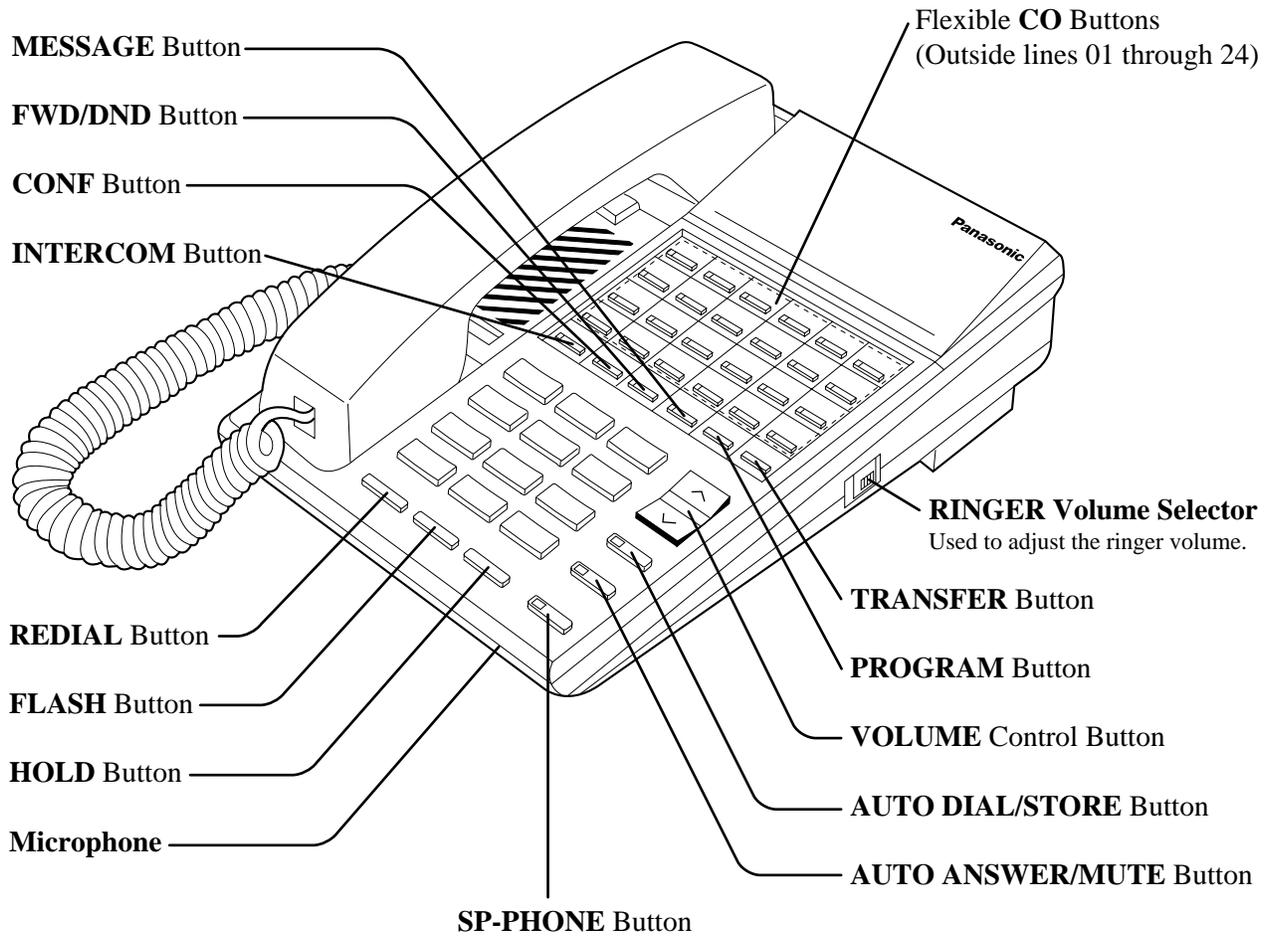
- 1 Press the LCD ADJ button.
- 2 Press down the display.



# 1.1

# Configuration

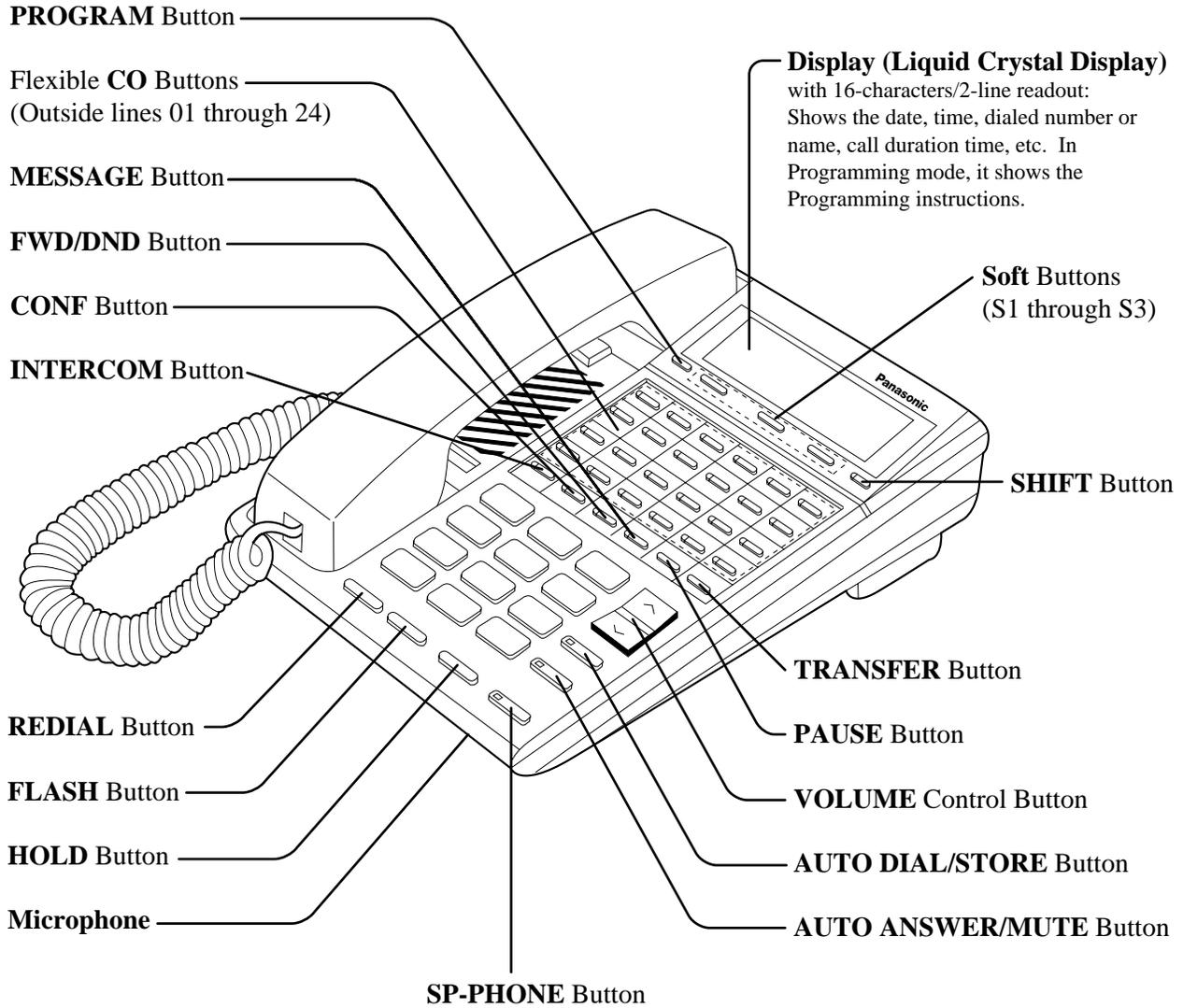
## ■ KX-T7220



# 1.1

# Configuration

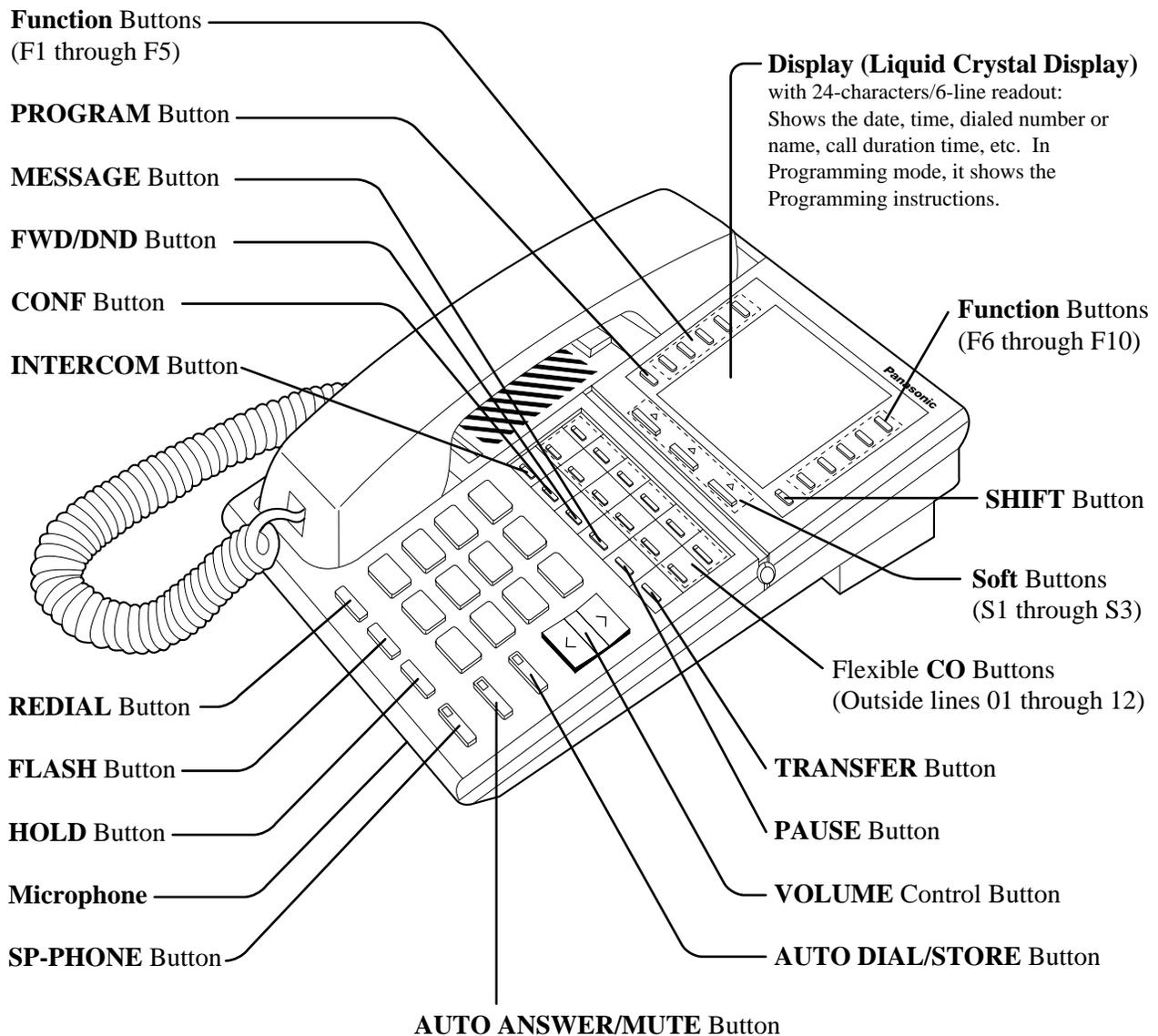
## ■ KX-T7230



# 1.1

# Configuration

## ■ KX-T7235



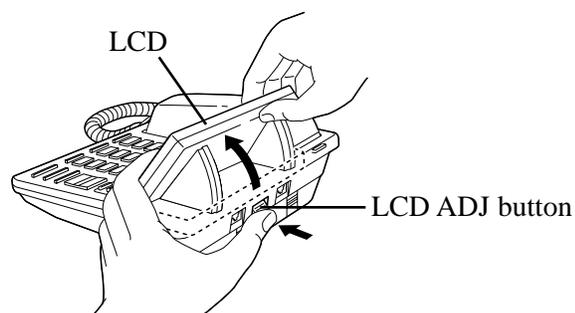
### To lift or set down the display:

#### – To lift the display

- 1 Press the LCD ADJ button.
- 2 Lift up the display.

#### – To set down the display

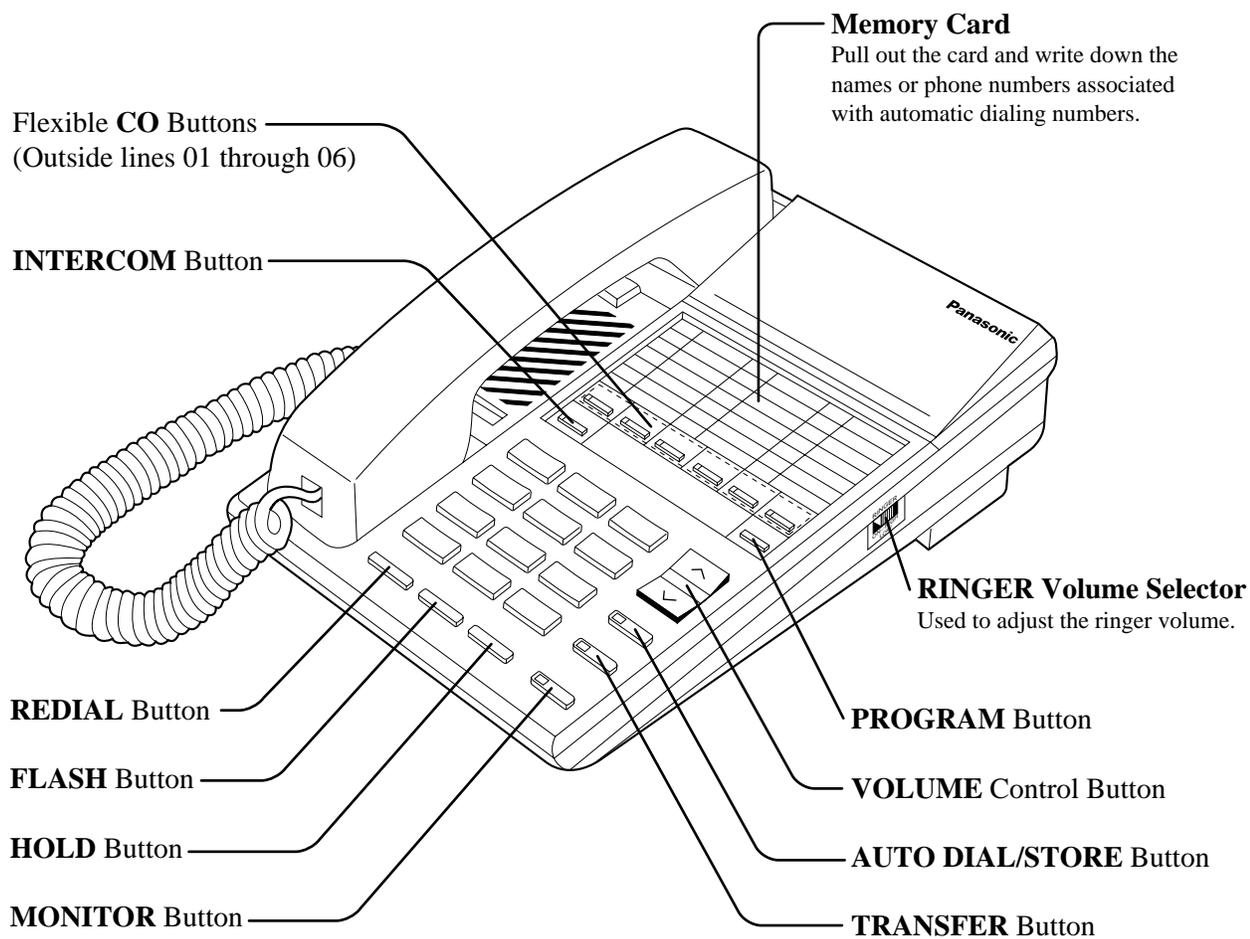
- 1 Press the LCD ADJ button.
- 2 Press down the display.



# 1.1

# Configuration

## ■ KX-T7250



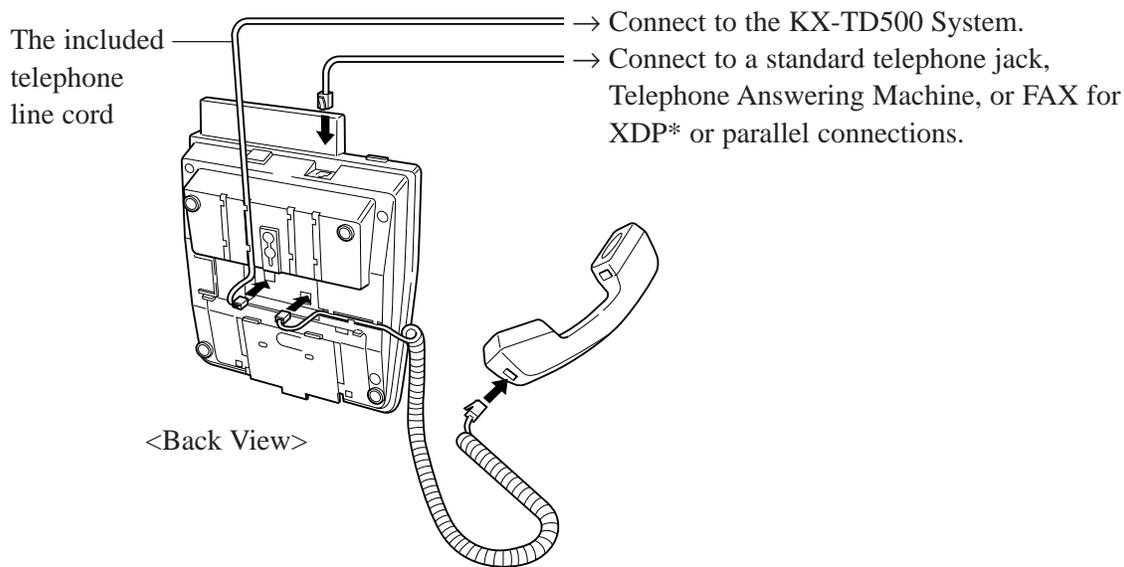
# 1.1

# Configuration

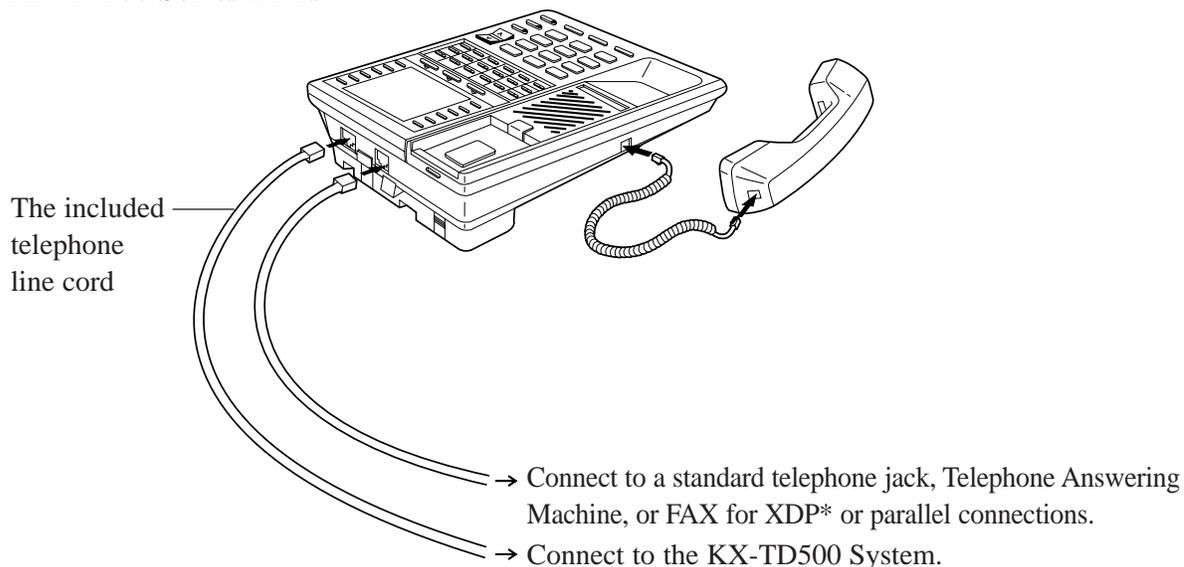
## Connection

Connect as shown.

### ■ KX-T7400 Series DPTs



### ■ KX-T7200 Series DPTs



\* XDP (eXtra Device Port) expands the number of telephones available in the system by allowing an extension port to contain two telephones. For more details, please consult with your dealer.

# 1.1

# Configuration

## Feature Buttons

Digital proprietary telephones (DPTs) have the following types of Feature Buttons:

- **Fixed Buttons**
- **Flexible Buttons**

## Fixed Buttons

Fixed buttons have specific functions permanently assigned to them. These default function assignments cannot be changed. The following table lists the fixed buttons located on each DPT model.

Feature Button	T7420	T7425	T7431	T7433	T7436	T7220	T7230	T7235	T7250
AUTO ANSWER/MUTE	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
AUTO DIAL/STORE	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓†
CONF	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
FLASH	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Function buttons					✓			✓	
FWD/DND	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
HOLD	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
INTERCOM	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Jog Dial	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				
MESSAGE	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
MODE			✓						
MONITOR									✓
PAUSE	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	
PROGRAM	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
REDIAL	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SELECT			✓						
SHIFT				✓	✓		✓	✓	
Soft buttons				✓	✓		✓	✓	
SP-PHONE	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
TRANSFER	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
VOLUME						✓	✓	✓	✓

“✓” indicates the button is available.

†: The button is not provided with an LED (Light Emitting Diode).

# 1.1

# Configuration

---

## **Usage**

### **AUTO ANSWER/MUTE Button**

Used for hands-free answer back; or it turns the microphone off during a conversation.

### **AUTO DIAL/STORE Button**

Used for System Speed Dialing or storing program changes.

### **CONF (Conference) Button**

Used to establish a three-party conference.

### **FLASH Button**

Sends an External Feature Access signal to the central office or host PBX to access their system features. If a PBX is not being used, this button can be used to disconnect the current call and start another call without hanging up.

### **Function (F1 through F10) Buttons**

Used to perform the corresponding displayed function or operation.

### **FWD/DND (Call Forwarding/Do Not Disturb) Button**

Used to program the Call Forwarding feature or set the Do Not Disturb (DND) feature.

### **HOLD Button**

Used to place a call on hold.

### **INTERCOM Button**

Used to make or receive extension calls.

### **Jog Dial**

Used to adjust the volume of the handset receiver, headset, ringer and speaker. It also adjusts the display contrast. Refer to “Initial Setting for KX-T7400 Series” in this section.

For KX-T7431, KX-T7433 and KX-T7436 users, it is also used to select data from the Call Directory and the System Feature Access Menu.

### **MESSAGE Button**

Used to leave a notification to a busy extension or call back the message notification sender.

### **MODE Button**

Used to shift the display in order to access various features.

# 1.1

# Configuration

---

## ***MONITOR Button***

Used for a hands-free dialing operation.

## ***PAUSE Button***

Inserts a pause in speed dial numbers or in One-Touch dial numbers.

## ***PROGRAM Button***

Used to enter and exit the Programming mode.

## ***REDIAL Button***

Used for the Last Number Redialing.

## ***SELECT Button***

Used to select the displayed function or to call the displayed phone number.

## ***SHIFT Button***

Used to access the second and third level of Soft Button functions.

## ***Soft (S1 through S3) Buttons***

Used to perform the function or operation that appears on the bottom line of the display.

## ***SP-PHONE (Speakerphone) Button***

Used for a hands-free speakerphone operation.

## ***TRANSFER Button***

Transfers a call to another extension or external destination.

## ***VOLUME Control Button***

Used to adjust the volume of the handset receiver, headset, ringer and speaker; it also adjusts the display contrast. Refer to “Initial Setting for KX-T7200 Series” (Section 1.1/Configuration).

## Flexible Buttons

Flexible Buttons do not have specific features permanently assigned to them. Features are assigned to Flexible Buttons through System or Station Programming. “Flexible Button Assignment” is addressed in Station Programming (Section 2). The three types of Flexible Buttons are as follows:

- **Flexible CO buttons** (located on PT only)
- **Flexible DSS buttons** (located on DSS Console only)
- **Programmable Feature (PF) buttons** (located on DSS Console, KX-T7240, only)

The following table outlines the features that can be assigned to the Flexible Buttons:

Features to be assigned \ Button	CO	DSS	PF
Single-CO	✓	✓*	
Group-CO	✓	✓*	
Loop-CO	✓		
DSS(Direct Station Selection)	✓	✓	
Phantom	✓		
PDN (Primary Directory Number)	✓		
SDN (Secondary Directory Number)	✓		
ONE-TOUCH (One-Touch Dialing)	✓	✓	✓
MESSAGE (Message Waiting)	✓	✓	
FWD/DND (Call Forwarding/Do Not Disturb)	✓	✓	✓
SAVE (Saved Number Redial)	✓	✓	✓
ACCOUNT (Account Code Entry)	✓	✓	✓
CONF (Conference)	✓	✓	✓
VTR (Voice Mail Transfer)	✓	✓	
Log-In / Log-Out	✓		
2WAY-REC (Two-Way Record)†	✓	✓	
2WAY-TRAN (Two-Way Transfer)†	✓	✓	
LCS (Live Call Screening)†	✓	✓	
LCS (Live Call Screening) Cancel†	✓	✓	
DAY/NIGHT (Day/Night Switch)	✓		
Alarm	✓		
Answer	✓	✓	✓
Release	✓	✓	✓
Tone Through	✓	✓	

“✓” indicates that the feature is available.

\* Available for monitoring the call activity only.

## Line Access Buttons

The following three types of CO buttons can be used to seize a CO line when making a CO call.

- **Single-CO (S-CO) button**
- **Group-CO (G-CO) button**
- **Loop-CO (L-CO) button**

### Conditions

- A flexible CO button can be assigned as a Line Access Button (S-CO, G-CO or L-CO) in either System/Station Programming. Once a flexible CO button is assigned as a Line Access Button, it provides the line status condition by lighting patterns and green/red indication. Please refer to “LED Indication” in this section.
- You can set the G-CO and L-CO buttons on one telephone. Incoming and outgoing calls on the line are shown on the button in the following priority.  
S-CO > G-CO > L-CO

## Single-CO (S-CO) button

An S-CO button is a CO line access button. This allows you to access a specific CO line by pressing an S-CO button. An incoming CO call can be directed to an S-CO button.

### Conditions

- The same CO line cannot be assigned to more than one S-CO button on a PT.
- It is possible to assign the same CO line to an S-CO button, a G-CO button and an L-CO button respectively.

### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)  
Flexible Button Assignment — Single-CO (S-CO) Button  
(System Programming — “Flexible CO Button Assignment” can be used for this assignment.)

### Feature References

Flexible Buttons (Section 1.1/Configuration)  
Outward Dialing, Trunk Access — Individual

## *Group-CO (G-CO) button*

To support efficient utilization of CO lines, a group of CO lines (trunk group) can be assigned to a CO button. This button is referred to as Group-CO (G-CO) button. Any incoming calls from any CO line in the same trunk group arrive at the G-CO button. To make a CO call, you can access an idle CO line in the trunk group by simply pressing the assigned G-CO button.

### *Conditions*

- It is possible to assign the same CO line to an S-CO button, a G-CO button and an L-CO button.
- It is necessary to program the extension for making and/or receiving calls in trunk groups.
- When your extension is assigned as an incoming call destination for a CO line, you cannot receive any incoming CO call unless a G-CO, L-CO or S-CO button associated with the CO line is assigned.

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)  
Flexible Button Assignment — Group-CO (G-CO) Button  
(System Programming — “Flexible CO Button Assignment” can be used for this assignment.)

### *Feature References*

Flexible Buttons (Section 1.1/Configuration)  
Outward Dialing, Trunk Access — Trunk Group

## *Loop-CO (L-CO) button*

All CO lines can be assigned to a flexible CO button on a proprietary telephone. The assigned button serves as an L-CO button. An incoming call on any CO line arrives at the L-CO button, unless there are S-CO or G-CO buttons associated with the CO line or unless the button is already in use. To make a CO call, you simply press the dedicated L-CO button. Pressing the L-CO button provides the same operation as dialing the feature number for “Local CO Line Access/ ARS” (default=9).

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)  
Flexible Button Assignment — Loop-CO (L-CO) Button  
(System Programming — “Flexible CO Button Assignment” can be used for this assignment.)

### *Feature References*

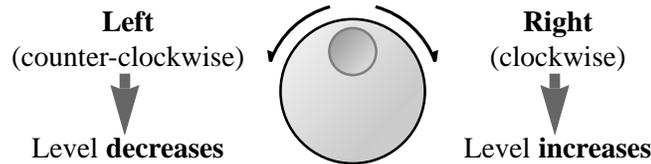
Flexible Buttons (Section 1.1/Configuration)  
Outward Dialing, Trunk Access — Idle

# 1.1

# Configuration

## Initial Setting for KX-T7400 Series

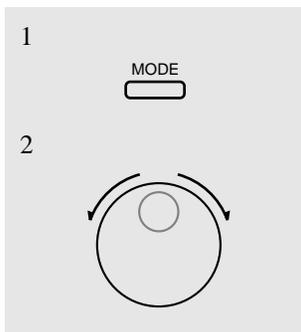
The Jog Dial can be used for the display contrast and the volume control. Rotate the Jog Dial in either direction as desired. The contrast or the volume level will change as follows.



### Display Contrast Adjustment

The MODE button and the Jog Dial for KX-T7431 users, and a Soft button and the Jog Dial for KX-T7433 and KX-T7436 users are used to adjust the display contrast. The contrast level is indicated on the display by the number of asterisks.

#### – KX-T7431



*While on-hook*

1. Press the **MODE** button six times.

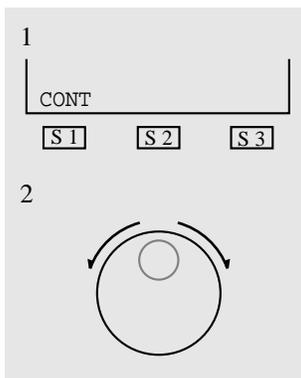
- The display shows:

<Example>

Contrast:\*\*\* (— contrast level 3)

2. Rotate the **Jog Dial** in the desired direction.

#### – KX-T7433 and KX-T7436



*While on-hook or during a conversation*

1. Press the **CONT (S1)** button.

2. Rotate the **Jog Dial** in the desired direction.

- The display shows:

<Example>

Contrast:\*\*\* (— contrast level 3)

# 1.1

# Configuration

---

## *When using the headset*

The Panasonic Digital Super Hybrid System supports the use of a headset with a proprietary telephone (PT). When you use the headset (optional), you should switch the selection mode first. Selection is explained in the “Handset/Headset Selection” in Station Programming (Section 2).

### *To change to the headset mode*

Press: [PROGRAM] [9] [9] [9] [2] [STORE] [PROGRAM].

## *Changing the ringing tone of a CO button / INTERCOM button*

There are eight ringer frequencies available for each CO (Single-CO, Group-CO, Loop-CO) button, DN (PDN, SDN) button and INTERCOM button. If you wish to change them, refer to the “Ringing Tone Selection for CO Buttons” or “Ringing Tone Selection for INTERCOM Button” in Station Programming (Section 2).

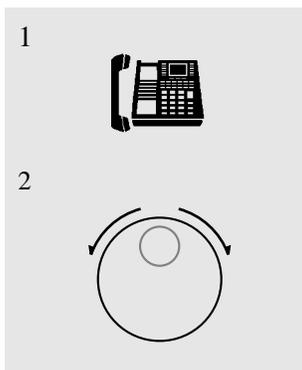
## *Volume Control — Handset Receiver/Headset/Ringer/Speaker*

Allows you to adjust the following volumes as required.

- Handset Receiver volume (levels 1 through 4)
- Headset volume (levels 1 through 4)
- Ringer volume (levels 0 through 3)
- Speaker volume (levels 1 through 12)

If your digital proprietary telephone is provided with a display (display DPT), the volume level is indicated on the display by the number of asterisks. For ringer volume adjustment, three levels (OFF/LOW/HIGH) are available with the KX-T7420 and KX-T7425.

### *To adjust the handset receiver volume*



1. Lift the **handset**.

2. Rotate the **Jog Dial** in the desired direction.

- The display shows:

<Example>

Handset : \*\*\* (— volume level 3)

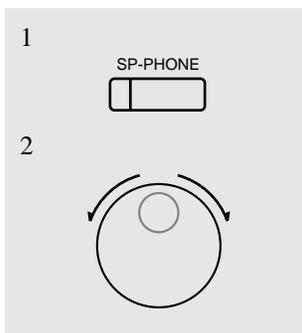
- You may also adjust the handset receiver volume during a conversation using the handset receiver.

# 1.1

# Configuration

---

## To adjust the headset volume



Be sure the headset is connected.

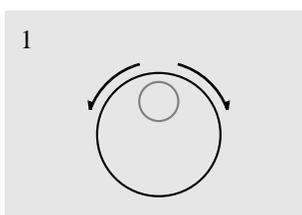
1. Press the **SP-PHONE** button.
  2. Rotate the **Jog Dial** in the desired direction.
- The display shows:

<Example>

Headset:\*\*\* (— volume level 3)

## To adjust the ringer volume

– KX-T7433 and KX-T7436

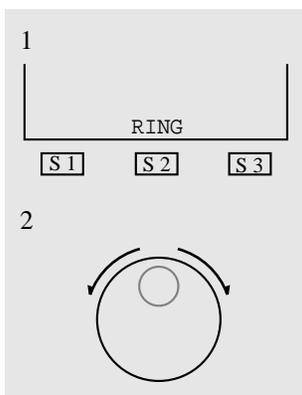


While the telephone is ringing

1. Rotate the **Jog Dial** in the desired direction.
- The display shows:

<Example>

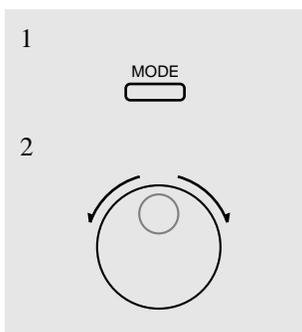
Ringer:\*\*\* (— volume level 3)



While the telephone is idle and on-hook

1. Press the **RING (S2)** button.
  - The telephone will ring.
2. Rotate the **Jog Dial** in the desired direction.
  - The telephone will stop ringing in about 4 seconds.
  - When the volume level is 0 (no “\*” indication), the display shows “RNGOFF”.

– KX-T7431



While the telephone is idle and on-hook

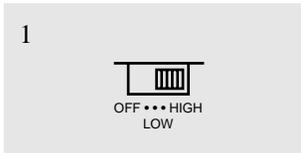
1. Press the **MODE** button five times.
    - The display shows:
- <Example>
- Ringer:\*\*\* (— volume level 3)
2. Rotate the **Jog Dial** in the desired direction.
    - The telephone will stop ringing in about 4 seconds.
    - When the volume level is 0, no “\*” is indicated.

# 1.1

# Configuration

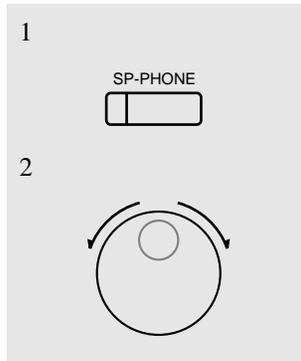
---

## – KX-T7420 and KX-T7425



1. Adjust the **RINGER Volume Selector** lever to the desired setting (**OFF/LOW/HIGH**).

## To adjust the speaker volume



1. Press the **SP-PHONE** button.
2. Rotate the **Jog Dial** in the desired direction.
  - The display shows:
    - <Example>  
`SP:*****` (— volume level 12)
  - You may also adjust the speaker volume while listening to background music (BGM On mode), receiving a voice call, receiving a page or hearing a call progress tone such as a dial tone.

## Conditions

- If the ringer volume of the KX-T7431 is set to **OFF**, the display while on-hook is as follows.

`Ring Off 12:00P`

By pressing “\*”, the display changes to show your extension number and name.

`101: John Smith`

# 1.1

# Configuration

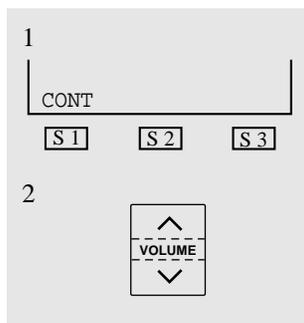
---

## Initial Setting for KX-T7200 Series

### Display Contrast Adjustment (KX-T7230 and KX-T7235 only)

A Soft button and the VOLUME Control button are used to adjust the display contrast. The contrast level is indicated on the display by the number of asterisks. You can adjust the contrast level under the following conditions:

- 1.) When on-hook, or
- 2.) During an outside/intercom call.



1. Press the **CONT** (S1) button.
  2. Press the **VOLUME** (UP ^/ DOWN v) Control button.
- The display shows:

<Example>

Contrast:\*\*\* (— contrast level 3)

### When using the headset

The Panasonic Digital Super Hybrid System supports the use of a headset with a proprietary telephone (PT). When you use the headset (optional), you should switch the selection mode first. Selection is explained in the “Handset/Headset Selection” in Station Programming (Section 2).

#### To change to the headset mode

Press: [PROGRAM] [9] [9] [9] [2] [STORE] [PROGRAM].

### Changing the ringing tone of a CO button / INTERCOM button

There are eight ringer frequencies available for each CO (Group-CO, Loop-CO, Single-CO) button, DN (PDN, SDN) button and INTERCOM button. If you wish to change them, refer to the “Ringing Tone Selection for CO Buttons” or “Ringing Tone Selection for INTERCOM Button” in Station Programming (Section 2).

# 1.1

# Configuration

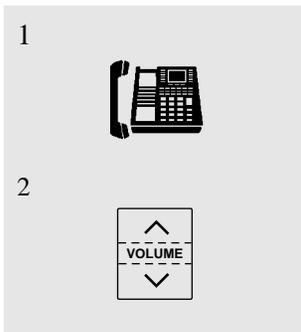
## Volume Control — Handset Receiver/Headset/Ringer/Speaker

Allows you to adjust the following volumes as necessary:

- Handset Receiver volume (level 1 through 3)
- Headset volume (level 1 through 3)
- Ringer volume (level 0 through 3)
- Speaker volume (level 1 through 12)

If your digital proprietary telephone is provided with a display (display DPT), the volume level is indicated on the display by the number of asterisks. For ringer volume adjustment, three levels (OFF/LOW/HIGH) are available with the KX-T7220 and KX-T7250.

### To adjust the handset receiver volume

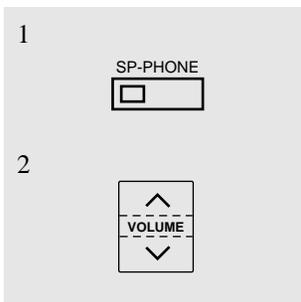


1. Lift the **handset**.
2. Press the **VOLUME** (UP ^/ DOWN v) Control button.
  - The display shows:  
<Example>  

Handset : ***
---------------

 (— volume level 3)
  - You may also adjust the handset receiver volume during a conversation using the handset receiver.

### To adjust the headset volume



*Be sure the headset is connected.*

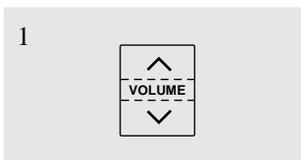
1. Press the **SP-PHONE** button.
2. Press the **VOLUME** (UP ^/ DOWN v) Control button.
  - The display shows:  
<Example>  

Headset : ***
---------------

 (— volume level 3)

### To adjust the ringer volume

— **KX-T7230 and KX-T7235**



*While the telephone is ringing;*

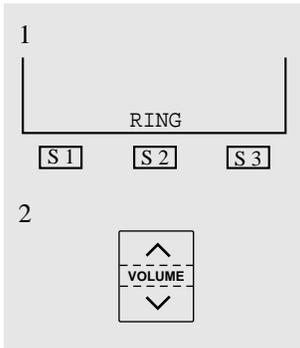
1. Press the **VOLUME** (UP ^/ DOWN v) Control button.
  - The display shows:  
<Example>  

Ringer : ***
--------------

 (— volume level 3)

# 1.1

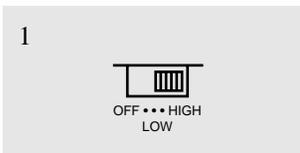
## Configuration



While the telephone is idle and on-hook;

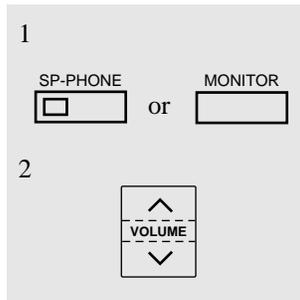
1. Press the **RING** (S2) button.
  - The telephone will ring.
2. Press the **VOLUME** (UP ^/ DOWN v) Control button.
  - The telephone will stop ringing in about 4 seconds.
  - When the volume level is 0 (no “\*” indication), the display shows ”RNGOFF”.

### – KX-T7220 and KX-T7250



1. Adjust the **RINGER Volume Selector** lever to the desired setting (**OFF/LOW/HIGH**).

### To adjust the speaker volume

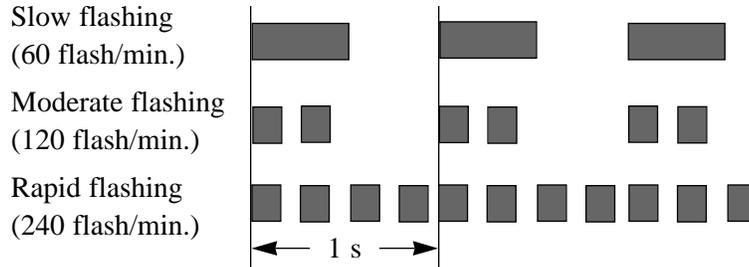


1. Press the **SP-PHONE** or **MONITOR** button.
2. Press the **VOLUME** (UP ^/ DOWN v) Control button.
  - The display shows:
    - <Example>
    - SP: \*\*\*\*\* (— volume level 12)
  - You may also adjust the speaker volume while listening to the background music (BGM On mode), receiving a voice call, receiving a page or hearing a call progress tone such as a dial tone.

## LED Indication

The Light Emitting Diode (LED) buttons indicate the line conditions with lighting patterns.

### Flashing light patterns



### LED Indication on the INTERCOM Button

The table below shows the lighting patterns for intercom line conditions.

INTERCOM button	Intercom Line Condition
Off	Idle
Green On	Intercom call / Conference established
Green slow flashing	Intercom call hold
Green moderate flashing	Intercom call exclusive hold / Consultation hold
Green rapid flashing	Incoming intercom/doorphone call

### LED Indication on the CO Button

The table below shows the lighting patterns for CO line conditions.

CO Button	CO Line Condition
Off	Idle
Green On	You are using the line.
Green slow flashing	You have a held call.
Green moderate flashing	You have one of the following: (1) Exclusive hold, (2) CO-to-CO line call, or (3) Conference, unattended
Green rapid flashing	Privacy Release possible* / Hold Recall / Incoming call
Red On	Other-use
Red slow flashing	Other-hold*
Red rapid flashing	Incoming call (DIL 1:N call, Calls to a Ring Group)

— Items marked with \* are only available on the Single-CO button.

# 1.1

## Configuration

---

### ***BLF on DSS Button***

The Busy Lamp Field (BLF) indicator button is red when the corresponding extension is busy. This is available for Direct Station Selection (DSS) buttons on DSS consoles and for flexible CO buttons assigned as DSS buttons on proprietary telephones.

The table below shows the lighting patterns for the corresponding extension.

<b>DSS button</b>	<b>Corresponding Extension</b>
Off	Log-in
Red On	Incoming call/You or another extension is using the line.
Red slow flashing	Log-out

# *Section 2*

## *Station Programming*

### *Contents*

<i>2.1 Station Programming Instructions .....</i>	<i>2-2</i>
<i>2.2 Station Programming (A - Z) .....</i>	<i>2-7</i>

**<Note>**

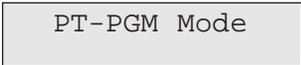
All illustrations used in this section are based on model KX-T7235.

## 2.1 Station Programming Instructions

Station Programming allows you, the proprietary telephone (PT) users, to program certain features from your telephone individually. To program, you need to switch your telephone to the Station Programming mode. During programming mode, your telephone is in the busy condition to both inside and outside callers. If you want to make a normal call handling operation, you must finish the programming mode.

### Programming Mode Display

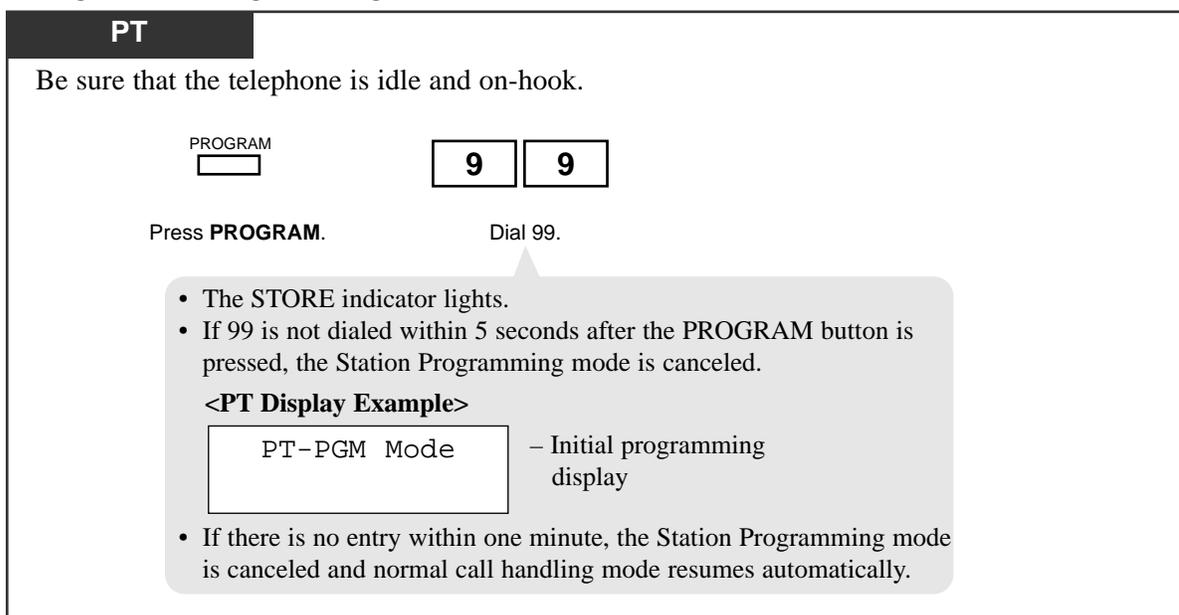
When you enter into the Station Programming mode, the display shows the following message as the initial programming mode;



PT-PGM Mode

We recommend a PT with display for Station Programming to avoid mis-operation. The display also gives you helpful or stored data information related to your programming steps. In this section, we note the display example in the programming steps, if required. You can also refer to the “Display Examples” in the Appendix (Section 6).

### Entering Station Programming mode



**PT**

Be sure that the telephone is idle and on-hook.

**PROGRAM** [ ]      [ 9 ] [ 9 ]

Press **PROGRAM**.      Dial 99.

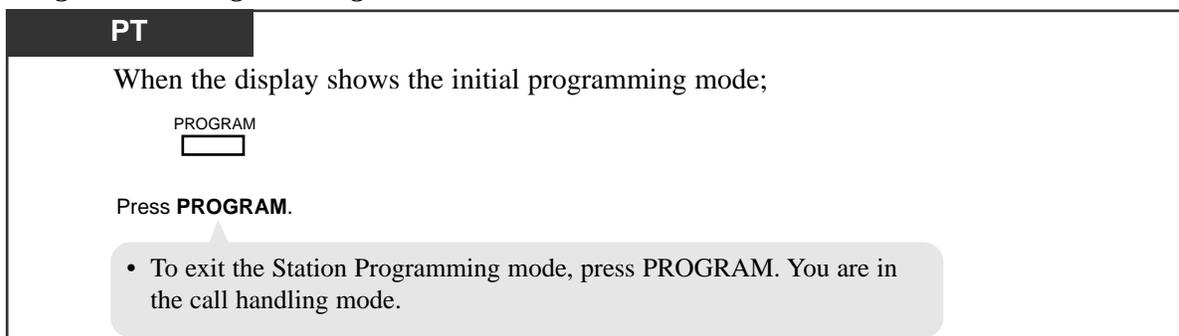
- The STORE indicator lights.
- If 99 is not dialed within 5 seconds after the PROGRAM button is pressed, the Station Programming mode is canceled.

**<PT Display Example>**

[ PT-PGM Mode ]      – Initial programming display

- If there is no entry within one minute, the Station Programming mode is canceled and normal call handling mode resumes automatically.

### Exiting Station Programming mode



**PT**

When the display shows the initial programming mode;

**PROGRAM** [ ]

Press **PROGRAM**.

- To exit the Station Programming mode, press PROGRAM. You are in the call handling mode.

## 2.1 Station Programming Instructions

### Confirming the assigned function data

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

The diagram shows a display screen with a dark header containing the text "PT". Below the header, there are two input fields: one labeled "program access number" and another labeled "HOLD". Below these fields, the text reads "Enter the program access number." and "Press HOLD (END)".

- The display shows the initial programming mode.
- Enter the **program access number\*** as follows.
  - 1: Preferred Line Assignment — Outgoing
  - 2: Preferred Line Assignment — Incoming
  - 3: Full One-Touch Dialing Assignment
  - 4: Intercom Alert Assignment
  - 5: Call Waiting Tone Type Assignment
  - 6: Self-Extension Number Confirmation
  - 7: Live Call Screening Mode Set†
  - 81: Initial Display Selection
  - 82: Bilingual Display Selection
  - 9: Handset/Headset Selection
  - 01: Remote Station Look Control (— Operator / Manager only)
  - 02: Control of Call Log Incoming, Log Lock (— Operator / Manager only)
  - 03: Live Call Screening Password Control (— Operator / Manager only)
  - #: Station Programming Data Default Set
- The display shows the programmed data.

**<PT Display Example>**  
When you press [5], the display shows:

C.W. Tone1 (— The Call Waiting tone is currently programmed to Tone 1.)

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

— If you wish to change the data, follow the programming procedure explained in this section.

\* A **programming access number** is required to program/confirm the function data by Station Programming.

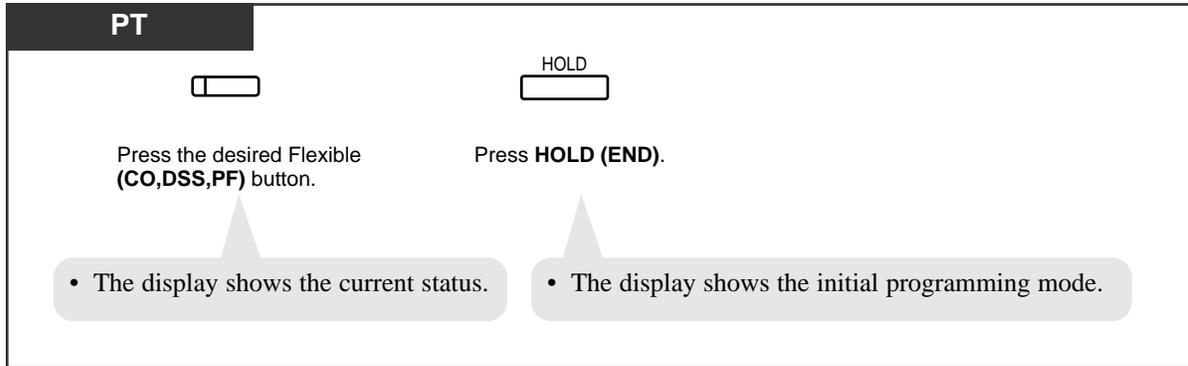
†: Available when the Digital Super Hybrid System is connected to a Digital Proprietary Telephone capable Panasonic Voice Processing System (one that supports digital proprietary telephone integration; e.g. KX-TVS100).

## 2.1 Station Programming Instructions

---

### Confirming the assigned data on the Flexible button

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

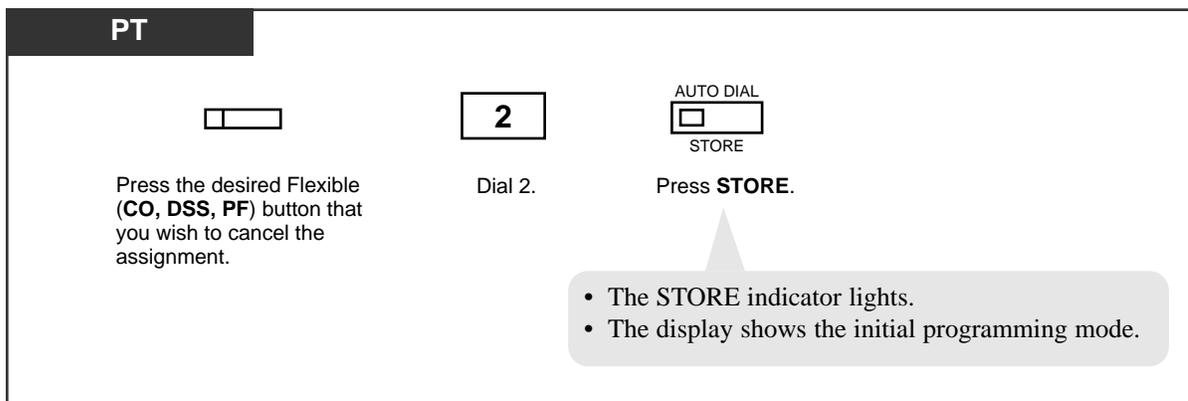


— To exit Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

— If you wish to change the data, follow the programming procedure explained in this section.

### Clearing the data on the Flexible button

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



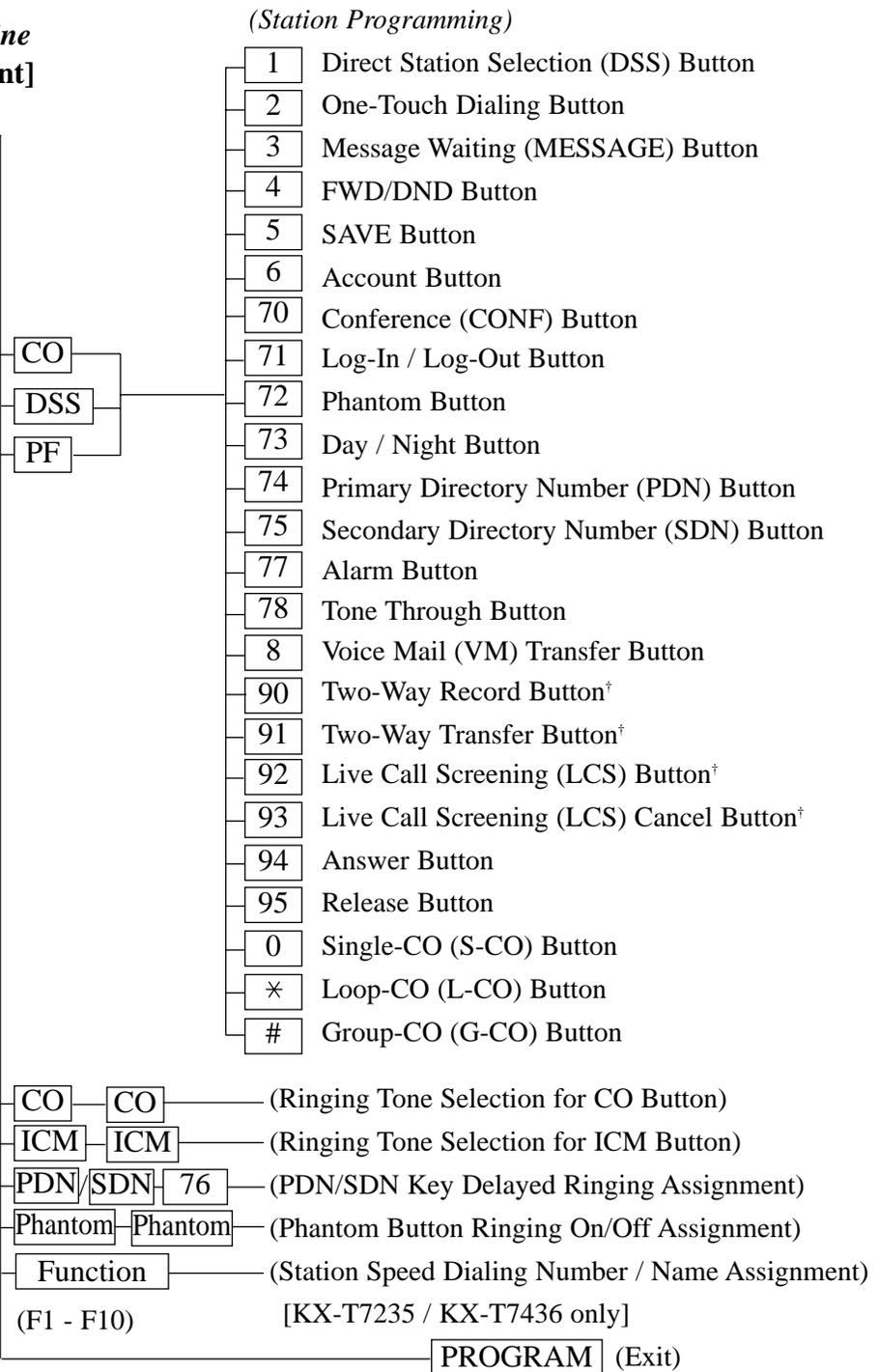
— To exit Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

— The lists on the following pages are the buttons and programming access numbers used for Station Programming. Detailed operating instructions are explained on each page in this section.

# 2.1 Station Programming Instructions

## Station Programming Outline [Flexible Button Assignment]

PROGRAM 9 9

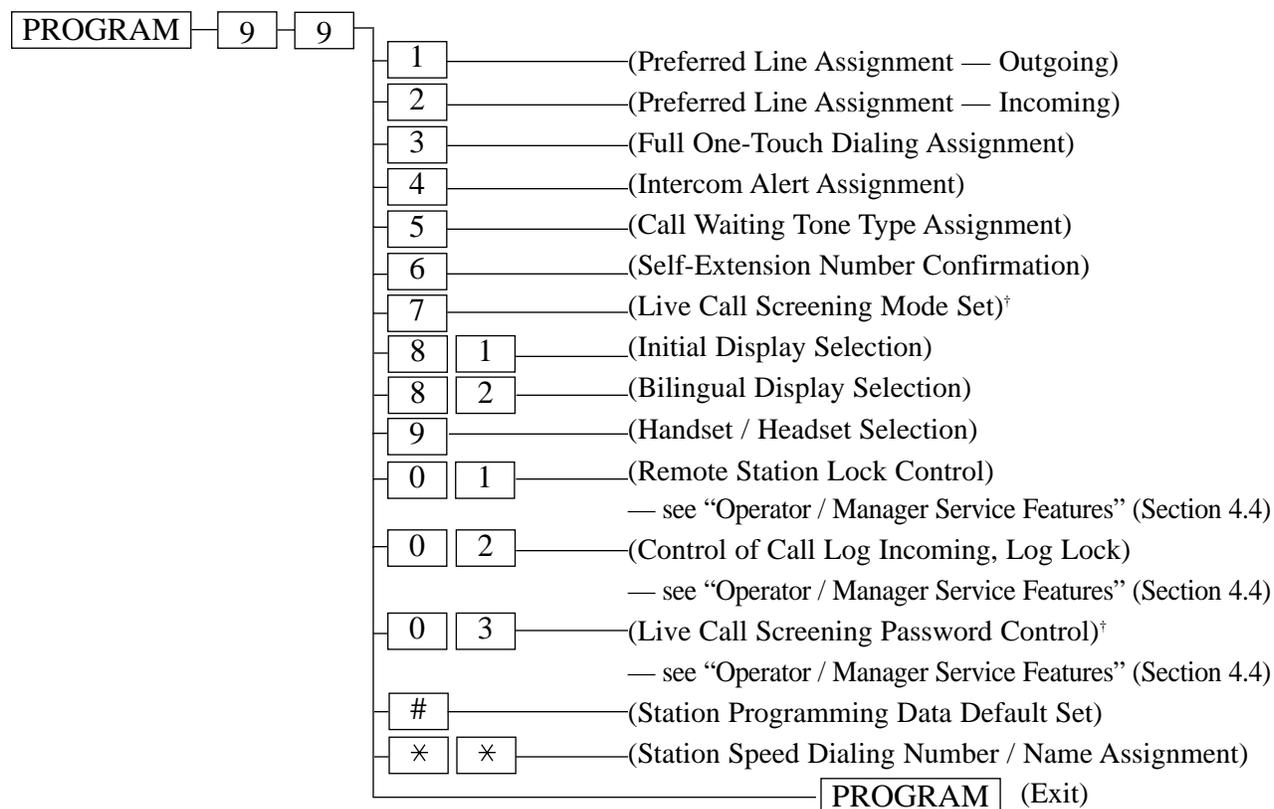


†: Available when the Digital Super Hybrid System is connected to a Digital Proprietary Telephone capable Panasonic Voice Processing System (one that supports digital proprietary telephone integration; e.g. KX-TVS100).

## 2.1 Station Programming Instructions

---

### [Function Assignment]



## 2.2

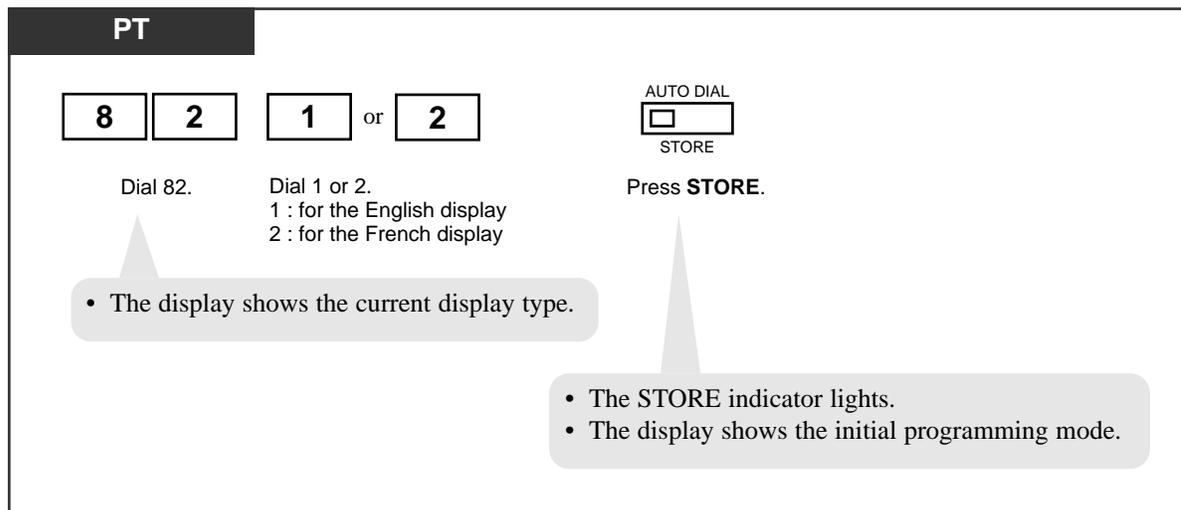
# Station Programming

---

## Bilingual Display Selection

Allows you to select the display in English or French.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode : Press [PROGRAM].

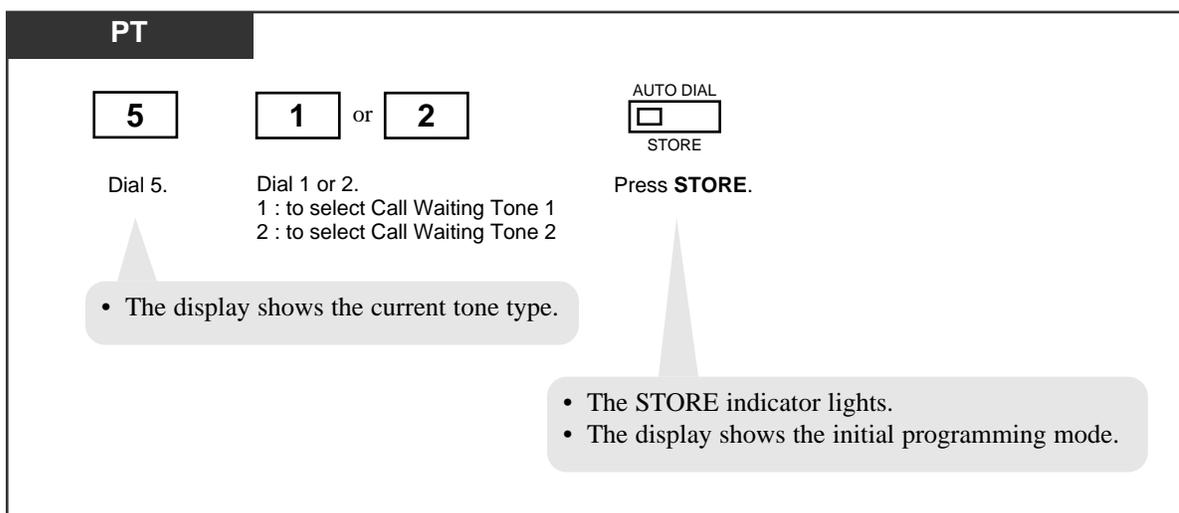
### Conditions

- The default is “English display” mode.

## Call Waiting Tone Type Assignment

Allows you to select the call waiting tone type (Tone 1 or Tone 2).

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- The tone type patterns are described in the Appendix (Section 6).
- The default is "Tone 1."

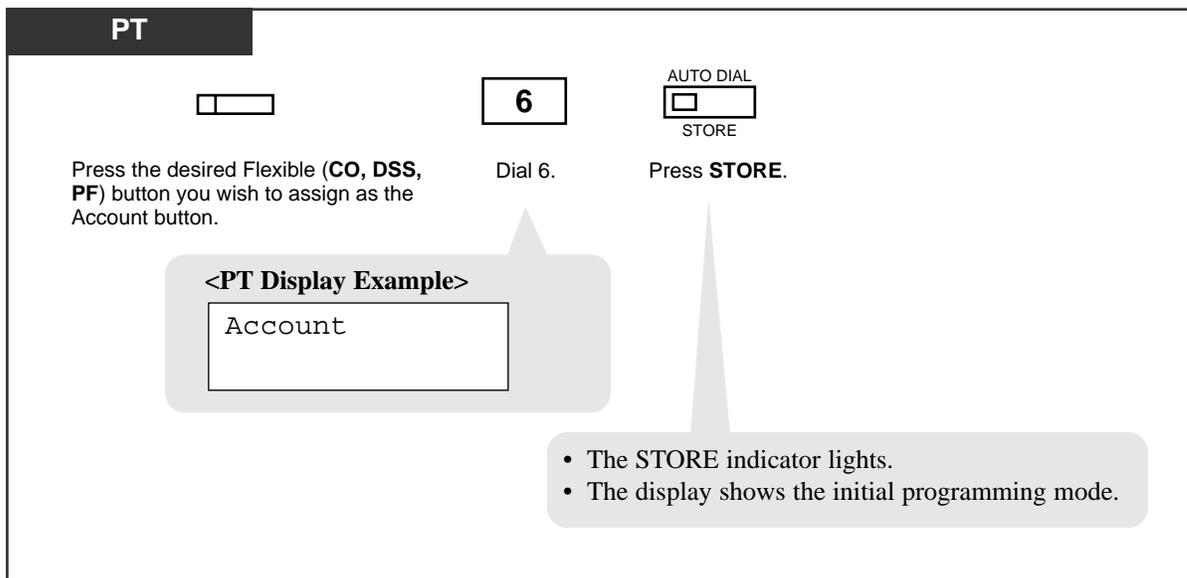
**Flexible Button Assignment**

Each Flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button on your PT and DSS console can be assigned as various feature buttons such as an Account Button, DSS Button, FWD/DND Button, etc. The features assignable are limited by the button type. Please refer to “Flexible Buttons” in Section 1.1, “Feature Buttons.” The “Flexible CO Button Assignment” in System Programming can be used for this assignment.

**Account Button (Assignment)**

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button as an Account button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

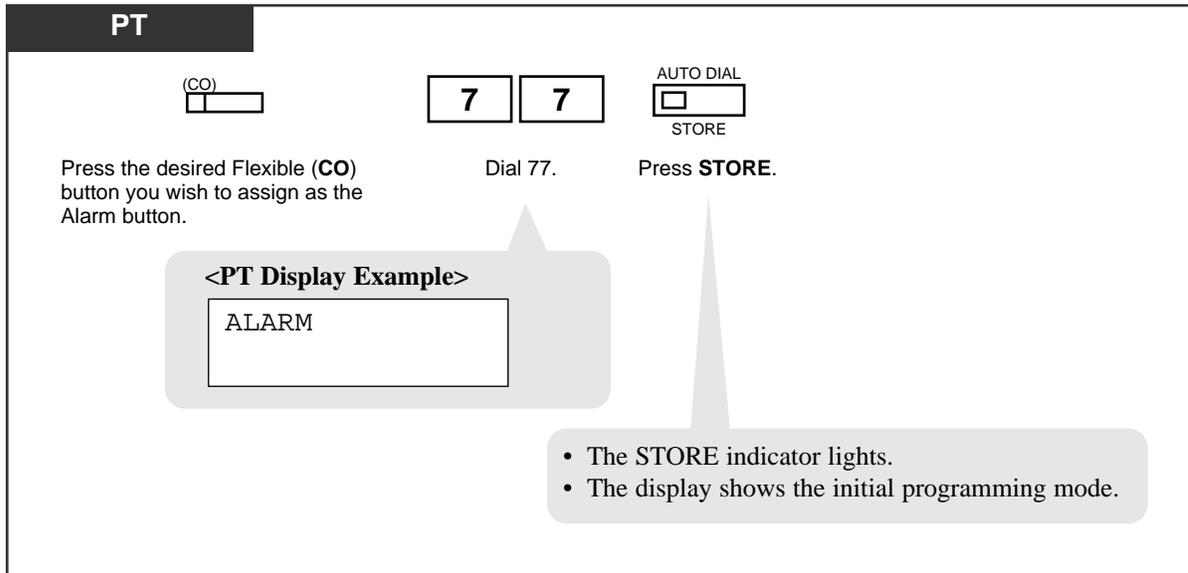
# Station Programming

---

### Alarm Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO) button as an Alarm button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- Alarm button is available for the Manager only.

## 2.2

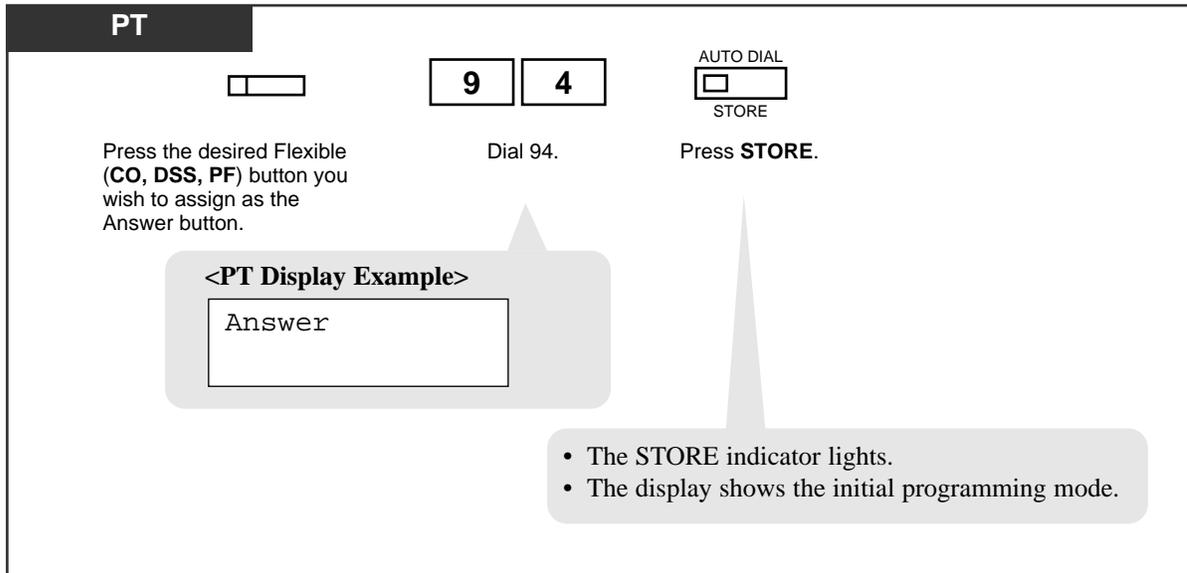
# Station Programming

---

### *Answer Button (Assignment)*

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button as an Answer button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

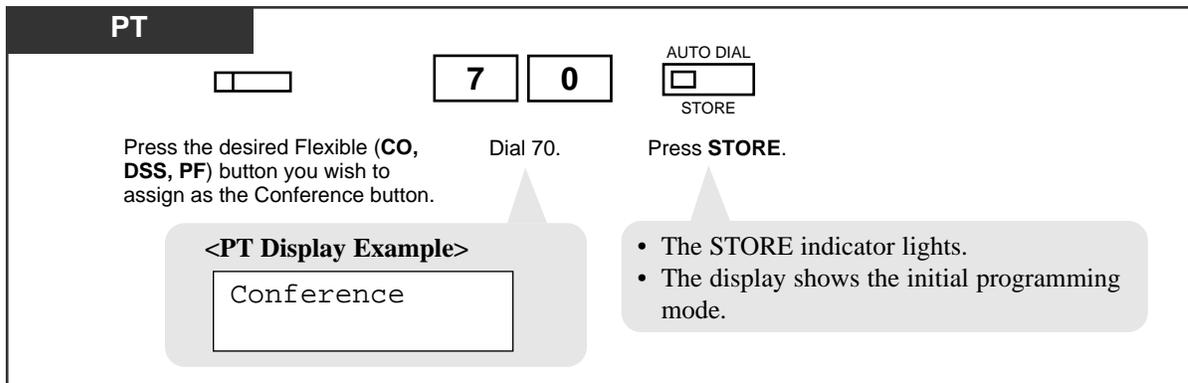
## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Conference (CONF) Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button as a Conference (CONF) button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

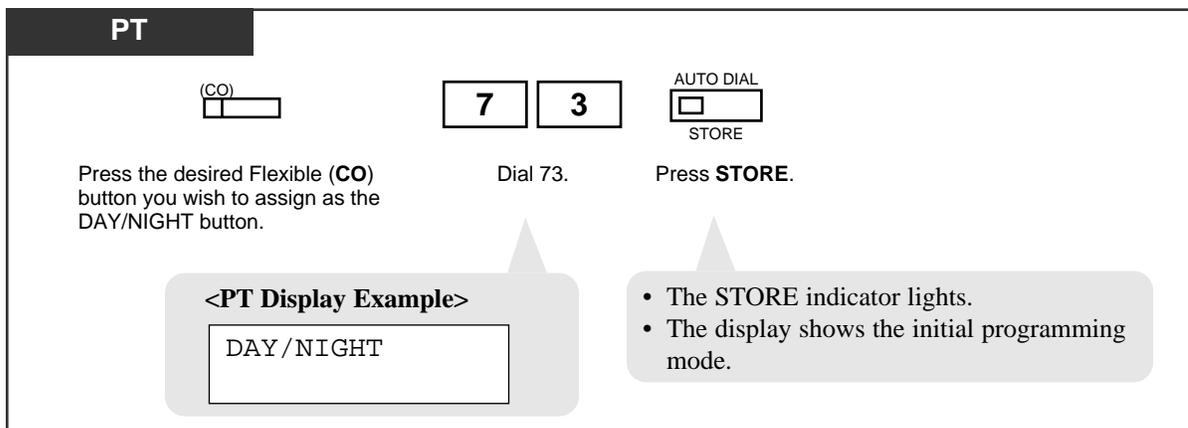


— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### DAY/NIGHT Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO) button as a DAY/NIGHT button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Direct Station Selection (DSS) Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS) button as a DSS button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

The diagram illustrates the steps for assigning a DSS button on a PT (Programmable Terminal) display. It shows a sequence of button presses and the corresponding display output.

**PT**

Buttons shown: , **1**, **extension no.**, **AUTO DIAL** (with a small square indicator), and **STORE**.

Step 1: Press the desired Flexible (CO, DSS) button you wish to assign as a DSS button.

Step 2: Dial 1.

Step 3: Enter the extension number (3 or 4 digits).

Step 4: Press **STORE**.

**<PT Display Example>**

EXT—  
CLR

**<PT Display Example>**

EXT—xxxx  
CLR (-xxxx:extension number)

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- DSS buttons are provided on a DSS Console without default setting. You can assign the desired extension number or feature on each DSS button from the paired PT.
- You *cannot* enter non-existent extension numbers.

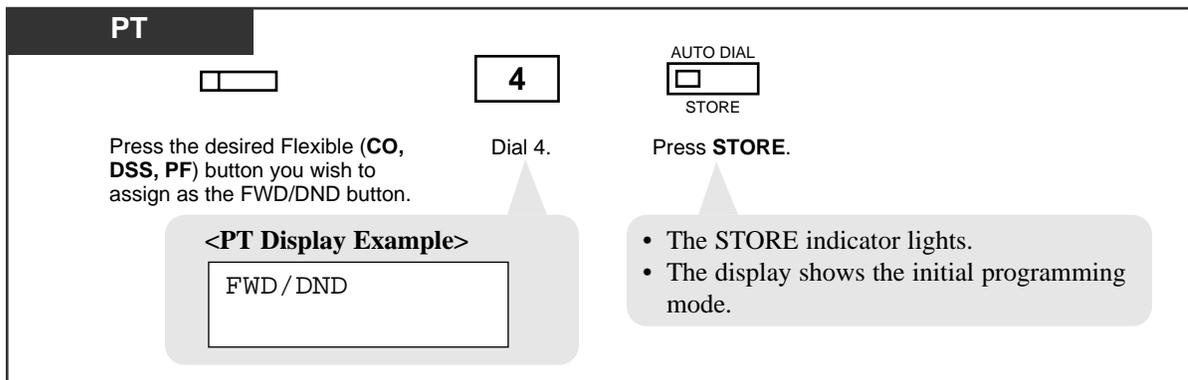
## 2.2

# Station Programming

### *FWD/DND Button (Assignment)*

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button as an FWD/DND button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

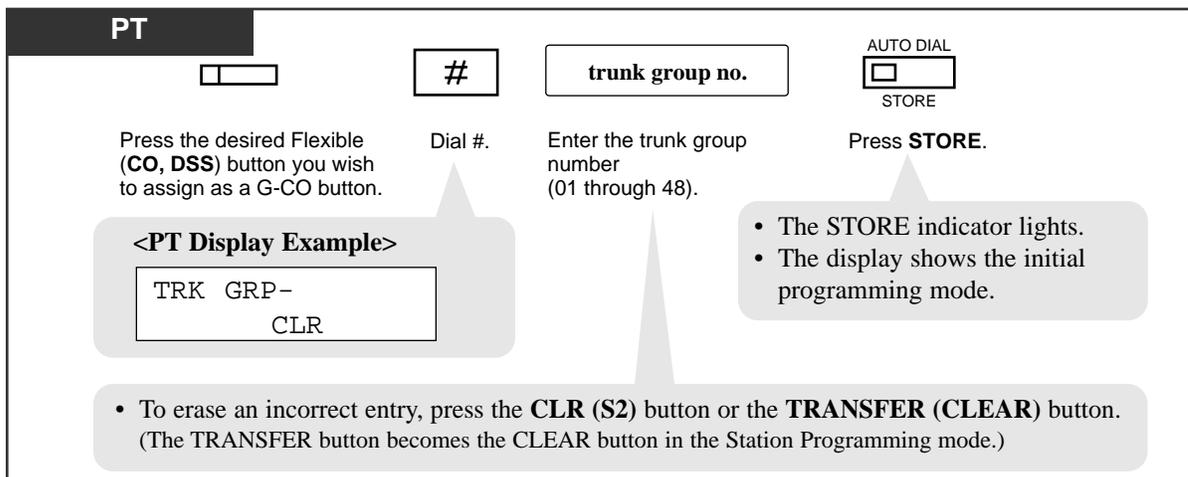


— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### *Group-CO (G-CO) Button (Assignment)*

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS) button as a Group-CO button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### *Conditions*

- A G-CO button assigned to a DSS button is available for monitoring the call activity only, not available for making and receiving a call.

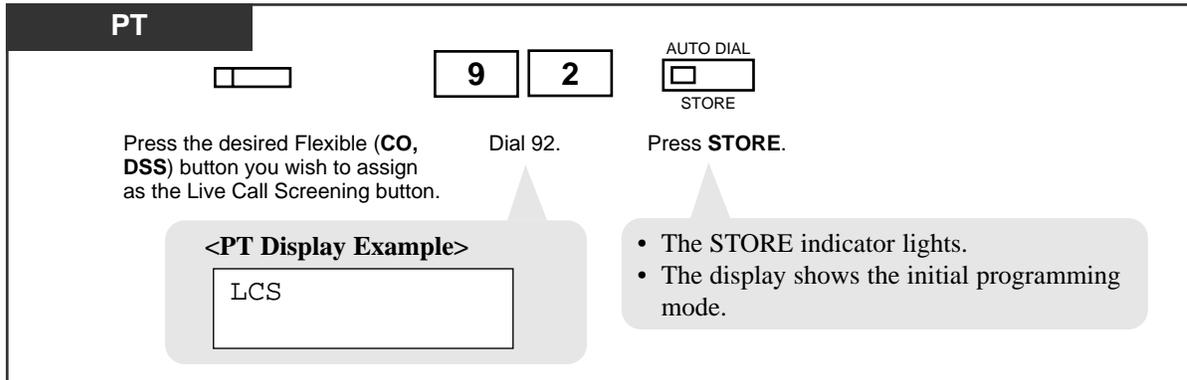
## 2.2

# Station Programming

### *Live Call Screening (LCS) Button* (Assignment)<sup>†</sup>

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS) button as a Live Call Screening (LCS) button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

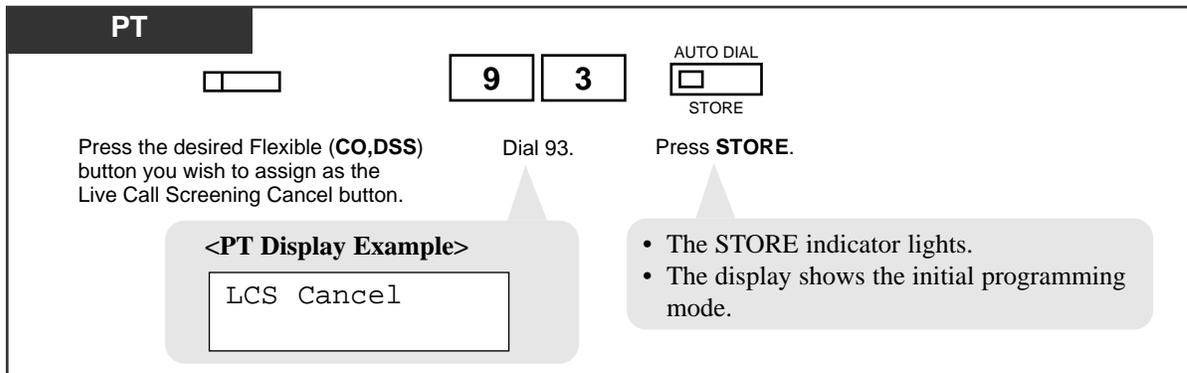


— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### *Live Call Screening (LCS) Cancel Button* (Assignment)<sup>†</sup>

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS) button as a Live Call Screening (LCS) Cancel button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

<sup>†</sup>: Available when the Digital Super Hybrid System is connected to a Digital Proprietary Telephone capable Panasonic Voice Processing System (one that supports digital proprietary telephone integration; e.g. KX-TVS100).

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Log-In / Log-Out Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO) button as a Log-In / Log-Out button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

The diagram shows a PT display interface for assigning a Flexible (CO) button as a Log-In/Log-Out button. At the top left, there is a header 'PT' and a '(CO)' button. Below it, the text reads: 'Press the desired Flexible (CO) button you wish to assign as the Log-In/Log-Out button.' In the center, there are two buttons labeled '7' and '1', with the text 'Dial 71.' below them. To the right, there is an 'AUTO DIAL' button with a 'STORE' indicator below it, and the text 'Press STORE.' next to it. A callout box labeled '<PT Display Example>' shows a display window with the text 'Login/Logout'. A separate callout box contains a bulleted list: '• The STORE indicator lights.' and '• The display shows the initial programming mode.'

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Loop-CO (L-CO) Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO) button as a Loop-CO button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

The diagram shows a PT display interface for assigning a Flexible (CO) button as a Loop-CO button. At the top left, there is a header 'PT' and a '(CO)' button. Below it, the text reads: 'Press the desired Flexible (CO) button you wish to assign as the L-CO button.' In the center, there is a button with an asterisk symbol (\*), with the text 'Dial \*.' below it. To the right, there is an 'AUTO DIAL' button with a 'STORE' indicator below it, and the text 'Press STORE.' next to it. A callout box labeled '<PT Display Example>' shows a display window with the text 'Loop-CO'. A separate callout box contains a bulleted list: '• The STORE indicator lights.' and '• The display shows the initial programming mode.'

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

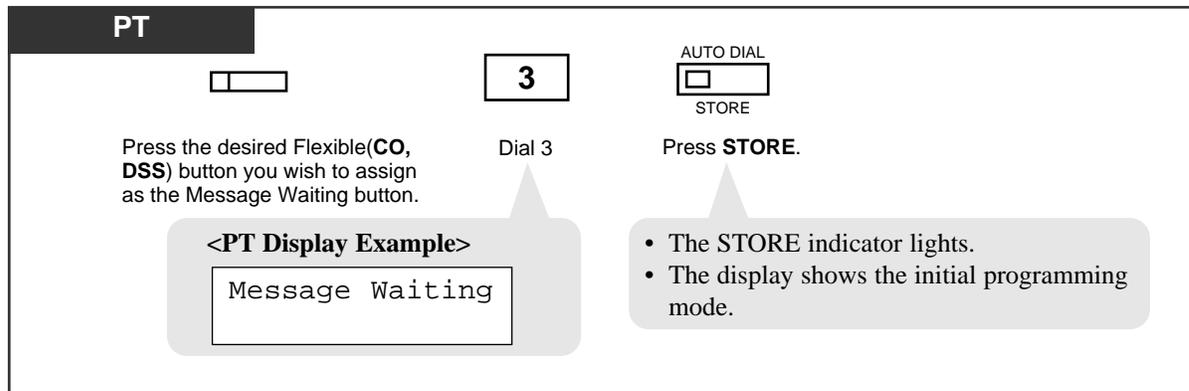
# Station Programming

---

### *Message Waiting (MESSAGE) Button (Assignment)*

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS) button as a Message Waiting (MESSAGE) button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

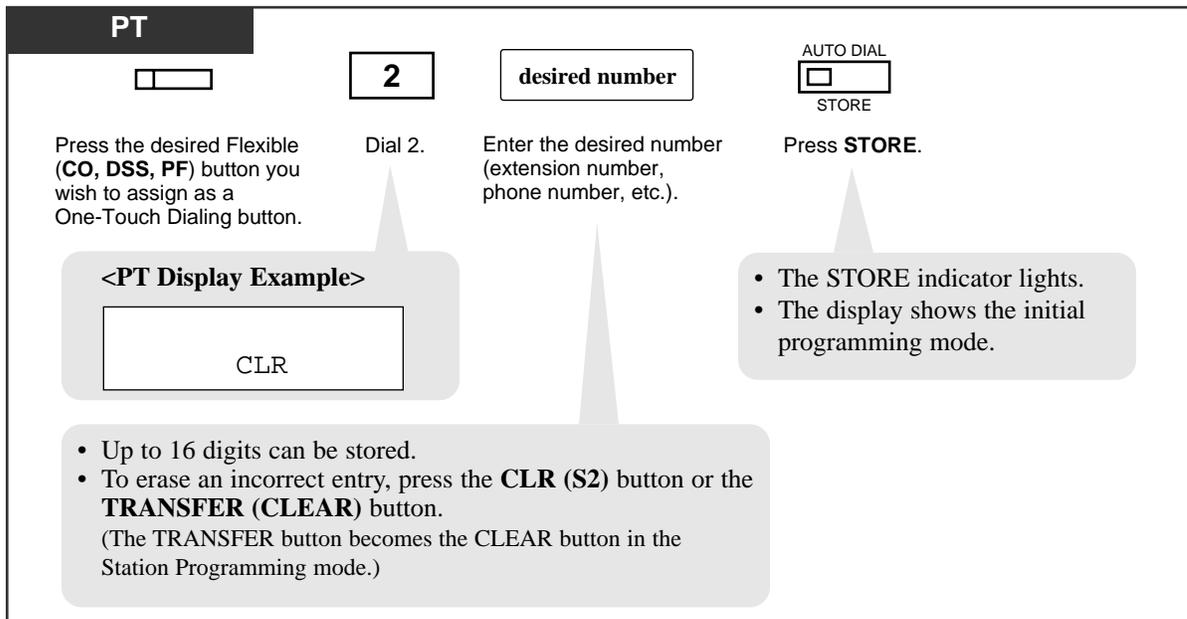
## 2.2

# Station Programming

### One-Touch Dialing Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button as a One-Touch Dialing button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- The number can be an extension number, telephone number or a feature number. Up to 16 digits can be stored in a One-Touch Dialing button.
- To store the telephone number of an outside party, a line access code (9, or 801 through 848) must be stored as the leading digit.
- You can store a number consisting of 17 digits or more by dividing it and assigning it in two One-Touch Dialing buttons. In this case, the line access code should be stored in the first button.
- You can use 0 through 9, \*, #, PAUSE, FLASH, CONF and INTERCOM for storing.
  - FLASH : hook flash
  - PAUSE : pause
  - CONF : — (hyphen)
  - INTERCOM : for secret dialing
  - \* # : for changing the dialing mode (Pulse to Tone)
- KX-T7220 and KX-T7250 telephones do not have a PAUSE button. The PROGRAM button can be used instead of the PAUSE button while programming.

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Phantom Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO) button as a Phantom button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**PT**

(CO)  **7** **2** phantom extension no.  **AUTO DIAL**  
**STORE**

Press the desired Flexible (CO) button you wish to assign as a Phantom button. Dial 72. Enter the phantom extension number (3 or 4 digits). Press **STORE**.

**<PT Display Example>**  
Phantom:  
CLR

**<PT Display Example>**  
Phantom:xxxx  
CLR (-xxxx:Phantom extension number)

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- The phantom extension numbers must be assigned by System Programming (Section 4.5.2 “Features - Phantom Extension” in the Installation Manual) before assigning the Phantom button.
- If you assigned the Phantom button to one of the CO buttons (CO 13 through CO 24) on a PT with 24 CO buttons, such as KX-T7230, and change the telephone to a PT with 12 CO buttons, such as KX-T7235, you must re-program the setting because CO 13 through CO 24 are not provided with the PT with 12 CO buttons. If you do not change the setting, the phantom extension call appears on the INTERCOM (ICM type PT) or PDN (DN type PT) button.
- More than one identical Phantom button cannot be assigned on a single extension.

## 2.2

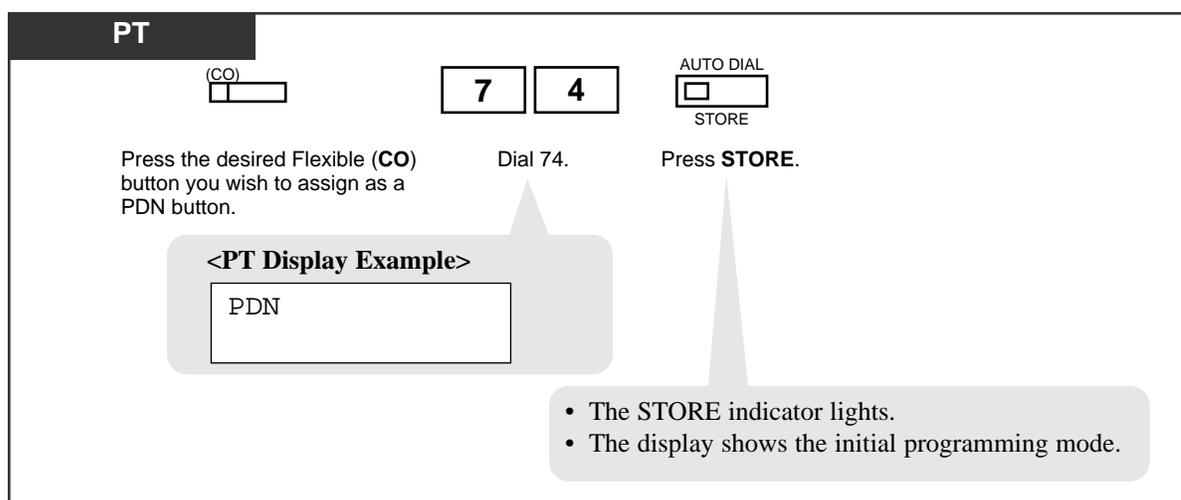
# Station Programming

---

### *Primary Directory Number (PDN) Button (Assignment)*

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO) button as a PDN button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### **Conditions**

- A PDN button can be assigned to any one of the flexible CO buttons on a PT by Station, User or System Programming. Up to three PDN buttons can be assigned to any flexible CO button on a PT. However, the first PDN button should always be assigned to the CO 01 button regardless of the number of the PDN buttons assigned.

## 2.2

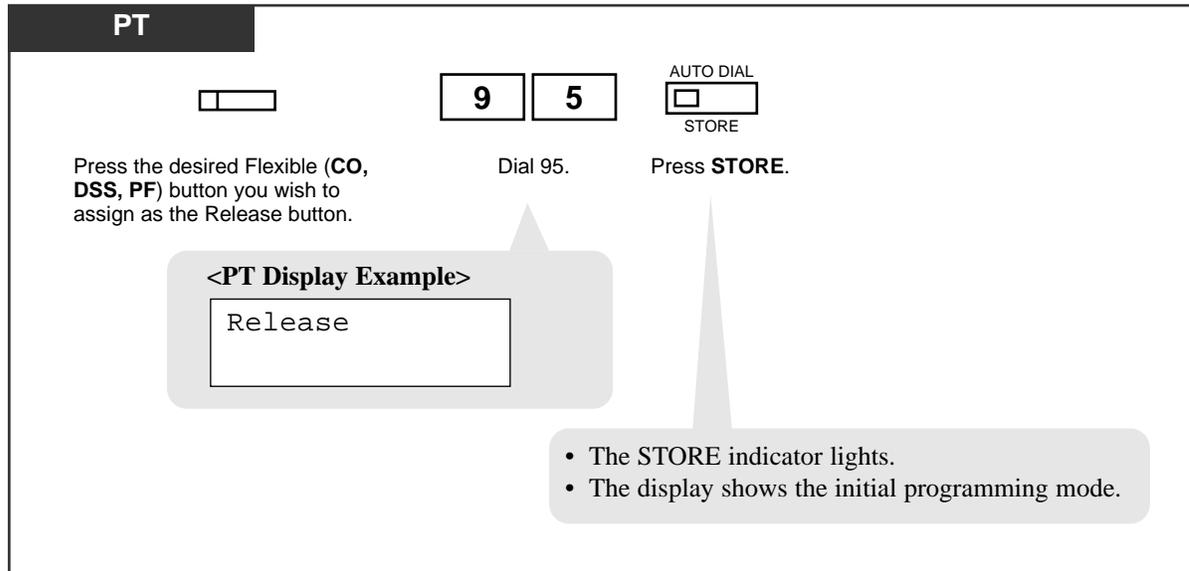
# Station Programming

---

### *Release Button (Assignment)*

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button as a Release button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

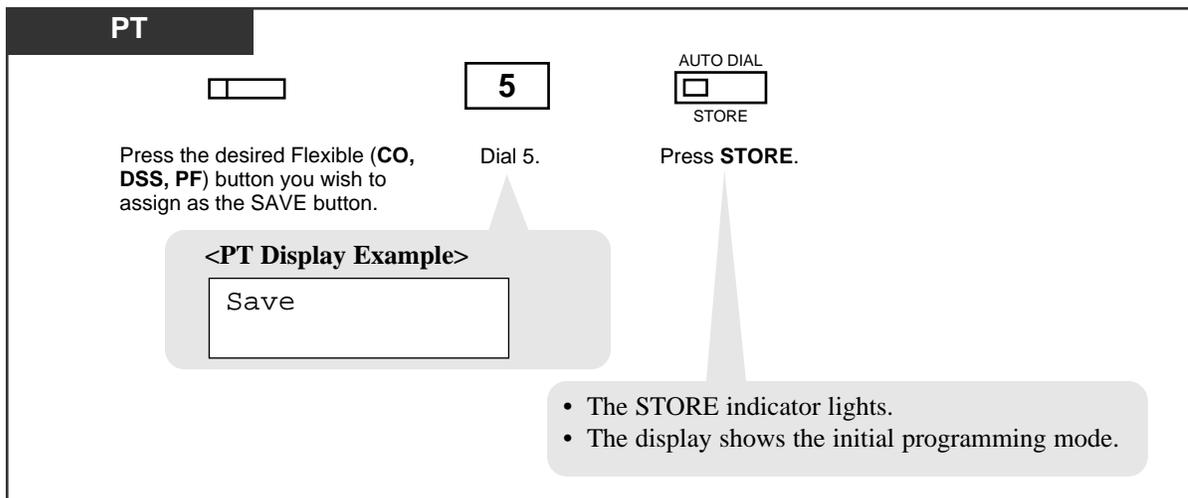
# Station Programming

---

### *SAVE Button (Assignment)*

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button as a SAVE button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Secondary Directory Number (SDN) Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO) button as an SDN button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**PT**

(CO)  **7** **5** extension no. of the owner extension  AUTO DIAL STORE

Press the desired Flexible (CO) button you wish to assign as an SDN button. Dial 75. Enter the extension number (3 or 4 digits) of the owner extension. Press **STORE**.

**<PT Display Example>**

SDN- CLR

**<PT Display Example>**

SDN-xxxx CLR (-xxxx:extension number)

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- An SDN button should have its associated PDN button of another extension. This assignment is available for extensions on which at least one PDN button is already assigned (DN type PT). Otherwise, the SDN button does not function.
- Up to three different SDN buttons can be assigned to a PT

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Single-CO (S-CO) Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS) button as a Single-CO button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**PT**

**0**      **trunk port physical number**      **AUTO DIAL**  
 **STORE**

Press the desired Flexible (CO, DSS) button you wish to assign as an S-CO button.

Dial 0.

Enter the trunk port physical number.

Press **STORE**.

**<PT Display Example>**

CO  
CLR

**<PT Display Example>**

CO xxxxx      (-xxxxx: trunk port physical number)  
CLR

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button.  
(The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- You cannot assign the same CO line to more than one S-CO button on a PT .
- You can assign the same CO line to an S-CO button, a G-CO button and an L-CO button respectively.
- An S-CO button assigned to a DSS button is available for monitoring the call activity only, not available for making or receiving a call.

## 2.2

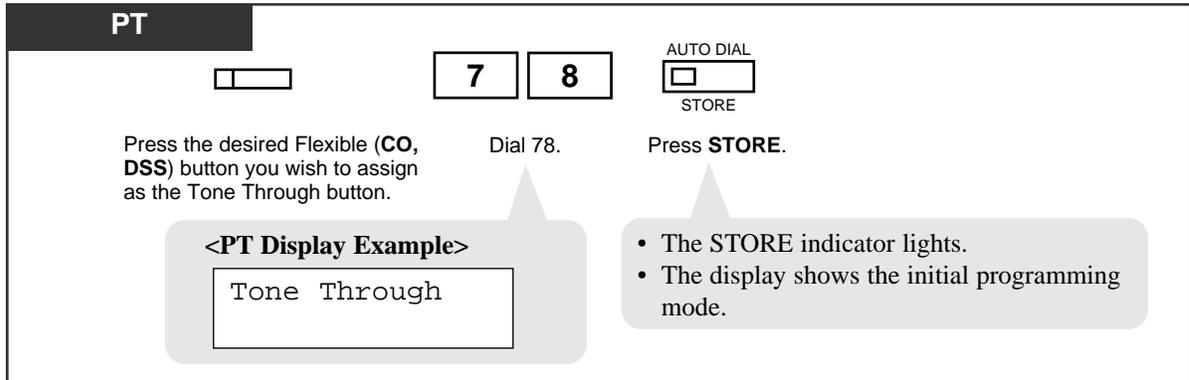
# Station Programming

---

### *Tone Through Button* (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS) button as a Tone Through button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### *Feature References*

End-to-End DTMF Signaling (Tone Through) (R see Features Guide)

**Two-Way Record Button** (Assignment)<sup>†</sup>

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS) button as a Two-Way Record button.  
This allows you to record a conversation into your own mailbox.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**PT**

Press the desired Flexible (CO, DSS) button you wish to assign as the Two-Way Record button.

Dial 90.

Enter the Voice Mail extension number (3 or 4 digits).

Press **STORE**.

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

**<PT Display Example>**

2WAY-REC :  
CLR

**<PT Display Example>**

2WAY-REC : xxxx  
CLR

(-xxxx:VM extension number)

- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

**Conditions**

- You cannot enter a non-existent extension or floating directory number.\*
- The voice mail extension number is acceptable if the number is assigned by System Programming.

**Programming References**

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.1.4 Configuration - VPS(DPT) Port Assignment  
— Ext. No. 1, 2

\* A Floating Directory Number (FDN) is a virtual extension number which appears to be an extension. Refer to “Floating Station” in the Features Guide.

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Two-Way Transfer Button (Assignment)<sup>†</sup>

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS) button as a Two-Way Transfer button. This allows you to record a conversation into a desired mailbox.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

The diagram shows a PT display screen with the following elements:

- PT** header in a dark box.
- Buttons for **9** and **1**.
- A box labeled **Voice Mail extension no.**
- An **AUTO DIAL** indicator with a **STORE** button below it.
- Text instructions: "Press the desired Flexible (CO, DSS) button you wish to assign as the Tow-Way Transfer button.", "Dial 91.", "Enter the Voice Mail extension number (3 or 4 digits).", and "Press **STORE**."
- Two callout boxes for display examples:
  - <PT Display Example>** showing "2WAY-TRANS" and "CLR".
  - <PT Display Example>** showing "2WAY-TRANS : xxxx" and "CLR", with a note "(-xxxx:VM extension number)".
- A list of notes: "• To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)"
- A separate callout box with notes: "• The STORE indicator lights." and "• The display shows the initial programming mode."

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- You cannot enter a non-existent extension or floating directory number.\*
- A voice mail extension number must be assigned by System Programming.

### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.1.4 Configuration - VPS(DPT) Port Assignment  
— Ext. No. 1, 2

\* A Floating Directory Number (FDN) is a virtual extension number which appears to be an extension. Refer to "Floating Station" in the Features Guide.

<sup>†</sup>: Available when the Digital Super Hybrid System is connected to a Digital Proprietary Telephone capable Panasonic Voice Processing System (one that supports digital proprietary telephone integration; e.g. KX-TVS100).

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Voice Mail (VM) Transfer Button (Assignment)

Allows you to assign a Flexible (CO, DSS) button as a VM Transfer button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**PT**

Press the desired Flexible (CO, DSS) button you wish to assign as the VM Transfer button.

Dial 8.

Enter the Voice Mail extension number (3 or 4 digits).

Press **STORE**.

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

**<PT Display Example>**

VTR- CLR

**<PT Display Example>**

VTR-xxxx CLR (-xxxx:VM extension number)

- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- You cannot enter non-existent extension or a floating directory number.\*

### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.3.2 Group - Extension Group
    - FDN
    - Group Type:VM
  - 4.5.9 Features - VPS Integration
    - Voice Mail Command

\* A Floating Directory Number (FDN) is a virtual extension number which appears to be an extension. Refer to “Floating Station” in the Features Guide.

Full One-Touch Dialing Assignment

Allows you to enable or disable the “Full One-Touch Dialing” function. The “Hands-free Operation” mode is activated by pressing an One-Touch Dialing button, DSS button, REDIAL button or SAVE button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

The diagram shows a control panel with a display and several buttons. At the top left, a black box contains the text 'PT'. Below it, there are three buttons: a button with the number '3', a button with the number '1', and a button with the number '2'. To the right of these buttons is a button labeled 'AUTO DIAL' with a small square icon below it and the word 'STORE' below that. Below the '3' button, the text 'Dial 3.' is written. Below the '1' and '2' buttons, the text 'Dial 1 or 2.' is written, followed by '1 : to select the off mode' and '2 : to select the on mode'. Below the 'AUTO DIAL' button, the text 'Press STORE.' is written. A callout box points to the '3' button with the text: '• The STORE indicator light turns off. <PT Display Example> Hands-free:Off (-When disabled)'. Another callout box points to the 'AUTO DIAL' button with the text: '• The STORE indicator lights. • The display shows the initial programming mode.'

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

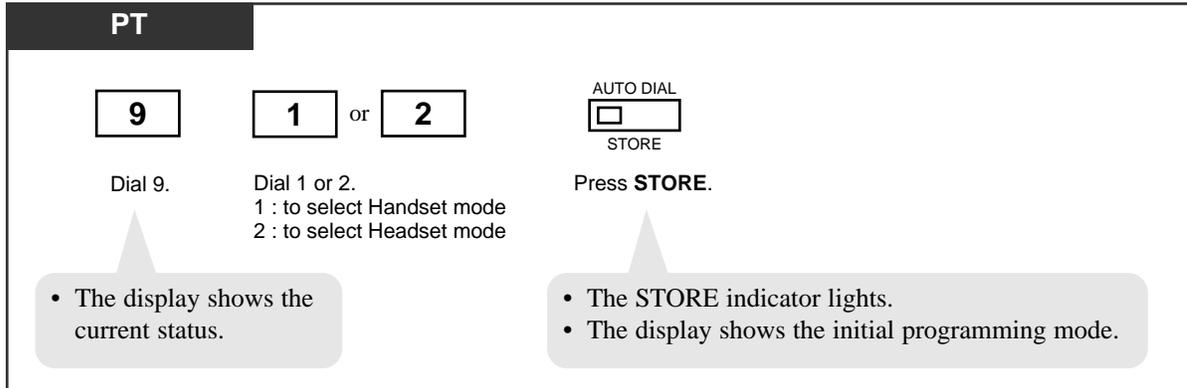
Conditions

- The default is “On.”

*Handset / Headset Selection*

Allows you to select the handset mode or headset mode.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

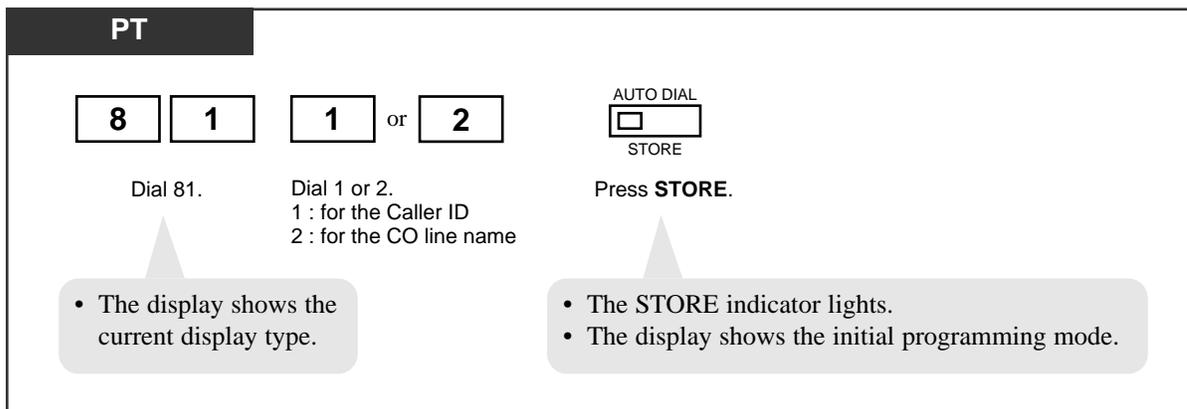
*Conditions*

- The default is “Handset.”

*Initial Display Selection*

Allows you to select the either the initial display, caller ID, or CO line name which is shown on the display when a call is received.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

*Conditions*

- The default is “Caller ID” mode.

## Intercom Alert Assignment

Allows you to select the alert mode (tone / voice) when receiving an intercom (extension) call.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**PT**

**4**      **1** or **2**      **AUTO DIAL**  
**STORE**

Dial 4.      Dial 1 or 2.  
1 : to select the Ring-Calling (Tone Call) mode  
2 : to select the Voice-Calling mode

Press **STORE**.

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

**<PT Display Example>**

- When Ring-Calling (Tone Call) mode is selected;  
Tone Call
- When Voice-Calling mode is selected;  
Voice Call

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- The default is “Ring-Calling (Tone Call).”

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Live Call Screening Mode Set†

Assign whether the recording message is monitored through the built-in speaker (Hands-free mode) or an alert tone is sent (Private mode) while incoming callers are leaving a message in the called extension's mailbox.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

The diagram illustrates the PT display during station programming. At the top left, a dark box contains the text "PT". Below this, three boxes are shown: a box with "7", a box with "1" followed by "or" and a box with "2", and a box with "AUTO DIAL" above a "STORE" indicator (a square with a horizontal line). Below the "7" box is the text "Dial 7.". Below the "1 or 2" boxes is the text "Dial 1 or 2. 1 : for the Hands-free 2 : for the Private mode". Below the "STORE" box is the text "Press **STORE**.". To the right of the "STORE" box is a callout box containing two bullet points: "• The STORE indicator lights." and "• The display shows the initial programming mode.". Below these instructions is a large grey callout box titled "<PT Display Example>". It contains two bullet points: "• When the Hands-free mode is selected;" followed by a box containing "Hands-free", and "• When the Private mode is selected;" followed by a box containing "Private".

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- The default is "Hands-free" mode.

## 2.2

# Station Programming

## *PDN/SDN Button Delayed Ringing Assignment*

Allows you to assign a delayed ringing function on the PDN/SDN buttons.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**PT**

(PDN) or (SDN)    **7** **6**    delayed ringing type no.    AUTO DIAL  
STORE

Press **PDN** or **SDN** you wish to assign a delayed ringing function.

Dial 76.

Enter the delayed ringing type number (0 through 4).  
-0: Immediate Ring  
-1: 1-ring Delay  
-2: 3-ring Delay  
-3: 6-ring Delay  
-4: No Ring

Press **STORE**.

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

<PT Display Example>  
Immediate Ring

<PT Display Example>  
1-ring Delay

- If you want to change the delayed ringing type, enter another type number again.

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### *Conditions*

- If more than one PDN button is assigned on a PT, Delayed Ringing can be set to the first PDN button (assigned to the CO 01) only. This Delayed Ringing setting applies to all PDN buttons on the same PT.

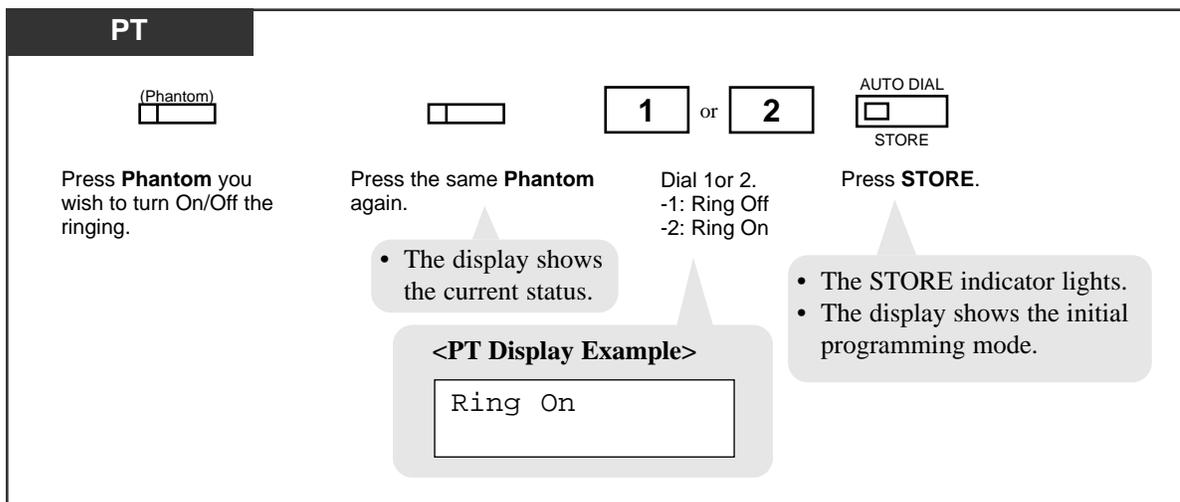
## 2.2

# Station Programming

## Phantom Button Ringing On/Off Assignment

Allows you to assign a ringing On/Off function on a Phantom button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

# Station Programming

## Preferred Line Assignment — Incoming

Allows you to select the method used to answer incoming calls from the following three line preferences:

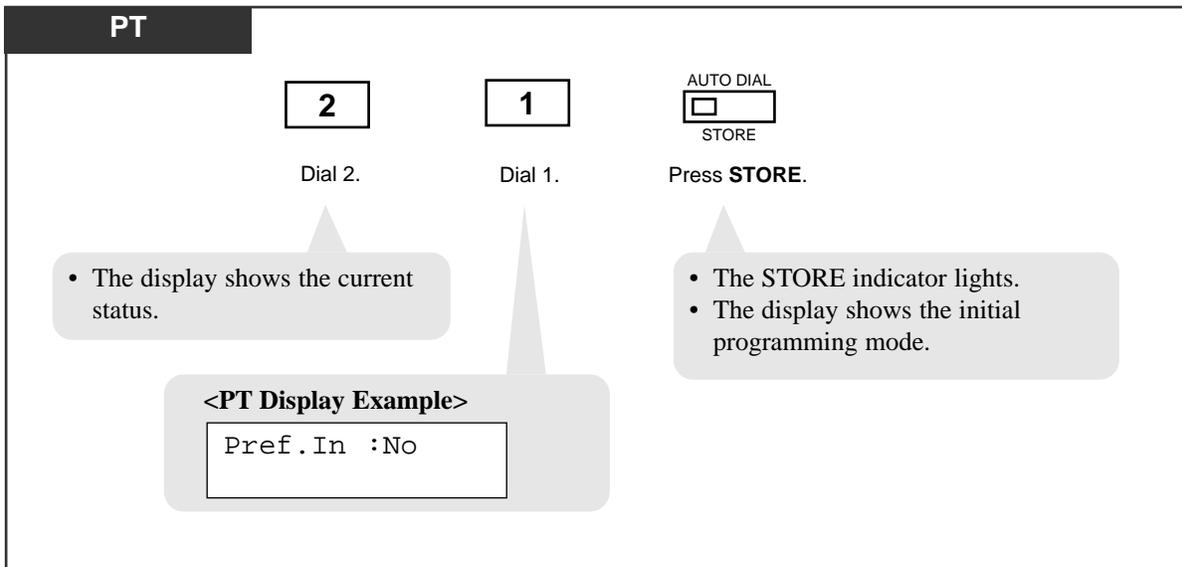
- 1.) No Line Preference
- 2.) Ringing Line Preference (— default)
- 3.) Prime Line Preference

Follow the corresponding programming procedure according to your selection.

## No Line Preference — Incoming (Assignment)

No line is selected when you go off-hook to answer a call. You must select a line to answer an incoming call.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

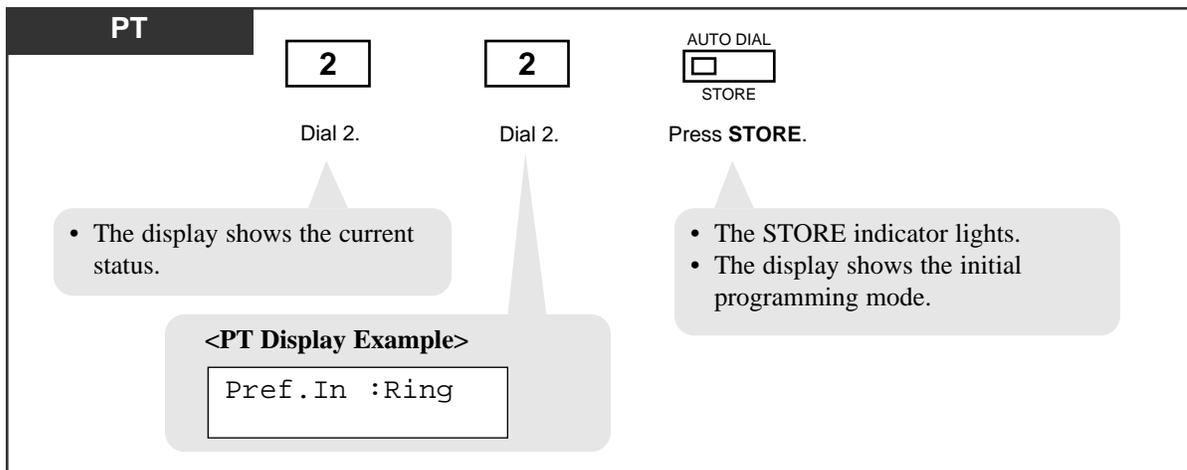
## 2.2

# Station Programming

### *Ringing Line Preference — Incoming (Assignment)*

You are connected to a call ringing on your extension automatically, when you go off-hook to answer a call.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

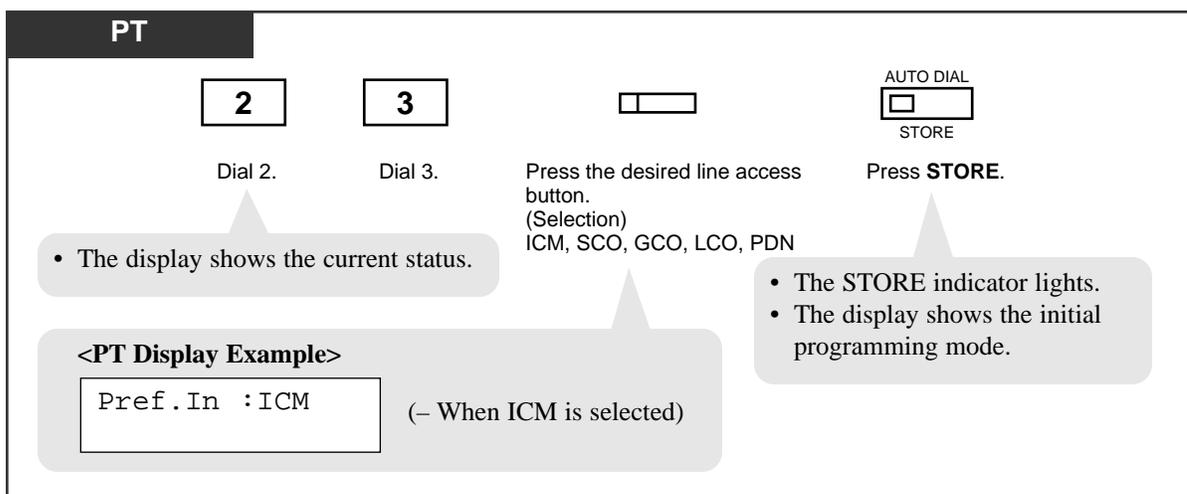


— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### *Prime Line Preference — Incoming (Assignment)*

You are connected to a call on the line assigned as the prime line automatically, when you go off-hook to answer a call.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

***Preferred Line Assignment — Outgoing***

Allows you to select the desired outgoing line preference to originate calls from the following three line preferences:

- 1.) No Line Preference
- 2.) Idle Line Preference
- 3.) Prime Line Preference (INTERCOM) (— default)

Follow the programming procedure according to your selection.

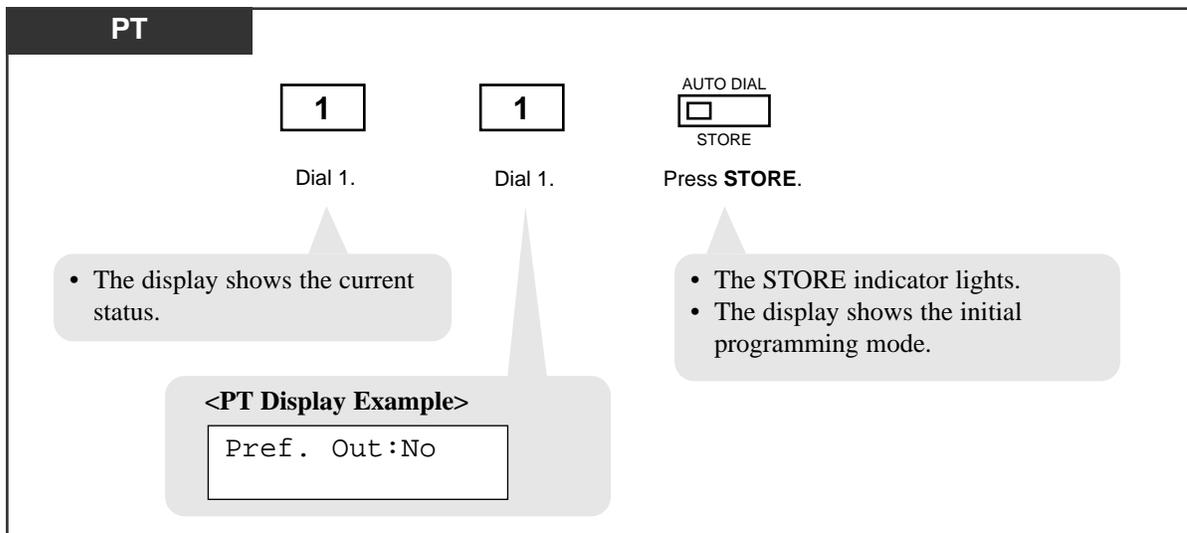
**<Note>**

If “Idle Line Preference,” “No Line Preference” or “Prime Line Preference (SCO, GCO or LCO)” is selected, it is **not** possible to access any PT features after going off-hook. To access these PT features, press the INTERCOM (ICM type PT) or PDN (DN type PT) button before or after going off-hook.

***No Line Preference — Outgoing (Assignment)***

When you go off-hook to make a call, you are not connected to any line. You must choose the line.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

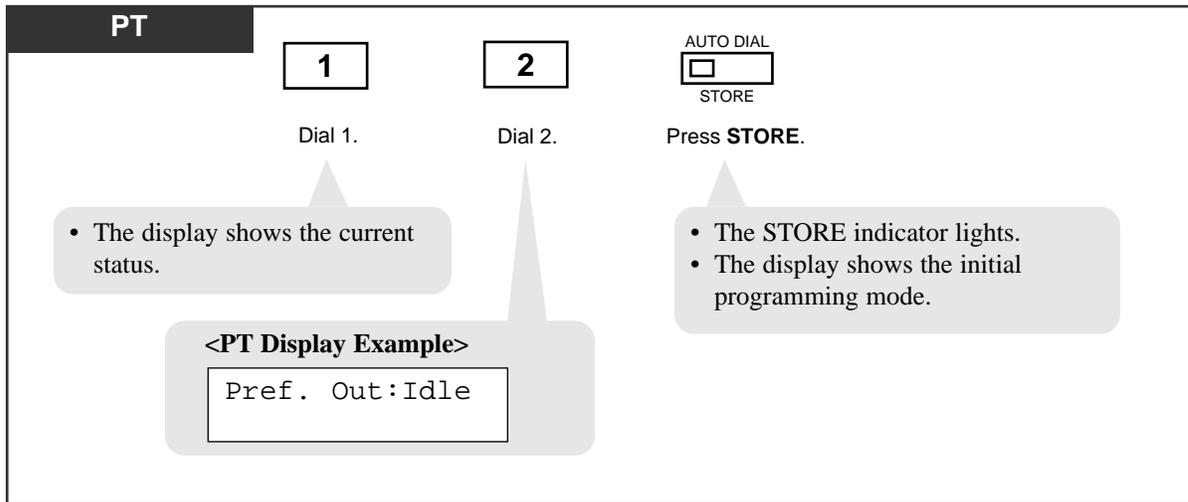
## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Idle Line Preference — Outgoing (Assignment)

When you go off-hook to make a call, you are connected to an idle line automatically.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

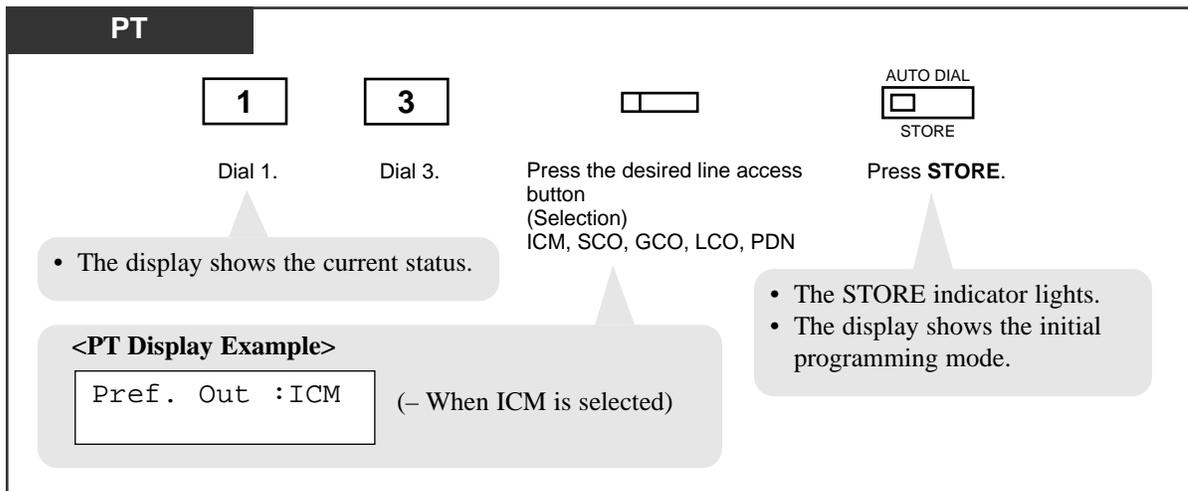


— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Prime Line Preference — Outgoing (Assignment)

When you go off-hook to make a call, you are connected to a line assigned as the prime line automatically.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

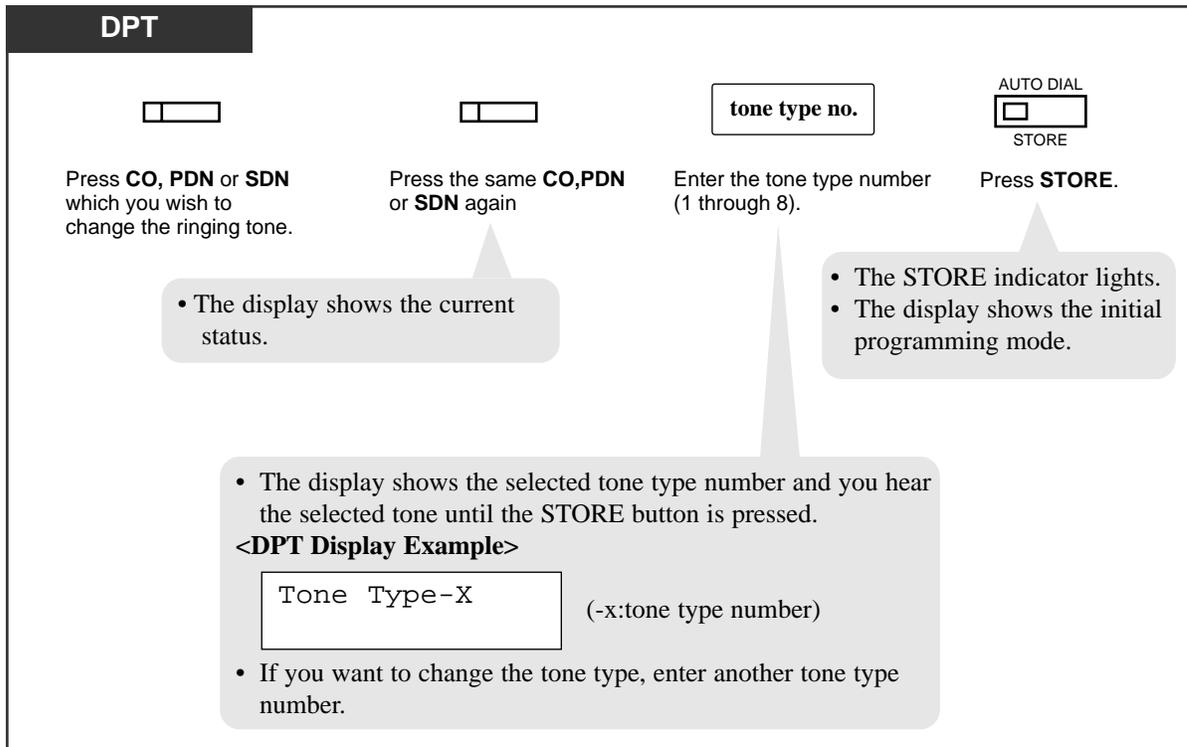
## 2.2

# Station Programming

## Ringing Tone Selection for CO Buttons

Allows you to assign a ringer frequency to each CO, PDN or SDN button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- The default is Ringing Tone Type 2.
- This feature applies to the following line access buttons:  
S-CO, G-CO, L-CO, PDN, SDN

## 2.2

# Station Programming

## Ringing Tone Selection for INTERCOM Button

Allows you to assign a ringer frequency to the INTERCOM button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**DPT**

INTERCOM      INTERCOM      tone type no.      AUTO DIAL  
[ ] [ ]      [ ] [ ]      [ ]      [ ]  
STORE

Press **INTERCOM**.      Press **INTERCOM** again.      Enter the tone type number (1 through 8).      Press **STORE**.

- The display shows the current status
- The display shows the selected tone type number and you hear the selected tone until the STORE button is pressed.
- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

**<DPT Display Example>**

Tone Type-X      (-x:tone type number)

- If you want to change the tone type, enter another tone type number.

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- The default is Ringing Tone Type 3.

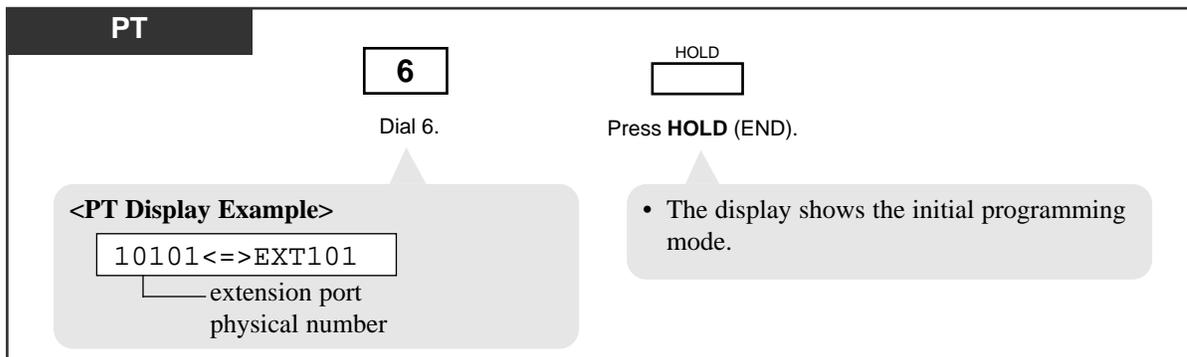
## 2.2

# Station Programming

## Self-Extension Number Confirmation

Allows you to display your extension port physical number and extension number.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



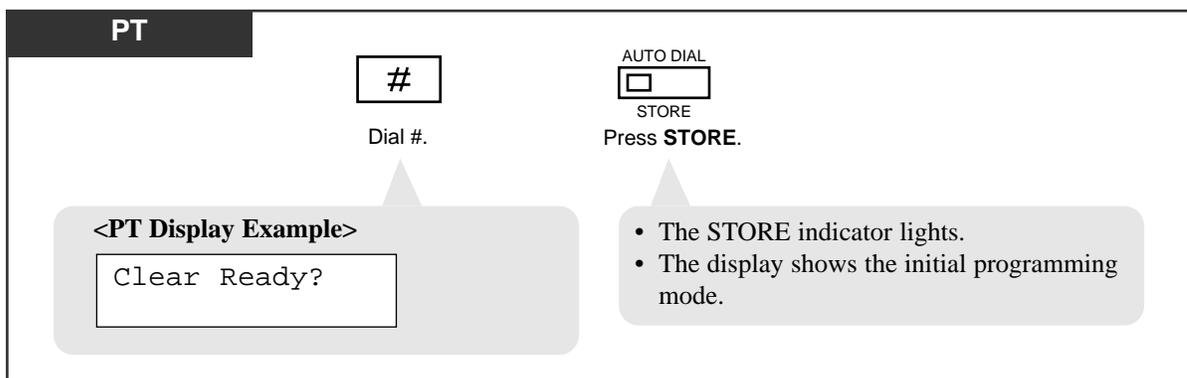
— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## Station Programming Data Default Set

Allows you to return each of the following items assigned by Station Programming to their default settings.

- Auto Hands-free Dialing Assignment (default: On)
- Bilingual Display Selection (default: English)
- Call Waiting Tone Type Assignment (default: Tone 1)
- Handset/Headset Selection (default: Handset)
- Initial Display Selection (default: Caller ID)
- Intercom Alert Assignment (default: Tone Call)
- Live Call Screen Mode Set (default: Hands-free)
- Preferred Line Preference — Incoming (default: Ringing Line)
- Preferred Line Preference — Outgoing (default: INTERCOM Line)

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

# Station Programming

## Station Speed Dialing Number/Name Assignment

[KX-T7235/KX-T7431/KX-T7433/KX-T7436 only]

Allows you to assign frequently dialed numbers and names to each Function button on your PT.

*For KX-T7235 and KX-T7436 users*

*To store a number*

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**7235/7436**

PT-PGM Mode

Press **Function** (F1-F10).

**desired number**

Enter the desired number (extension number, phone number, etc.).

**AUTO DIAL STORE**

Press **STORE**.

- The STORE indicator light turns off.
- The display shows the current status. (If nothing is stored, “Not Stored” is displayed.)

**<PT Display Example>**

9-123-4567  
CLR NEXT

(-Outside number, 123-4567, is now programmed.)

- Up to 16 digits, consisting of 0 through 9, \*, #, FLASH, PAUSE, INTERCOM, (“I” or “J” : secret) and CONF (-:hyphen), can be stored.
- To store the telephone number of an outside party, the line access code (9 or 801 through 848) must be stored as the leading digit.
- To erase the entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button.
- To store a name, press the **NEXT (S3)** button and go to step 3 in “To store a name” as described in the following procedure.

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### To store a name

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**7235/7436**

PT-PGM Mode

Press **Function** (F1-F10).

Press **NEXT** (S3).

- The STORE indicator light turns off.
- The display shows the current status.

**<PT Display Example>**

Bob Graham (— Name is now programmed.)  
CLR NEXT

desired name

Enter the name.

AUTO DIAL STORE

Press **STORE**.

- Refer to the Combination Table on pages 2-46 and 2-47 for information on how to enter each character.
- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

# Station Programming

For KX-T7431 and KX-T7433 users

To store a number

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**7431/7433**

<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">*</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">*</div> Dial * * .	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">station speed dial no.</div> Enter a station speed dial number (0 through 9).	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">desired number</div> Enter the desired number (extension number, phone number, etc.).	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">AUTO DIAL [ ] STORE</div> Press <b>STORE</b> .
---	---	---	--

- The STORE indicator light turns off.
- The display shows the current status.  
(If nothing is stored, “Not Stored” is displayed.)

**<PT Display Example>**

9-123-4567 CLR NEXT	(-Outside number, 123-4567, is now programmed.)
------------------------	---

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

- Up to 16 digits, consisting of 0 through 9, \*, #, FLASH, PAUSE, INTERCOM, (“[” or “[” : secret) and CONF (-:hyphen), can be stored.
- To store the telephone number of an outside party, the line access code (9 or 801 through 848) must be stored as the leading digit.
- To erase the entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or **TRANSFER** button.  
— CLR (S2) button: for KX-T7433 users  
— TRANSFER button: for KX-T7431 users
- To store a name, press the **NEXT (S3)** button (KX-T7433) or **MODE** button (KX-T7431) and go to step 4 in “To store a name” as described in the following procedure.

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### To store a name

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

The diagram illustrates the station programming interface. At the top left, the display shows "7431/7433". Below this, there are two asterisk buttons labeled "Dial \* \* .". To the right is a "station speed dial no." field with the instruction "Enter a station speed dial number (0 through 9)". Further right are three buttons labeled "S1", "S2", and "S3", with a "NEXT" label above them. To the right of these buttons is a "MODE" button. Below the "S1-S3" buttons, it says "Press NEXT (S3) or MODE." A callout box explains: "— NEXT (S3) button: for KX-T7433 users" and "— MODE button: for KX-T7431 users".

Below the "station speed dial no." field, there is a "desired name" field with the instruction "Enter the name." Below this field, a callout box says: "Refer to the Combination Table on pages 2-46 and 2-47 for information on how to enter each character." To the right of the "desired name" field, there is a "STORE" button with an "AUTO DIAL" indicator above it. Below the "STORE" button, it says "Press STORE." A callout box explains: "• The STORE indicator lights." and "• The display shows the initial programming mode."

In the center, a callout box lists: "• The STORE indicator light turns off." and "• The display shows the current status. (If nothing is stored, 'Not Stored' is displayed.)" Below this, it shows a display example: "<PT Display Example> Bob Graham CLR NEXT" with the note "(— Name is now programmed.)"

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 2.2

# Station Programming

### Combination Table

Each character can be entered by using the dial key pad, various buttons or the Jog Dial for storing names.

**Combination Table 1** shows the combination of the keys and the number of times to press the SELECT (AUTO ANSWER/MUTE) button, or the combination of the key and the SHIFT and Soft buttons to enter each character. (The AUTO ANSWER/MUTE button becomes the SELECT button when using the overlay.)

To enter a character, find the key and number of times to press the SELECT button or the corresponding SHIFT and Soft button combination from the table. Press the corresponding key first, then press the SELECT button the required number of times. Or you can use the SHIFT button and a Soft button (S1 through S3) instead of the SELECT button.

**Combination Table 2** shows the combination of keys and the number of pulses to move the Jog Dial (click tones) to the right.

To enter a character, find the key and number pulses to rotate the Jog Dial. Press the corresponding key first, then rotate the Jog Dial the required number of times. Or, if you keep rotating the Jog Dial after pressing any dialing key, all of the characters in the table will be displayed.

Combination Table 1

SHIFT & Soft Combination		S1	SHIFT+ S1	S2	SHIFT+ S2	S3	SHIFT+ S3	SHIFT+ SHIFT+ S1	SHIFT+ SHIFT+ S2
Pressing SELECT (Times)									
keys	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	1	Q	q	Z	z	!	?		
2	2	A	a	B	b	C	c		
3	3	D	d	E	e	F	f		
4	4	G	g	H	h	I	i		
5	5	J	j	K	k	L	l		
6	6	M	m	N	n	O	o		
7	7	P	p	Q	q	R	r	S	s
8	8	T	t	U	u	V	v		
9	9	W	w	X	x	Y	y	Z	z
0	0		.	,	'	:	;		
*	*	/	+	-	=	<	>		
#	#	\$	%	&	@	(	)		

## 2.2

# Station Programming

Combination Table 2

Rotating Jog Dial (Pulses) Keys	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
1	1	Q	q	R	r	S	s	T	t
2	2	A	a	B	b	C	c	D	d
3	3	D	d	E	e	F	f	G	g
4	4	G	g	H	h	I	i	J	j
5	5	J	j	K	k	L	l	M	m
6	6	M	m	N	n	O	o	P	p
7	7	P	p	Q	q	R	r	S	s
8	8	T	t	U	u	V	v	W	w
9	9	W	w	X	x	Y	y	Z	z
0	0		!	?	.	,	'	:	;
*	*	/	+	-	=	<	>	#	\$
#	#	\$	%	&	@	(	)	A	a

<Example> To enter “Mike”

— Using the SELECT button

See Combination Table 1.

1. Press 6 and then press the SELECT button *once* to enter “M.”
2. Press 4 and then press the SELECT button *six* times to enter “i.”
3. Press 5 and then press the SELECT button *four* times to enter “k.”
4. Press 3 and then press the SELECT button *four* times to enter “e.”

— Using the SHIFT button and a Soft button

See Combination Table 1.

1. Press 6 and then press the S1 button to enter “M.”
2. Press 4 and then press the SHIFT and S3 button to enter “i.”
3. Press 5 and then press the S2 button to enter “k.”
4. Press 3 and then press the S2 button to enter “e.”

— Using the Jog Dial (*With a KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 only*)  
See Combination Table 2.

1. Press 6 and then rotate the Jog Dial *one* pulse to enter “M”.
2. Press 4 and then rotate the Jog Dial *six* pulses to enter “i”.
3. Press 5 and then rotate the Jog Dial *four* pulses to enter “k”.
4. Press 3 and then rotate the Jog Dial *four* pulses to enter “e”.

OR

1. Press 2 and then rotate the Jog Dial until “M” appears.
2. Press 2 and then rotate the Jog Dial until “i” appears.
3. Press 2 and then rotate the Jog Dial until “k” appears.
4. Press 2 and then rotate the Jog Dial until “e” appears.

### *Notes*

- Pressing the SHIFT button alternates between capital and lower case letters. Once this button is pressed, that letter SHIFT mode remains until SHIFT is pressed again.
- To erase the last word (to backspace), press the CONF button.  
(The CONF button becomes the “←” (backspace) key when using the overlay.)
- To erase all of the data, press the CLR (S2) button.
- If you keep rotating the Jog Dial, all of the characters will be displayed in order.  
<Example> If you rotate the Jog Dial after pressing 2, all of the characters will appear in the following order:  
A a B b ... Z z (space) ! ? . , ' : ; \* / + - = < > # \$ % & @ ( ) A a  
B b ...

### *Conditions*

- The default is “Not Stored”.
- Up to 10 dialing numbers and names can be assigned. Each dialing number has a maximum of 16 digits and each name has a maximum of 10 characters.
- The number can be an extension number, telephone number or a feature number.
- To store the telephone number of an outside party, a line access code (9, or 801 through 848) must be stored as the leading digit.
- You can use 0 through 9, \*, #, PAUSE, FLASH, CONF and INTERCOM for storing.
  - FLASH : hook flash
  - PAUSE : pause
  - CONF : — (hyphen)
  - INTERCOM : for secret dialing

# *Section 3*

## *User Programming*

### *Contents*

<b>3.1</b>	<b><i>User Programming Instructions</i></b> .....	<b>3-2</b>
	<i>General Programming Instructions</i> .....	3-2
	<i>Programming Methods</i> .....	3-6
<b>3.2</b>	<b><i>User Programming</i></b> .....	<b>3-8</b>

## 3.1 *User Programming Instructions*

---

### *General Programming Instructions*

User Programming allows you, any extension user who knows the User Programming Password, to program the following system features from your telephone individually.

- [000] Date and Time Set
- [001] System Speed Dialing Number Set
- [002] System Speed Dialing Name Set
- [004] Extension Name Set
- [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- [006] Caller ID Dial Set
- [007] Caller ID Name Set
- [008] Absent Messages
- [009] Quick Dial Number Set

To program, you need to switch your telephone to the User Programming mode. During the programming mode, your extension is treated as a busy extension. If you want to make a normal call operation, you must finish the programming mode.

#### *Default Setting*

This system has default factory settings.

#### *Required Telephone Set*

One of the following Proprietary Telephone (PT) sets with display is required for User Programming:

- Digital Proprietary Telephone (DPT): KX-T7436, KX-T7433, KX-T7431, KX-T7235, KX-T7230
- Analog Proprietary Telephone (APT): KX-T7130, KX-T7030

#### *Soft Buttons and SHIFT Button on the Display PT*

Three soft buttons are provided just below the display of the following Digital Proprietary Telephones (DPTs): KX-T7230, KX-T7235, KX-T7433, KX-T7436. Functions of these Soft buttons vary as the programming procedures advance step by step. Those functions that are currently assigned to the buttons are shown on the lower line of the display. If the **SHIFT** button indicator is on, two functions are available for each Soft button. To alternate between the two functions, press the **SHIFT** button on the right side of the display.

## 3.1 *User Programming Instructions*

---

### *Using the Overlay*

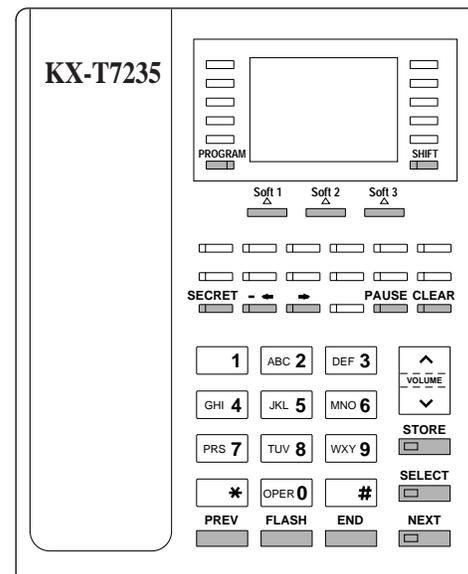
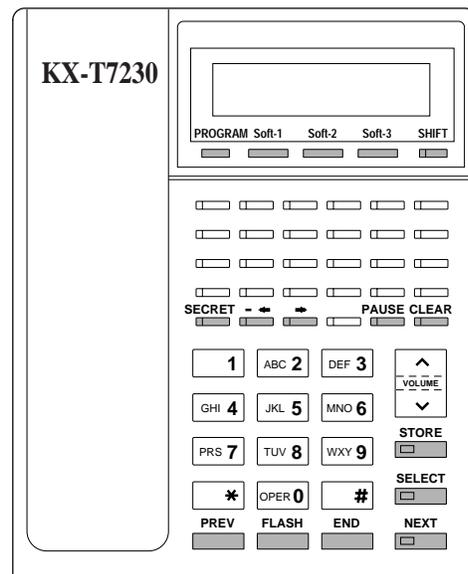
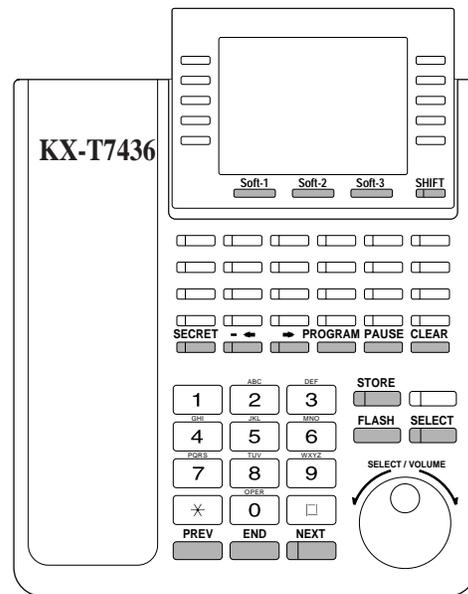
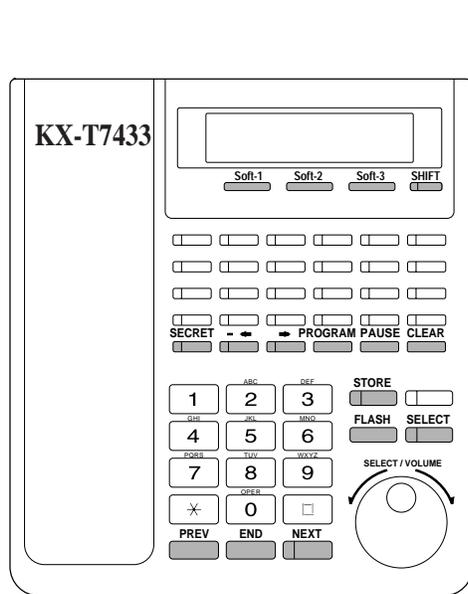
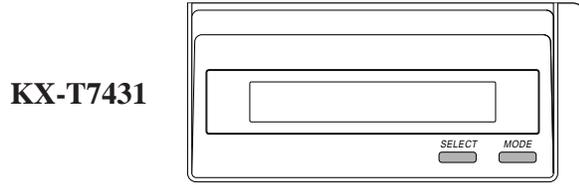
A programming overlay is packed with the telephone at the factory. This overlay should be used at all times in the programming mode since the functions of the telephone keys change in the programming mode as follows: (The original functions are in parentheses.)

<b>During Normal Operation</b>	<b>During Programming</b>
(PAUSE / PROGRAM)	<b>PAUSE / PROGRAM</b>
(SP-PHONE)	<b>NEXT</b>
(REDIAL)	<b>PREV (PREVIOUS)</b>
(AUTO ANSWER / MUTE)	<b>SELECT</b>
(FLASH)	<b>FLASH</b>
(TRANSFER)	<b>CLEAR</b>
(FWD/DND)	<b>➡</b>
(CONF)	<b>- / ⬅</b>
(INTERCOM)	<b>SECRET</b>
(AUTO DIAL / STORE)	<b>STORE</b>
(HOLD)	<b>END</b>
(Up/Down/JOG)	<b>Skip+/Skip-</b>

# 3.1 User Programming Instructions

## Location of Controls with the Overlay

The pictures below show the functions of the buttons of the KX-T7433, KX-T7436, KX-T7230 and KX-T7235 in the programming mode. KX-T7431 is the same as KX-T7433 except for the Soft and SHIFT buttons.



# 3.1 *User Programming Instructions*

---

## *Before entering the user programming mode*

Before entering the user programming mode, confirm that:

- Your telephone is on-hook, and
- No calls are on hold at your telephone.

## *Entering the user programming mode*

To enter the User Programming mode:

Press **PROGRAM + \* + \* + User Programming Password (default:1234)**

- The display shows the Initial Message: SYS-PGM NO?→

### **Note:**

- If nothing is entered within five seconds after the **PROGRAM** button is pressed, programming mode is canceled.
- During the programming mode, your extension is treated as a busy extension.
- Only one proprietary telephone can be in programming mode at any one time.
- The User Programming Password is not shown on the display for security reason. The password can be changed by System Programming.

## *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.10.4 Maintenance - System Parameters
    - Password
    - User Programming

## 3.1 *User Programming Instructions*

---

### *Programming Methods*

#### *Advancing to the next stage*

When “SYS-PGM NO?→” is displayed, you can select one of the following:

- To go to program [000], press the **NEXT** button.
- To go to another program, enter the 3-digit program address.

#### *Entering Characters*

You can enter characters to store names for speed dial numbers, extension numbers, etc., by using the dialing key pad and buttons.

Each of the twelve dialing keys on the dialing key pad represents seven characters. Refer to the “Station Speed Dialing Number / Name Assignment (KX-T7235, KX-T7436)” in Section 2.2 Station Programming.

#### *Storing your data*

Press **STORE** to store your data.

- The **STORE** indicator lights red and a confirmation tone sounds.

#### \* **Confirmation tone (one beep)**

After pressing **STORE**, you will hear a beep. This informs you that storage is completed.

#### \* **Alarm tone (three beeps)**

If you hear this alarm, your entry is not valid.

#### *Making another selection within the same program address*

- To go to the next selection, press **NEXT**.
- To go to the previous selection, press **PREV**.
- To make a specific selection, press **SELECT** and then enter the number.

#### *Accessing another program address*

After pressing **STORE**, you can access another program by one of the following two methods:

- (1) • To go to the next larger program address:

<KX-T7200 series>

Press **Soft 1 (SKP+)** or **VOLUME ∨ (DOWN)**.

<KX-T7400 series>

Rotate the **Jog Dial** clockwise.

- To go to the next smaller program address:

<KX-T7200 series>

Press **SHIFT + Soft 1 (SKP-)** or **VOLUME ^ (UP)**.

<KX-T7400 series>

Rotate the **Jog Dial** counterclockwise.

- (2) To go to a specific program address:

Press **END**, then enter the program address.

## 3.1 *User Programming Instructions*

---

### *Returning to the operation mode*

When the Initial Message: `SYS-PGM NO?→` is displayed, press the **PROGRAM** button.

(To display the Initial Message, press **END**.)

# 000 3.2 User Programming

## Date and Time Set

---

### NOTICE

It is assumed that you have read Section 3.1 “User Programming Instructions.” Soft button usage is explained in that section, therefore no references will be made to them in the following instructions. The soft buttons can be used in place of the overlay keys at any time.

#### *Description*

Sets the current date and time.

#### *Selection*

- Year: **00 through 99**
- Month: **JAN. through DEC.**
- Day: **1 through 31**
- Day of the week: **SUN / MON / TUE / WED / THU / FRI / SAT**
- Hour: **01 through 12**
- Minute: **00 through 59**
- **AM / PM**
- Clock hour: **12 or 24**

#### *Default*

'99 JAN. 1 FRI 12:00 AM

#### *Programming*

See page 3-9.

#### *Conditions*

- After changing an entry, you can press **STORE**. You do not have to perform the rest of the steps.
- To return to the previous field, press **←** in steps 4 through 9 and steps 13 through 16.
- If you hear an alarm after pressing **STORE**, check that the date is valid.
- The clock starts immediately after the **STORE** button is pressed.
- You cannot leave an entry empty.

#### *Feature References*

**Features Guide,**  
Display, Date and Time

## Date and Time Set (contd.)

### Display PT

**1.** <Date Setting>

0

0

0

Dial 000.

**2.**

NEXT

□

Press NEXT.

**3.**

year

Enter the year  
(last 2 digits).

**4.**

→

□

Press →.

<PT Display>

000 DATE / TIME

<PT Display Example>

'99 JAN. 1 FRI

- To change the current entry, press CLEAR and enter the new year.

**5.**

SELECT

□

Keep pressing **SELECT** until the desired month is displayed.

**6.**

→

□

Press →.

**7.**

day

Enter the day  
(01 through 31).

**8.**

→

□

Press →.

**9.**

SELECT

□

Keep pressing **SELECT** until the desired day of the week is displayed.

- To change the current entry, press CLEAR and enter the new day.

<Time Setting>

**10.**

STORE

□

Press **STORE**.

**11.**

NEXT

□

Press **NEXT**.

**12.**

hour

Enter the hour  
(01 through 12).

**13.**

→

□

Press →.

**14.**

minute

Enter the minute  
(00 through 59).

<PT Display Example>

12:00 AM 12

- To change the current entry, press CLEAR and enter the new hour.

- To change the current entry, press CLEAR and enter the new minute.

**15.**

→

□

Press →.

**16.**

SELECT

□

Press **SELECT** for AM or PM.

**17.**

→

□

Press →.

**18.**

SELECT

□

Press **SELECT** for 12 or 24 (clock hour).

**19.**

STORE

□

Press **STORE**.

**20.**

END

Press **END**.

# 001 3.2 User Programming

## System Speed Dialing Number Set

### Description

Used to program the System Speed Dialing numbers. These numbers are available for any extension user in the system.

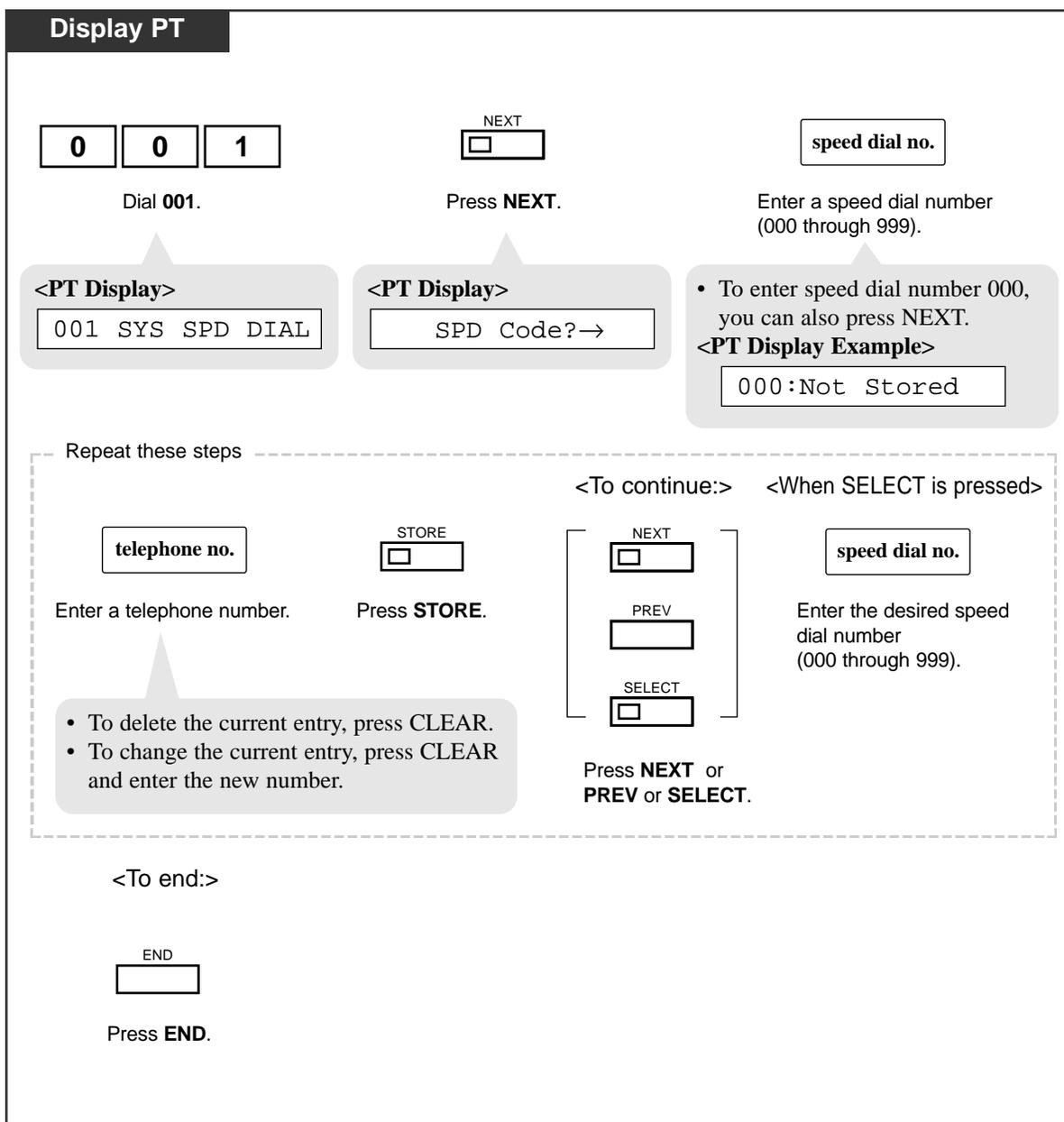
### Selection

- Speed dial numbers: **000 through 999**
- Telephone number: **24 digits (max.)**

### Default

All speed dial numbers – Not Stored

### Programming



---

**System Speed Dialing Number Set (contd.)**

---

**Conditions**

- There is a maximum of 1000 speed dial numbers per tenant. However, this can be changed by System programming. System supports a maximum of 2000 speed dial numbers, being shared among up to 8 tenants. Each speed dial number has a maximum of 24 digits. The valid characters are **0 through 9, \*, and # keys, and the FLASH, PAUSE, SECRET and – (hyphen) buttons.**
  - To store the flash signal, press **FLASH**.  
**Note :** The stored flash will only be effective during an established call.  
(Refer to “External Feature Access” in the Features Guide.)
  - To store a hyphen, press the “-” button.
  - To store a pause, press **PAUSE**.  
(Refer to “Pause Insertion, Automatic” in the Features Guide.)
  - To prevent displaying all or part of the number, press **SECRET** before and after the confidential parts of the number, or your entry is not stored. (Refer to “Secret Dialing” in the Features Guide.)
- If you are storing an external number, enter the line access code (default=9, 801 through 848) before the number. When dialing, a pause is automatically inserted after the code.
- If you are storing an account code, enter the account code before the line access code. (Refer to “Account Code Entry” in the Features Guide.)
- It is possible to store a number consisting of 25 digits or more by storing it in two speed dial numbers. The line access code should be stored in the first speed dial number.
- To display parts of the number which have scrolled off the display, press **▶** or **◀**.
- Program [002] “System Speed Dialing Name Set” is used to name the speed dial numbers.
- CO line access code must be placed before placing secret dial code ‘S’ or ‘[.’

**Feature References**

System Speed Dialing (4.3/Station Features and Operation 4.5/Special Display Features)

# 002 3.2 User Programming

## System Speed Dialing Name Set

### Description

Assigns names to the system speed dial numbers assigned in program [001] “System Speed Dialing Number Set.” The KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 and T7235 show the stored name during System Speed Dialing.

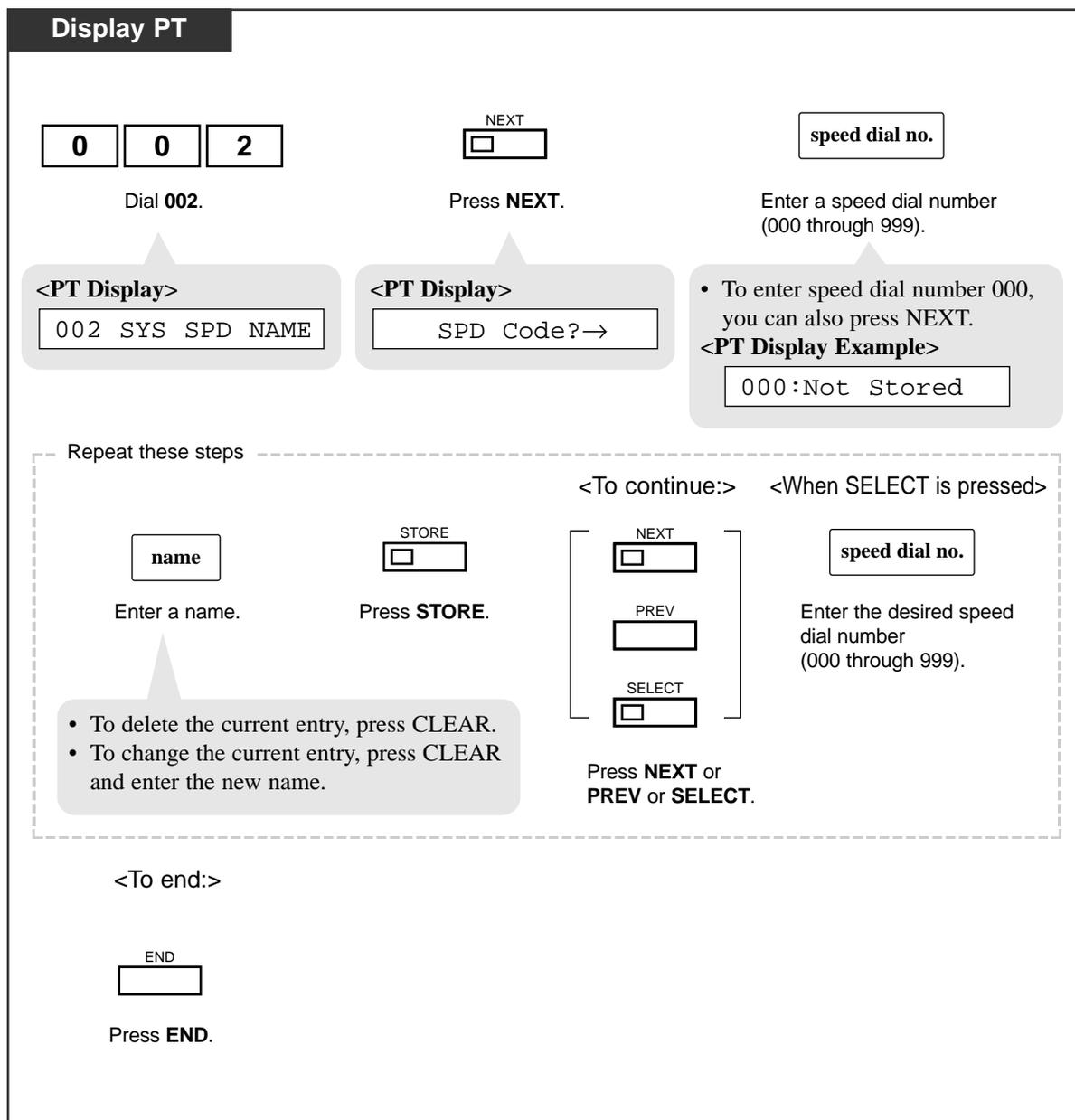
### Selection

- Speed dial number: **000 through 999**
- Name: **10 characters (max.)**

### Default

All speed dial numbers – Not Stored

### Programming



### *System Speed Dialing Name Set (contd.)*

---

#### ***Conditions***

- Speed dial numbers are programmed in program [001] “System Speed Dialing Number Set.”
- There is a maximum of 1000 names, with a maximum of 10 characters for each.
- For entering characters, see “Station Speed Dialing Number/Name Assignment” in Section 2.2 “Station Programming.”

#### ***Feature References***

System Speed Dialing (4.3/Station Features and Operation, 4.5/Special Display Features)

# 004 3.2 User Programming

## Extension Name Set

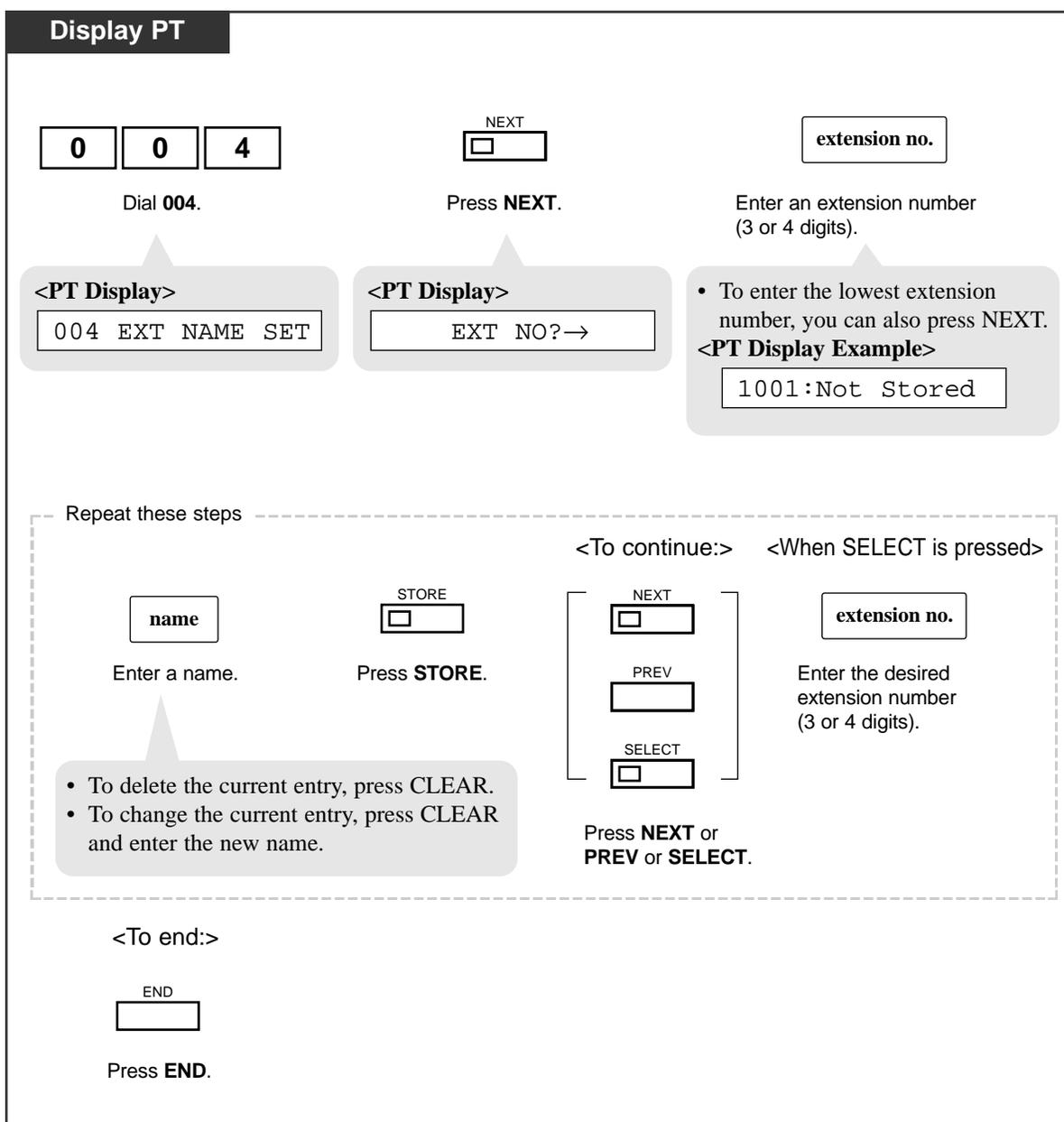
**Description** Assigns names to the extension numbers.

**Selection**

- Extension number: **3 or 4 digits**
- Name: **10 characters (max.)**

**Default** All extension ports – Not Stored

### Programming



### *Extension Name Set (contd.)*

---

#### *Conditions*

- Each name has a maximum of 10 characters.
- For entering characters, see “Station Speed Dialing Number/Name Assignment” in Section 2.2 “Station Programming.”

#### *Feature References*

Inter Office Calling (4.3/Station Features and Operation)  
Extension Directory (4.5/Special Display Features)

# 005 3.2 User Programming

## Flexible CO Button Assignment

---

### Description

Used to determine the use of the flexible CO buttons on proprietary telephones from a PT.

### Selection

- Extension number: **3 or 4 digits**
- Button Code (plus parameter, if required):

Button Code	Parameter
<b>0</b> (Single-CO)	<b>10101 through 31408</b> (trunk port physical number)
<b>1</b> (DSS)	<b>3 through 4 digits</b> (Extension number)
<b>2</b> (One-Touch)	<b>16 digits max.</b> (Telephone number)
<b>3</b> (Message Waiting)	None
<b>4</b> (FWD/DND)	None
<b>5</b> (Save)	None
<b>6</b> (Account)	None
<b>70</b> (Conference)	None
<b>71</b> (Log-In/Log-Out)	None
<b>72</b> (Phantom)	<b>3 through 4 digits</b> (Phantom extension number)
<b>73</b> (DAY/NIGHT)	None
<b>74</b> (PDN)	None
<b>75</b> (SDN)	<b>3 through 4 digits</b> (Owner extension number)
<b>76</b> (PDN/SDN Delayed Ringing)	<b>0 through 4</b> (delayed ringing type)
<b>77</b> (Alarm)	None
<b>78</b> (Tone Through)	None
<b>8</b> (Voice Mail Transfer)	<b>3 through 4 digits</b> (VM Extension number)
<b>90</b> (Two-Way Record)†	<b>3 through 4 digits</b> (VM Extension number)
<b>91</b> (Two-Way Transfer)†	<b>3 through 4 digits</b> (VM Extension number)
<b>92</b> (Live Call Screening)†	None
<b>93</b> (Live Call Screening Cancel)†	None
<b>94</b> (Answer)	None
<b>95</b> (Release)	None
<b>*</b> (Loop-CO)	None
<b>#</b> (Group-CO)	<b>01 through 48</b> (trunk group number)
<b>CO/INTERCOM</b> (ringer frequency)	<b>1 through 8</b> (ring tone type number)
<b>Phantom</b> (ringing on/off)	<b>1</b> (off) / <b>2</b> (on)

### Default

For all PTs – CO button 1 = Loop-CO;  
 Ring tone type 2  
 Others = Not Stored.

## Flexible CO Button Assignment (contd.)

### Programming

**Display PT**

0

0

5

Dial **005**.

NEXT

Press **NEXT**.

extension no.

Enter an extension number  
(3 or 4 digits).

**<PT Display>**

005 FLEXIBLE CO

**<PT Display>**

EXT NO?→

**<PT Display Example>**

PT-PGM Mode

- To enter the lowest extension number, you can also press NEXT.

- To program another CO button of the same extension port:

Repeat these steps

CO

Press **CO** which is changed to another button.

button code

Enter a button code.

parameters

Enter parameters, if required.

STORE

Press **STORE**.

- The display shows the contents pre-assigned to the button.

**<PT Display Example>**

CO-10101

- To change the parameter, press CLEAR and enter the new parameter.

- To program another extension port:

SELECT

Press **SELECT**.

extension no.

Enter an extension number  
(3 or 4 digits).

**Repeat these steps.**

Go to "Repeat these steps" above.

<To end:>

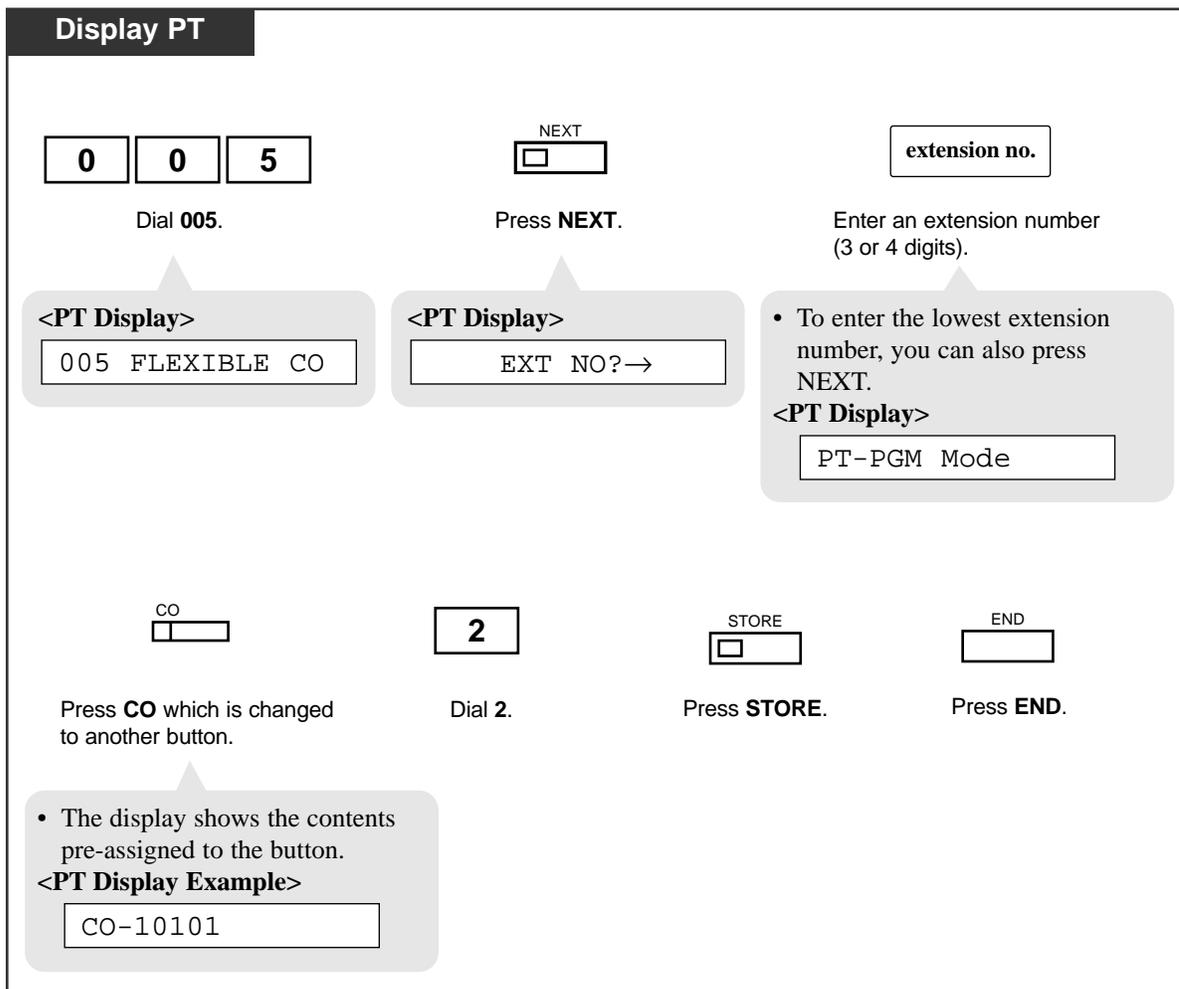
END

Press **END**.

# 005 3.2 User Programming

## Flexible CO Button Assignment (contd.)

### Canceling



### Conditions

- The number of the CO buttons available for each PT varies depending on the telephone type. (Refer to “Buttons on Proprietary Telephones.” in the Features Guide) To program 24 CO buttons, use the proprietary telephone with 24 CO buttons, such as KX-T7230.
- If you press the same CO button again at step 5, you can select a desired ringer frequency for the CO button from eight types of ring tones. When you enter the tone type number (1 through 8), you will hear the selected tone type until STORE is pressed. This selection is possible only for the CO buttons that have been assigned to Single-CO, Group-CO, Loop-CO, PDN or SDN.

### Feature References

Features Guide,  
Button, Flexible

Buttons on Proprietary Telephones

**Caller ID Dial Set**

---

**Description**

Sets the identification code of the calling party (Caller ID Code) to utilize Caller ID Service provided by a specific central office (CO). If an ID Code transmitted from CO is found in the Caller ID Code Table, the caller's ID Code or a name given to the code in program [007] "Caller ID Name Set" is displayed on the telephone, allowing the called party to recognize the caller.

**Selection**

- Location number: **000 through 999**
- Caller ID Code: **24 digits (max.), consisting of 0 through 9, \*, #**

**Default**

All locations – Not Stored

**Programming**

See page 3-20.

**Conditions**

- Up to 1000 Caller ID Code per tenant, 2000 per system, can be assigned.
- Program [007] "Caller ID Name Set" is used to give names to Caller ID Codes. If an ID Code is given a name, the called party's telephone shows the name with the ID Code.

**Feature References**

**Features Guide,**  
Caller ID Service

# 006 3.2 User Programming

## Caller ID Dial Set (contd.)

### Programming

Display PT

0

0

6

Dial **006**.

NEXT

Press **NEXT**.

location no.

Enter a location number  
(000 through 999).

<PT Display>

006 CALLER ID #

<PT Display>

Location NO?→

- To enter location number 000, you can also press NEXT.

<PT Display Example>

000:Not Stored

Repeat these steps

Caller ID Number

Enter a Caller ID Number.

STORE

Press **STORE**.

<To continue:>

NEXT

PREV

SELECT

Press **NEXT** or **PREV** or **SELECT**.

<When SELECT is pressed>

location no.

Enter the desired location number  
(000 through 999).

<To end:>

END

Press **END**.

## Caller ID Name Set

### Description

With Caller ID Service, the calling party is displayed either by its ID Code or by its name. If the name display is required, use this program to give a name to a Caller ID Code stored in program [006] “Caller ID Dial Set.”

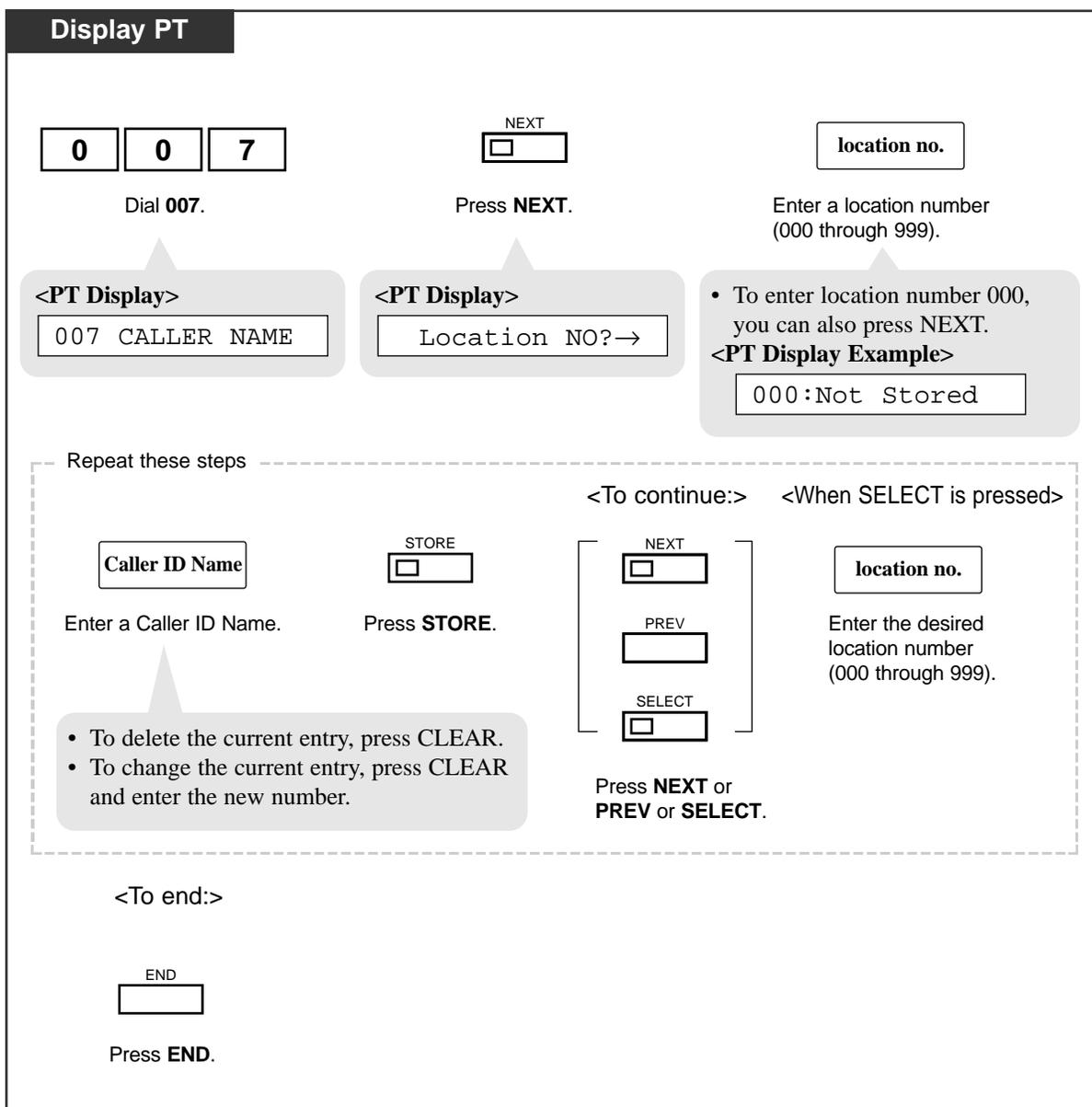
### Selection

- Location number: **000 through 999**
- Caller ID Name: **16 characters (max.) consisting of 0 through 9, \* and #**

### Default

All locations – Not Stored

### Programming



# 007

## 3.2 *User Programming*

### *Caller ID Name Set (contd.)*

---

#### ***Conditions***

- Up to 1000 Caller ID Names per tenant, 2000 per system, can be assigned. Each name corresponds to a Caller ID Code programmed by [006] “Caller ID Dial Set.”
- A Caller ID Name cannot be assigned if the corresponding Caller ID Dial is not assigned.
- For entering characters, see “Station Speed Dialing Number/Name Assignment” in Section 2.2 “Station Programming.”

#### ***Feature References***

**Features Guide,**  
Caller ID Service

### Absent Messages

---

#### **Description**

Used to program the absent messages. An absent message, if set by the extension user, is displayed on the display of calling extension's PT to show the reason for the user's absence.

#### **Selection**

- Message number: **1 through 9**
- Message: **16 characters (max.)**

#### **Default**

1: Will Return Soon	5: Out Until %%%%
2: Gone Home	6: In a Meeting
3: At Ext %%%%	7 through 9: Blank (not stored)
4: Back at %:%:%	

#### **Programming**

See page 3-24.

#### **Conditions**

- There is a maximum of nine messages. Messages 1 through 6 are programmed at the factory but can be changed. Each message has a maximum of 16 characters.
- For entering characters, see "Station Speed Dialing Number/Name Assignment" in Section 2.2 "Station Programming."
- You can enter a maximum of seven "%" characters per message which can be programmed at each user's station. The extension user can enter 0 through 9, "\*", and # for the % characters. If the user enters digits less than the number of "%" characters, it is recommended to fill the remaining "%" characters with "#" or "\*".
- To display parts of the message which have scrolled off the display, press **▶** or **◀**.

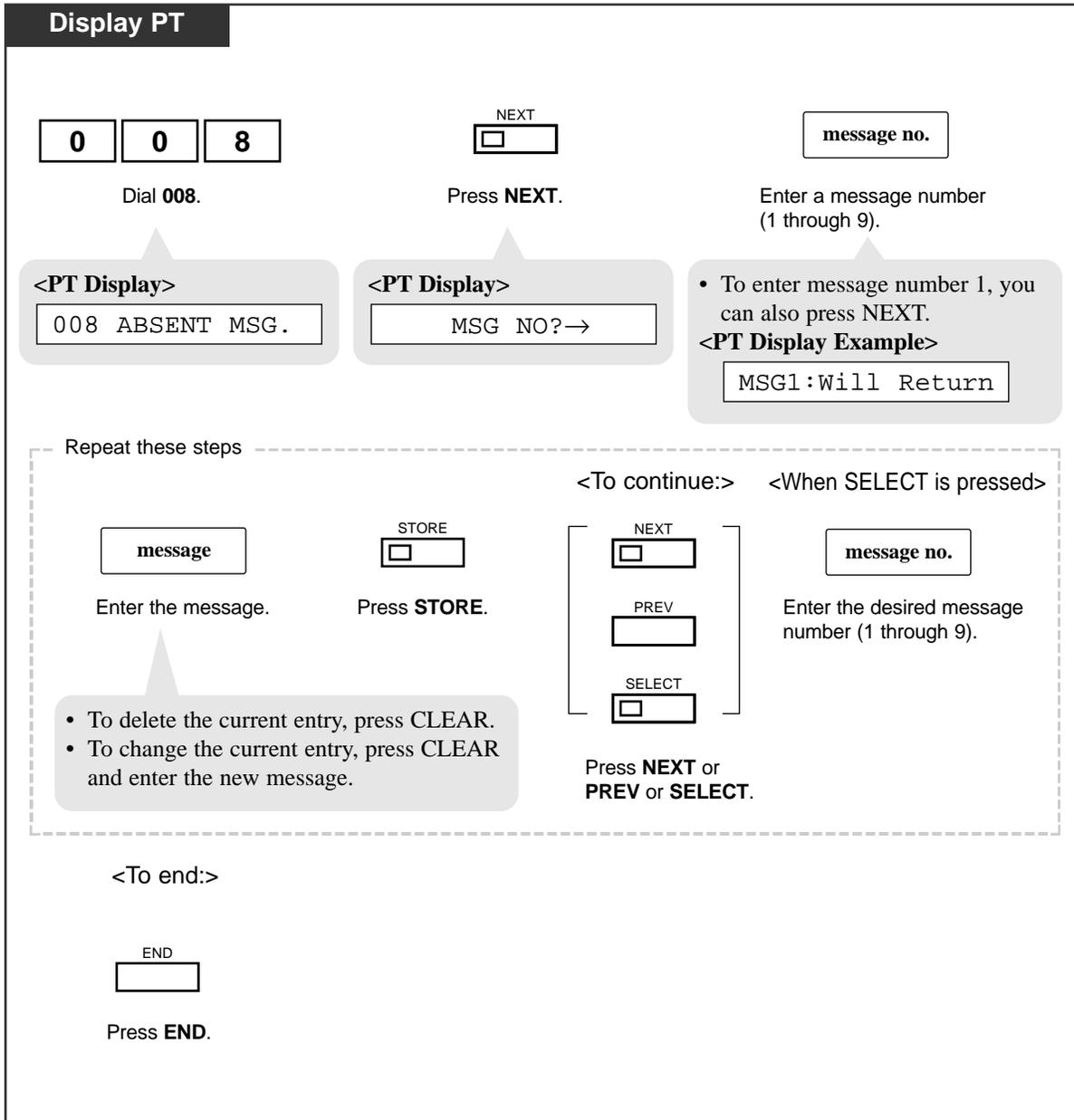
#### **Feature References**

**Features Guide,**  
Absent Message Capability

# 008 3.2 User Programming

## Absent Messages (contd.)

### Programming



## Quick Dial Number Set

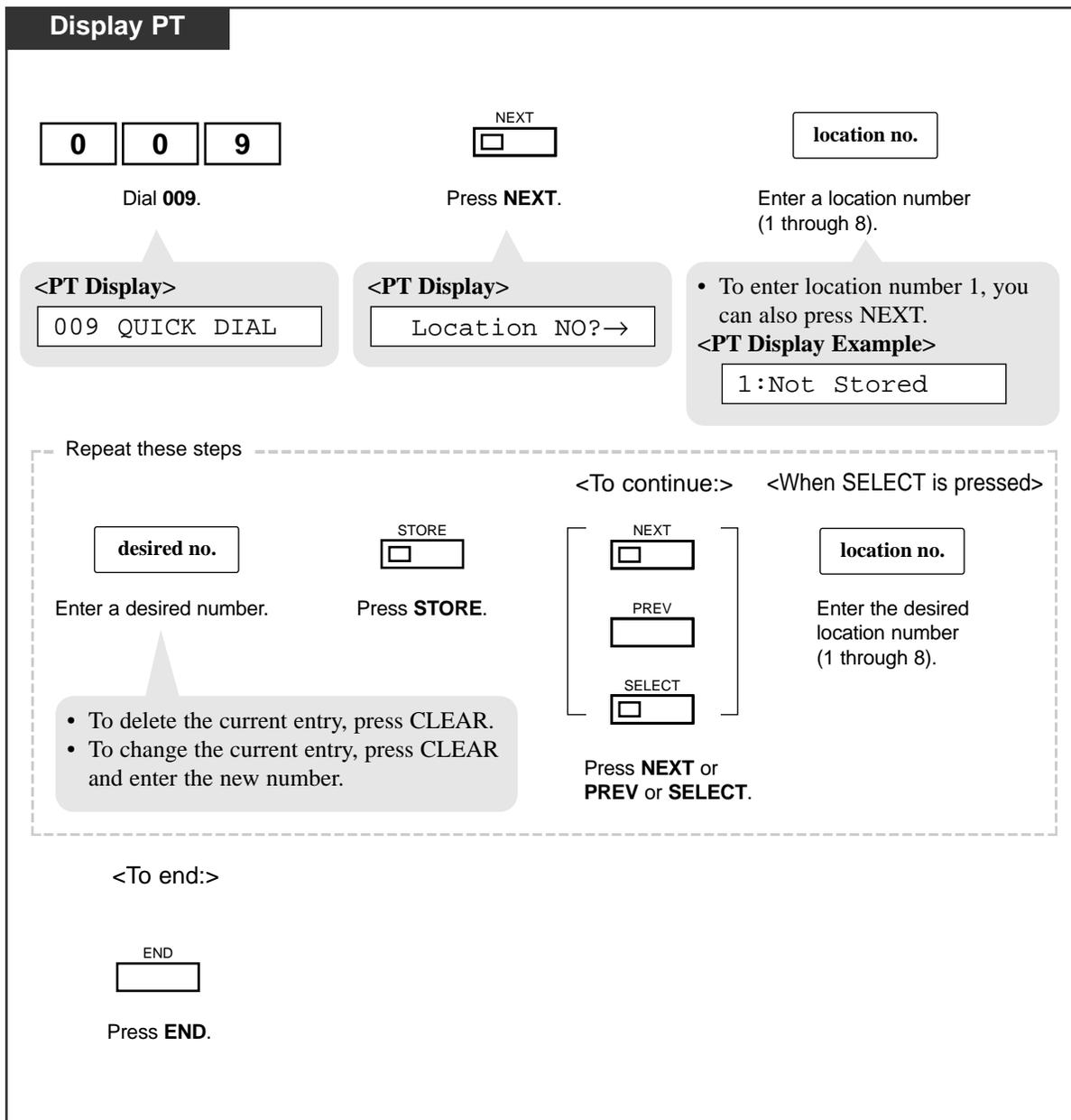
**Description** Stores up to eight quick dial numbers.

**Selection**

- Location number: **1 through 8**
- Desired number: **16 digits (max.)**

**Default** All location numbers – Not Stored

### Programming



# 009

## 3.2 *User Programming*

### *Quick Dial Number Set (contd.)*

---

#### *Conditions*

- There is maximum of eight location numbers (Quick dial 1-8).  
A maximum of 16 digits, consisting of 0 through 9, \*, and # keys, and the FLASH, PAUSE, SECRET and “-” (hyphen) buttons can be assigned to a quick dial number.
- Before programming this program, a feature number for each location should be programmed by System Programming (Section 4.2.2 “System - Numbering Plan” in the Installation Manual).

#### *Feature References*

**Features Guide,**  
Quick Dialing

**Section 4**

***Station Features and Operation (PT/SLT)***

***Contents***

<b>4.1</b>	<b><i>Before Operating</i></b>	<b>4-2</b>
<b>4.2</b>	<b><i>Basic Operations</i></b>	<b>4-4</b>
	<i>Making Calls</i>	4-4
	<i>Receiving Calls</i>	4-6
<b>4.3</b>	<b><i>Station Features and Operation (A - Z)</i></b>	<b>4-7</b>
<b>4.4</b>	<b><i>Operator/Manager Service Features</i></b>	<b>4-204</b>
<b>4.5</b>	<b><i>Special Display Features</i></b>	<b>4-244</b>

***What kind of telephone do you use?***

In this manual, you will find your way to operate the feature depending on the telephone you use. Please use the proper operation for your telephone.

**If you use single line devices** such as a single line telephone or data terminal, you will follow the steps which enter the feature number.

- If you use a dial pulse (DP) type single line device which does not have the “\*” and “#” keys, it is impossible to access features that have “\*” or “#” in their feature numbers.
- When the “Pickup Dialing (Hot Line)” feature is set on your telephone, the dialing sequence should be done within a certain period of time (Pickup Dial Waiting Time — default: 1 s) after lifting the handset.

This time can be changed by System Programming.

**If you use a Panasonic proprietary telephone** which has the special function button and/or the display, you will follow the operation with the button or display for easy access.

- If you use a Panasonic proprietary telephone which does not have the function button, you may change one of the unused buttons to another button. Refer to the Station Programming (Section 2.2).
- A Panasonic proprietary telephone has the Light Emitting Diode (LED) button indicators, so you can see the line conditions by the lighting patterns.
- If “Idle Line Preference — Outgoing,” “No Line Preference — Outgoing” or “Prime Line Preference (CO Line) – Outgoing” is assigned on the extension, it is **not** possible to have access to any DPT features after simply going off-hook. To access DPT features, press the INTERCOM (ICM type PT) or PDN button (DN type PT) directly or after going off-hook.

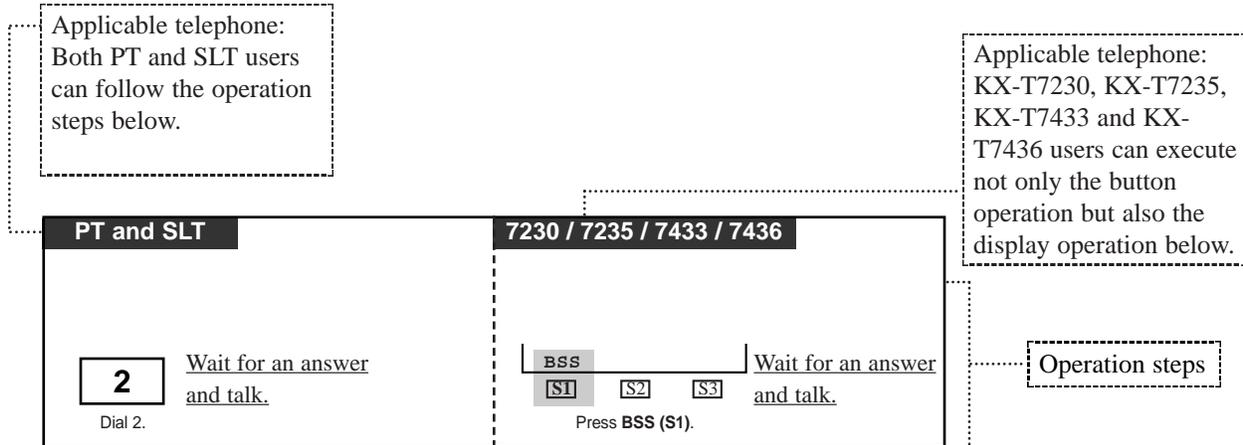
Refer to “BUTTON, LINE ACCESS – SUMMARY” in the Features Guide for further information on “ICM type PT” and “DN type PT.”

# 4.1

# Before Operating

## Operation Step Box

In this section, operations for extension users are described using the following Operation Step Box.



- Notes:**
- If your telephone is not noted in the operating step box (ex. only “PT” is noted), this means your telephone does not have the ability to execute that feature.
  - If your telephone has the ability to perform several operations for one feature, you can select the method according to your needs.
  - In this manual, the default feature numbers are used to describe each operation and illustration. Use the new programmed numbers if default feature numbers are changed by System Programming.
  - For proprietary telephone operations, all button illustrations are based on the model KX-T7235.

## Description of Symbols Used

In this section, many symbols are used. Most symbols do not need a description, but some symbols do. They are as follows.



Lift the handset, or press the SP-PHONE or MONITOR button. (Off-hook)



Replace the handset, or press the SP-PHONE or MONITOR button. (On-hook)



Flash the switchhook on a single line telephone.



Tones which vary depending on the condition (Refer to “Tone List” in Section 6).

## 4.2

# Basic Operations

## Making Calls

### Inter Office Calling

You can make a call to another extension.

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**extension no.** OR **(DSS)**

Dial extension number (3 or 4 digits). Press **DSS**.

- The INTERCOM or PDN indicator light turns green.

### Outward Dialing

You can make a call to an outside party using one of the following three Trunk Access ways.

- 1.) Idle Trunk Dial Access
- 2.) Individual Trunk Group Dial Access
- 3.) Individual Trunk Access (PT only)

### Making Outside Calls by Idle Trunk Dial Access

Allows you to access an idle trunk line automatically.

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**(CO)** For PT  
**9** For SLT, PT

For PT: Press **CO** assigned as Loop-CO.  
For SLT, PT: Dial 9.



Dial tone

**phone no.**

Dial the phone number. Talk.



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

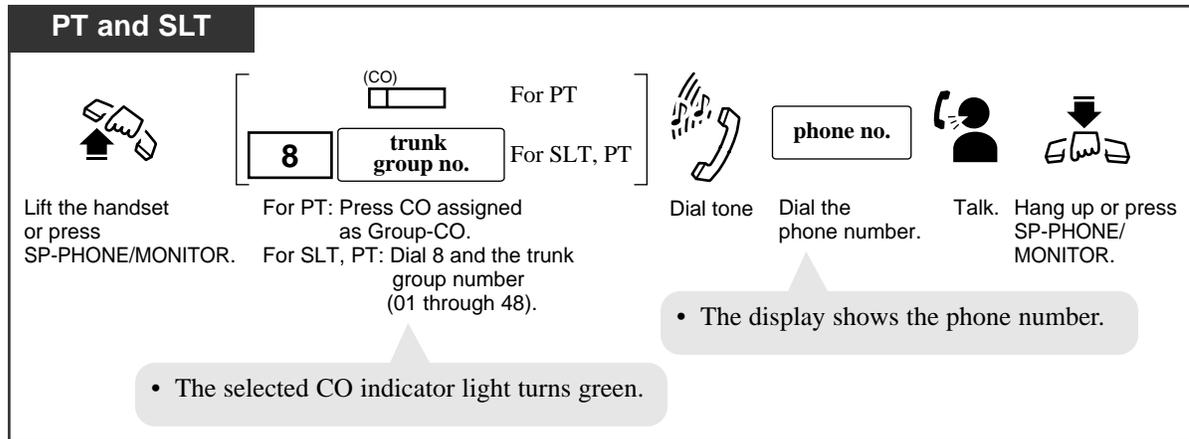
- The selected CO indicator light turns green.
- The display shows the phone number.

## 4.2

# Basic Operations

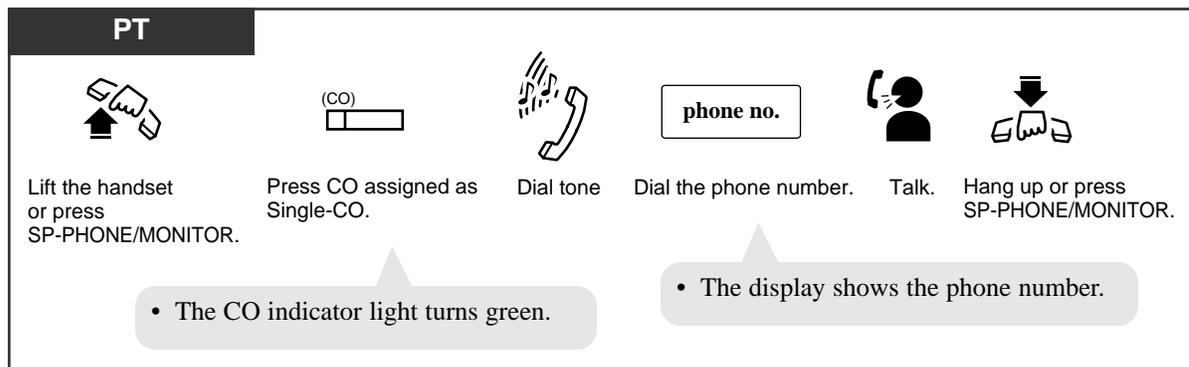
### Making Outside Calls by Trunk Group Dial Access

Allows you to access an idle trunk line within a designated trunk group.



### Making Outside Calls by Individual Trunk Access

Allows you to select the desired trunk line without dialing the line access code.



### Conditions

- PT** • There are three types of Line Preference for outgoing calls (— Idle Line/No Line/Prime Line). Each preference can be selected by Station or System Programming.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can make an inter office call using the “Call Directory-Extension Dialing” display operation.

### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Preferred Line Assignment — Outgoing
- System Programming - Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.5 System - Local Hunt Sequence
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Preferred Line, Outgoing

**Feature References**

KX-T7235 Display Features - Call Directory - Extension Dialing  
(4.5/Special Display Features)  
KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features - Call Directory - Extension  
Dialing (4.5/Special Display Features)  
Hands-free Operation  
Inter Office Calling  
Outward Dialing, Trunk Access

**Receiving Calls**

Any Telephone	PT
 <p>Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.</p>	<p>(CO) <input type="checkbox"/> or INTERCOM <input type="checkbox"/> or (DN) <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Press a rapid flashing <b>CO</b> or <b>INTERCOM</b> or <b>DN</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The CO or INTERCOM or DN indicator light turns steady green.</li> </ul>

**Conditions**

- PT** • There are three types of Line Preference for incoming calls (— No Line/Prime Line/Ringing Line). Each preference can be selected by Station Programming.
- PT** • Helpful hints for the Hands-free (speakerphone) operation are noted in the “Hands-free Operation” feature.
- PT** • If you want to answer an intercom call without going off-hook, press the AUTO ANSWER button (Hands-free Answerback). To cancel the Hands-free Answerback, press the AUTO ANSWER button again.

**Programming References**

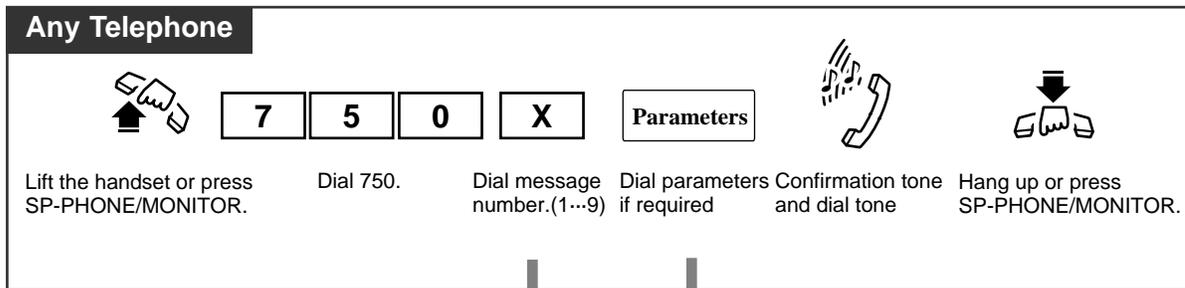
- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Preferred Line Assignment — Incoming
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.1.2 Configuration - Trunk Port Assignment
    - Status
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Preferred Line, Incoming

**Feature References**

Answering, Direct Trunk  
Hands-free Operation

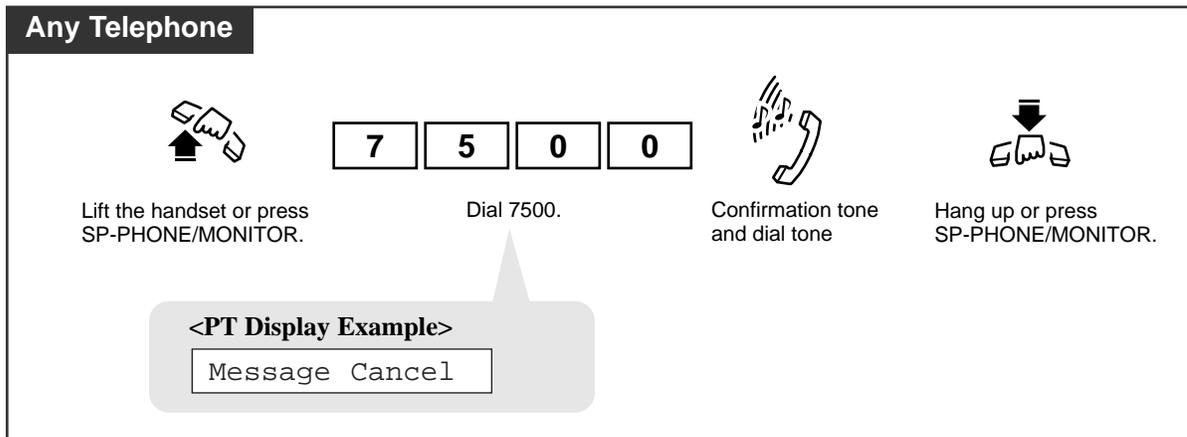
## Absent Message Capability

You can select one of nine pre-programmed Absent Messages (1-9) for your extension. The display PT users calling your extension see the message you select. Absent messages are used to inform the party calling to your extension of the reason for your absence. By default, Messages No. 1-6 are provided with default messages and the other three messages are left blank.



DISPLAY MESSAGE	MESSAGE NO.	PARAMETER
Will Return Soon	1	None
Gone Home	2	None
At Ext % % % %	3	extension no. Dial extension number.
Back at % % : % % (time)	4	hour minute Enter hour (00...23) and minute (00...59).
Out Until % % / % % (month/day)	5	month day Enter month (01...12) and day (01...31).
In a Meeting	6	None
(Programmable)	7	
(Programmable)	8	
(Programmable)	9	

Note: % indicates the digit where you enter the desired parameter.

*Canceling the absent message**Conditions*

- All nine messages can be programmed either by User or System Programming.
- A maximum of seven parameters (“%” characters) can be stored per message. You can enter “0 through 9,” “\*” and “#” for the parameters.
- display PT • The message you select is shown on the display of your PT whenever you go off-hook.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.
- **Distinctive Dial Tone**  
Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

*Programming References*

- User Programming (Section 3)  
[008] Absent Messages
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan  
— (48) Absent Message Set / Cancel
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option  
— (15) Special dial tone after setting feature
  - 4.5.7 Features - Absent Message

*Feature References*

- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

## Account Code Entry

An Account Code is used to identify incoming and outgoing CO calls for accounting and billing purposes. The account code is appended to the “Station Message Detail Recording (SMDR)” call record. For incoming CO calls, account code entry is optional. For outgoing CO calls, you may be required to enter an account code. This depends on your Account Code Entry mode determined by System Programming on a “Class of Service\*1” basis.

### Entering account codes before dialing

7230 / 7235 / 7433 / 7436



Off-hook.



Press **ACCNT (S3)**.



Dial tone 3\*<sup>2</sup>

account code

Enter an account code  
(10 digits max., 0...9).

#

Dial #.

<PT Display Example>

Enter ACCNT Code

- You may dial 99 instead of “#”.



Confirmation tone and dial tone

CO

Press **CO**.

phone no.

Dial the phone number.

PT and SLT



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

(Account)

For PT

4

9

For SLT, PT

For PT: Press **Account** (flexible button).  
For SLT, PT: Dial 49.



Dial tone 3\*

account code

Enter an account code  
(10 digits max., 0...9).

#

Dial #.

- If you dial a feature number, you hear no tone.

- You may dial 99 instead of “#”.



Confirmation tone and dial tone

CO

line access code

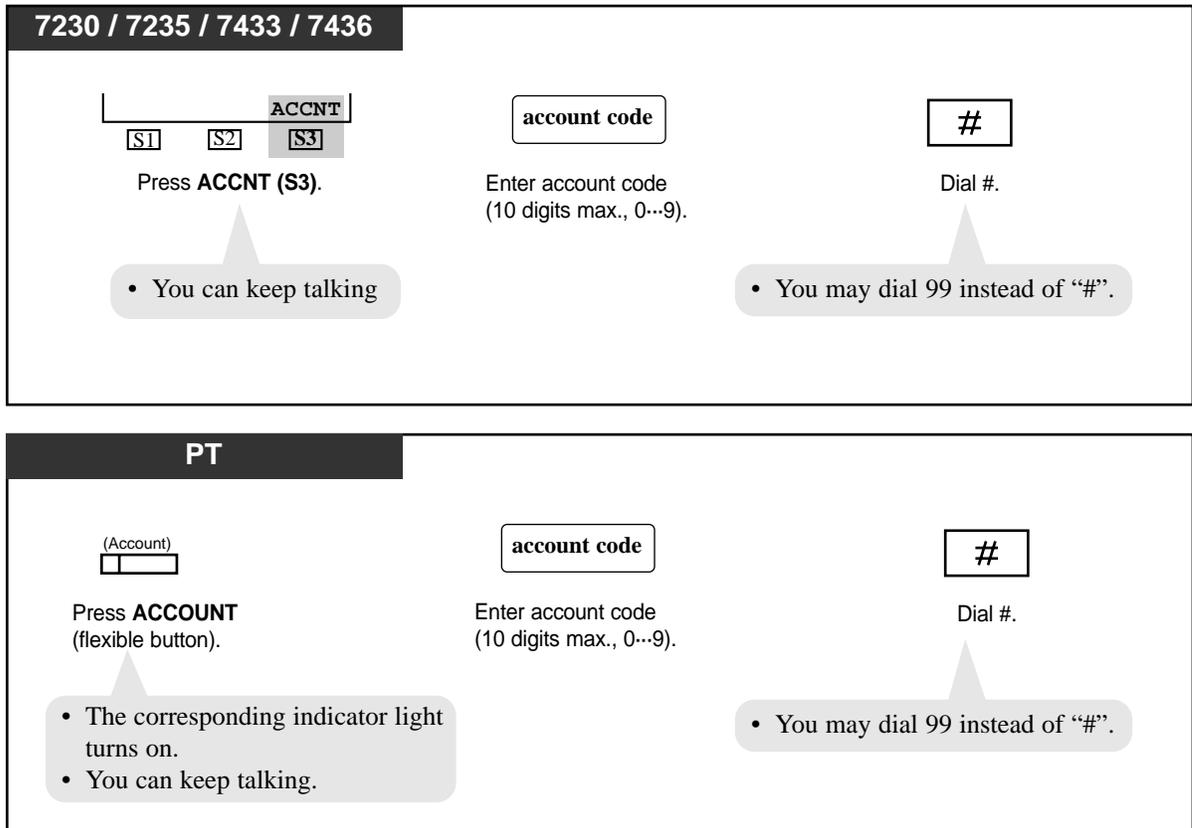
Press **CO** or enter a line access code (9 or 801 through 848).

phone no.

Dial the phone number.

**Entering account codes during or after a conversation**

During a conversation or within 15 seconds after the other party hangs up;

**Conditions**

Your Account Code Entry mode is set to one of the following three modes by System Programming.

**In “Verified - All Calls” mode**

- You must always enter a system-registered account code to make a CO call.
- If the account code you entered is not found in the System Account Code Table (Refer to “Section 4.5.5 Features - Account Code” in the Installation Manual), you hear a reorder tone.
- You cannot enter an account code during and after a call (after a CPC signal\*<sup>3</sup> is detected).

**In “Verified - Toll Restriction Override” mode**

- You can override the Toll Restriction imposed on your extension by entering a system-registered account code before making a CO call (Toll Restriction Override by Account Code Entry).
- If the account code you entered is not found in the System Account Code Table (Refer to “Section 4.5.5 Features - Account Code” in the Installation Manual), you hear a reorder tone.

### *In “Option” mode*

- You can enter any account code when needed. It is possible to record a calling or called party’s account code in the SMDR, during a conversation or within 15 seconds after the other party hangs up.
- You can enter any account code during and after a call (after a CPC signal\*3 is detected).

### *General*

- To clear and re-enter the account code, press “\*.”
- An account code can be up to 10 numeric digits (0 through 9). FLASH, PAUSE, etc. are not allowed. After entering an account code, the delimiter “#” or “99” must be entered.

#### **Memory Dialing**

An account code can be stored into Memory Dialing (“One-Touch Dialing,” “System /Station Speed Dialing” ). The sequence to enter an account code into Memory Dialing is:

— [Feature Number] [Account Code] [#] [Line Access Code] [Phone Number]  
or

— [Feature Number] [Account Code] [99] [Line Access Code] [Phone Number]

PT

- Pressing the Account button (flexible button) while entering an account code cancels the entry.

SLT

- You cannot enter an account code during a call or while hearing a reorder tone.

SLT

- Flashing the switchhook while entering an account code cancels the entry.

#### **Account button**

The Account button can be used instead of dialing the feature number. It can be assigned to a flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button by Station, User or System Programming.

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Account Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (36) Account Code
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Account Code Mode
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment

### 4.5.5 Features - Account Code

- Tenant No.
- Entry No.
- Code
- TRS Level

### ***Feature References***

Station Message Detail Recording (SMDR) (→ see Features Guide)

Toll Restriction Override by Account Code Entry

\*<sup>1</sup> Class of Service (COS) is used to define the features which are allowed for a group of extensions.

Refer to “Class of Service (COS)” in the Features Guide for more details.

\*<sup>2</sup> One of the dial tones. Refer to the “Tone List” in the Appendix (Section 6).

\*<sup>3</sup> A Calling Party Control (CPC) signal is an on-hook indication sent from a CO line when the other end hangs up. You hear a reorder tone when this signal is detected.

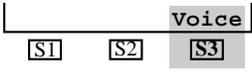
### Alternate Calling — Ring / Voice

You can voice-announce your intercom call or have the called extension ring. When you make an intercom call by voice-announcement, the other party hears your voice over the built-in speaker of PT and can speak in the hands-free mode.

#### Alternating (to Voice-Calling mode)

**7230 / 7235 / 7433 / 7436**

If the extension you are calling is in Ring-Calling mode, you hear a ringback tone.



Press **Voice** (S3).



Confirmation tone

- Voice-Calling mode is established.

**Any Telephone**

If the extension you are calling is in Ring-Calling mode, you hear a ringback mode.



Dial \*.



Confirmation tone

- Voice-Calling mode is established.

#### Alternating (to Ring-Calling mode)

**7230 / 7235 / 7433 / 7436**

If the extension you are calling is in Voice-Calling mode, you hear a confirmation tone.



Press **Tone** (S2).



Ringback tone

- Ring-Calling mode is established.

*Alternating (to Ring-Calling mode)*

**Any Telephone**

*If the extension you are calling is in Voice-Calling mode, you hear a confirmation.*



Dial \*.



Ringback tone

• Ring-Calling mode is established.

**Conditions**

- **Voice-signaling is not available in the following cases:**
  - if the other extension is an SLT.
  - if the other extension is busy on another call.
  - if another call is ringing on the other extension.
- **One time switching**  
You can switch the desired calling mode only once during a call.
- If the party you are calling is using a single line telephone (SLT), only Ring-Calling mode is available.

PT

• **Mode Selection**

You can select either to be ring-signaled or voice-signaled by Station Programming. The default is Ring-Calling mode.

**Programming References**

- Station Programming (Section 2)  
Intercom Alert Assignment

**Feature References**

Hands-free Answerback  
Inter Office Calling

### ***ANSWER and RELEASE buttons Operation***

ANSWER and RELEASE buttons are useful when using the headset or in hands-free mode. With the ANSWER button, you can answer all incoming calls to the paired telephone. With the RELEASE button, you can disconnect the line during or after a conversation or complete a Call Transfer.

This is convenient for the extension users, especially operators, who handle a large volume of calls.

**PT and DSS Console**

*When a call comes in on your extension;*

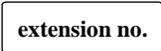
Press **ANSWER**.      Talk.      Press **RELEASE**.

- The call is disconnected.
- You hear no tone.

### ***Unscreened Call Transfer***

**PT and DSS Console**

*During a conversation;*

Press **TRANSFER**.      Confirmation tone and dial tone      Dial the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits).      Press **RELEASE**.

- The other party is placed on hold.
- Ringing starts at the destination extension.
- The call is transferred.

**Conditions**

- PT** • **ANSWER and RELEASE Buttons Assignment**

ANSWER and RELEASE buttons are provided as a fixed button on the KX-T7441 (DSS Console). For other PTs and DSS Consoles, these buttons can be assigned to a flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button by Station, User or System Programming.
- PT** • **What if the ANSWER button is pressed during a call?**

If a new call comes in while engaged in the current call, you can answer it simply by pressing the ANSWER button. In this case, the current call will be disconnected.
- PT** • **Call Answering Priorities**

If the ANSWER button is pressed when two or more calls are ringing on your extension at a time, the extension will be connected to one of them according to the following priorities:

  - (1) BSS (Busy Station Signaling ) calls
  - (2) Line Preference
  - (3) In the order of arrival
- PT** • **Delayed Ringing or No Ringing Calls**

If a call which comes in on your extension is not ringing (Delayed Ringing or No Ring), it cannot be answered by pressing the ANSWER button.

**Programming References**

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Answer Button, Release Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment

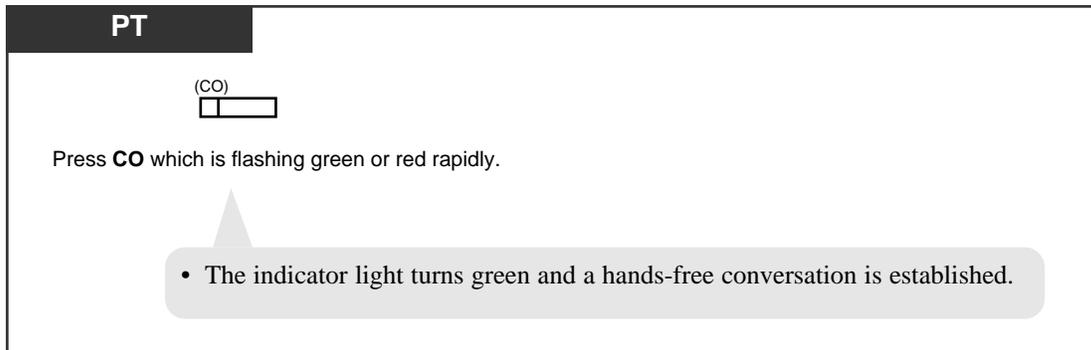
**Feature References**

None

### Answering, Direct Trunk

You can answer a CO call by pressing a flashing CO button directly. You do not have to lift the handset or press the SP-PHONE/MONITOR button.

#### To answer an incoming outside call



#### Conditions

- PT** • You can choose the desired line to answer when more than one call is ringing on your PT by this feature.
- PT** • There are three types of CO buttons: Group-CO (G-CO) button, Loop-CO (L-CO) button and Single-CO (S-CO) button. These can be assigned to flexible CO buttons by Station, User or System Programming.

#### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment— Group-CO (G-CO) Button, Loop-CO (L-CO) Button, Single-CO (S-CO) Button
  - Preferred Line Assignment — Incoming
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment

#### Feature References

Hands-free Operation

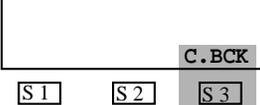
### Automatic Callback Busy (Camp-On)

When the selected CO line or extension you have dialed is busy, dial the camp-on code and hang up. Your telephone will ring when the selected CO line or the called party becomes idle.

#### Setting

**7230 / 7235 / 7433 / 7436**

*If you hear a busy tone after making a call (intercom or outside);*



Press **C. BCK (S3)**.



Confirmation tone and reorder tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

Wait for the Camp-On recall.

**Any Telephone**

*If you hear a busy tone after making a call (intercom or outside);*

6

Dial 6.



Confirmation tone and reorder tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

Wait for the Camp-On recall.

**<PT Display Example>**

Callback Extxxxx

└── extension number

## Answering an intercom recall

**Any Telephone**

*If you hear the telephone ringing;*



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**<PT Display Example>**

xxxx: Free

\_\_\_\_\_ extension number

- You hear a ringback tone and the other extension begins to ring automatically.

## Answering a CO line recall

**Any Telephone**

*If you hear the telephone ringing;*



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR .



Dial tone

phone no.

Dial the phone number.

**<PT Display Example>**

10101: Free

\_\_\_\_\_ Trunk port physical number

## Canceling

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

4

6

Dial 46.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

### *Conditions*

- If you do not answer the recall ringing within 10 seconds (four callback ring signals), this feature will be automatically canceled.
- If the called party becomes busy again after the callback ringing starts, the ringing stops but this feature will be executed again when the extension becomes free.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can set and cancel this feature using the display operation.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan  
— (59) Automatic Callback Busy Cancel

### *Feature References*

KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)  
KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu  
(4.5/Special Display Features)

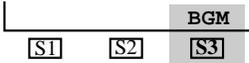
### Background Music (BGM)

You can hear background music through the built-in speaker of your PT. An external music source, such as a radio, must be connected. The music stops whenever a call comes in or when you go off-hook.

#### Setting / Canceling

**7230 / 7235 / 7433 / 7436**

When the handset is on the cradle and the SP-PHONE button is off;



Press **BGM (S3)**.

- To turn off the BGM, press this button again.

**PT**

When the handset is on the cradle and the SP-PHONE/MONITOR button is off;



Dial 1.

- The display shows either one of the following for five seconds depending on whether BGM is on or off:  
<PT Display Example>

BGM On

or

BGM Off

#### Conditions

- PT** • **Turning on/off**  
You can turn on/off the BGM only when your PT is not in use.
- **Distinctive Dial Tone**  
Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

#### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - BGM Source
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (15)Special dial tone after setting feature

#### Feature References

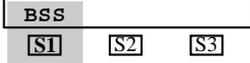
Background Music (BGM) - External (4.4/Operator/Manager Service Features)

### Busy Station Signaling (BSS)

You can prompt a busy extension (ringing or during a call) to answer your call. The other extension hears three beeps and knows that you are waiting.

**7230 / 7235 / 7433/ 7436**

*If you hear a busy tone after making an intercom call;*



Press BSS (S1).



Wait for an answer and talk.

---

**Any Telephone**

*If you hear a busy tone after making an intercom call;*



Dial 1.



Wait for an answer and talk.

#### Conditions

- **BSS / OHCA / Whisper OHCA**

If an extension user dials “1” while hearing a busy tone, BSS or OHCA or Whisper OHCA may be activated at the called extension.

This is determined by the following conditions.

Calling extension	Called extension			
	Call Waiting setting			
	OFF	ON		
	0	1	2	3
COS-OHCA assignment				
Disable	————	BSS	BSS	BSS
Enable	————	BSS	OHCA <sup>*1</sup> →BSS	W-OHCA <sup>*2</sup> →OHCA→BSS

<sup>\*1</sup>: OHCA (Off-Hook Call Announcement) is activated when the called extension is KX-T7130, KX-T7235 or KX-T7436.

<sup>\*2</sup>: Whisper OHCA is activated when both calling and called extensions are using one of the KX-T7400 series PT.

- To answer the signal from the calling extension, see “Call Waiting” in this manual.
- Only the extensions which have enabled “Call Waiting” can receive Call Waiting tones.
- If the called extension is provided with “Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA)” function (KX-T7130, KX-T7235, KX-T7436), the caller can announce through the speaker.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (45) Call Waiting Set/Cancel

### *Feature References*

Call Waiting  
Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA)  
Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA), Whisper

**Call Forwarding — SUMMARY**

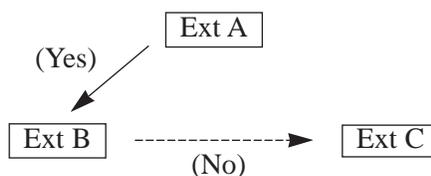
Automatically transfers incoming calls to another extension or to an external destination. The following types are available:

Type	Description
Call Forwarding — All Calls	All incoming calls are forwarded to another extension.
Call Forwarding — Busy	All incoming calls are forwarded to another extension when your extension is busy.
Call Forwarding — No Answer	All incoming calls are forwarded to another extension when you do not answer the call.
Call Forwarding — Busy/No Answer	All incoming calls are forwarded to another extension when you do not answer or when your extension is busy.
Call Forwarding — to CO or TIE Line	All incoming calls are forwarded to a CO or TIE line.
Call Forwarding — Follow Me	Allows you to set the “Call Forwarding — All Calls” feature from another extension.

**Note:** You can also set Voice Mail as the forwarding destination. Refer to “VPS Integration” in this manual.

**Conditions**

- To cancel Call Forwarding features, refer to “Call Forwarding — CANCEL” in this manual.
- Forwarded call is not forwarded furthermore**  
Call Forwarding can only be extended to one target telephone. For example, extension A is forwarded to extension B, and extension B is forwarded to extension C. A call to extension A is forwarded to extension B, but the call would not be forwarded to extension C. Consequently, extension B is treated as the final destination of Call Forwarding.



- Setting a new “Call Forwarding” function (All Calls, Busy, Busy/No Answer, etc.) cancels any other “Call Forwarding” functions.

- **Floating Station**

A floating station such as a DISA, MODEM or external pager cannot be programmed as a forwarding destination.

- Two extensions can set each other as the destination extension. In this case, an intercom call to the other party while he/she is absent will not be forwarded back to the original extension.

- **Confirmation tone**

Confirmation tone 2 (two beeps) is sent when the previously programmed data is same as the new data. If it is not, confirmation tone 1 (one beep) is sent. Refer to the “Tone List” in the Appendix (Section 6).

- You can call the original extension from the Call Forwarding destination extension.

PT

- Both the Call Forwarding and Do Not Disturb (DND) functions can be programmed at the same time, but either one of them can be activated at a time.

You can enable or disable the Call Forwarding or Do Not Disturb (DND) function by pressing the FWD/DND button while on-hook. If you set both Call Forwarding and DND, alternating the mode is also available by pressing the FWD/DND button. In this case, pressing the button changes the setting as follows:

→ DND → FWD → OFF →

The lighting patterns of the FWD/DND button are as follows:

Off : Both functions are canceled.

Red on : DND mode  This setting can be changed by System

Red flash : FWD mode  Programming.

7250

- **FWD/DND button**

Regarding the PT (7050/7055/7250) without the FWD/DND button, it can be assigned to a flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button by Station, User or System Programming.

- **Distinctive Dial Tone**

Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — FWD/DND Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (42) Call FWD - Do Not Disturb Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (15) Special dial tone after setting feature
    - (33) FWD/DND lamp pattern
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment

### Feature References

Call Forwarding — CANCEL

Do Not Disturb (DND)

VPS Integration

### Call Forwarding — All Calls

All of calls coming to your extension are forwarded to the pre-assigned extension automatically.

#### Setting

7235 / 7436



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **FWD/DND**.

F3
FWD-All Calls(→ext)

F4  
F5

Press **FWD-All Calls (F3)**.

extension no.

Enter the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits).



Confirmation tone and dial tone

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD(All) Extxxxx

extension number where the call is to be forwarded

- The FWD/DND indicator light flashes red slowly.



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

PT and SLT



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

FWD/DND

7

1

0

For PT: Press FWD/DND.  
For SLT, PT: Dial 710.

2

Dial 2.

extension no.

Enter the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits).



Confirmation tone and dial tone

- You may press the flexible button assigned as the FWD/DND button instead.

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD(All) Extxxxx

extension number where the call is to be forwarded

- The FWD/DND indicator light flashes red slowly.



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

## Call Forwarding — Busy

You can forward calls to another extension when your extension is busy.

### Setting

**7235 / 7436**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **FWD/DND**.



Press **FWD-Busy (F4)**.

FWD-Busy (→ext)



Enter the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits)



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD(BSY) Extxxxx

extension number where the call is to be forwarded

- The FWD/DND indicator light flashes red slowly.

**PT and SLT**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.



For PT: Press **FWD/DND**.  
For SLT, PT: Dial 710.

For PT

7 1 0

For SLT, PT



Dial 3.



Enter the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits).



Confirmation tone and dial tone

- You may press the flexible button assigned as the FWD/DND button instead.



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD(BSY) Extxxxx

extension number where the call is to be forwarded

- The FWD/DND indicator light flashes red slowly.

### Call Forwarding — No Answer

Your calls are forwarded to another extension when you do not answer the call within a pre-determined time.

#### Setting

7235 / 7436



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **FWD/DND**.



Press **FWD-No Answer (F5)**.

extension no.

Enter the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits)



Confirmation tone and dial tone

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD (NA) Extxxxx

extension number where the call is to be forwarded

- The FWD/DND indicator light flashes red slowly.



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

PT and SLT



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.



For PT: Press FWD/DND.  
For SLT, PT: Dial 710.

7 1 0

For PT  
For SLT, PT

4

Dial 4.

extension no.

Enter the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits).



Confirmation tone and dial tone

- You may press the flexible button assigned as the FWD/DND button instead.

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD (NA) Extxxxx

extension number where the call is to be forwarded

- The FWD/DND indicator light flashes red slowly.



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

#### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - Call Forwarding-No Answer Time (1-12 rings)

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# C

### Call Forwarding — Busy / No Answer

You can forward your calls to another extension when your extension is busy or you do not answer the call within a pre-determined time.

#### Setting

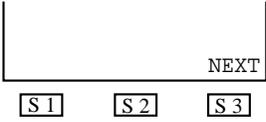
**7235 / 7436**



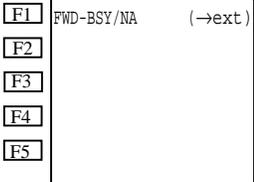
Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **FWD/DND**.



Press **NEXT (S3)**.



Press **FWD-BSY/NA (F1)**.

**extension no.**

Enter the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits).



Confirmation tone and dial tone



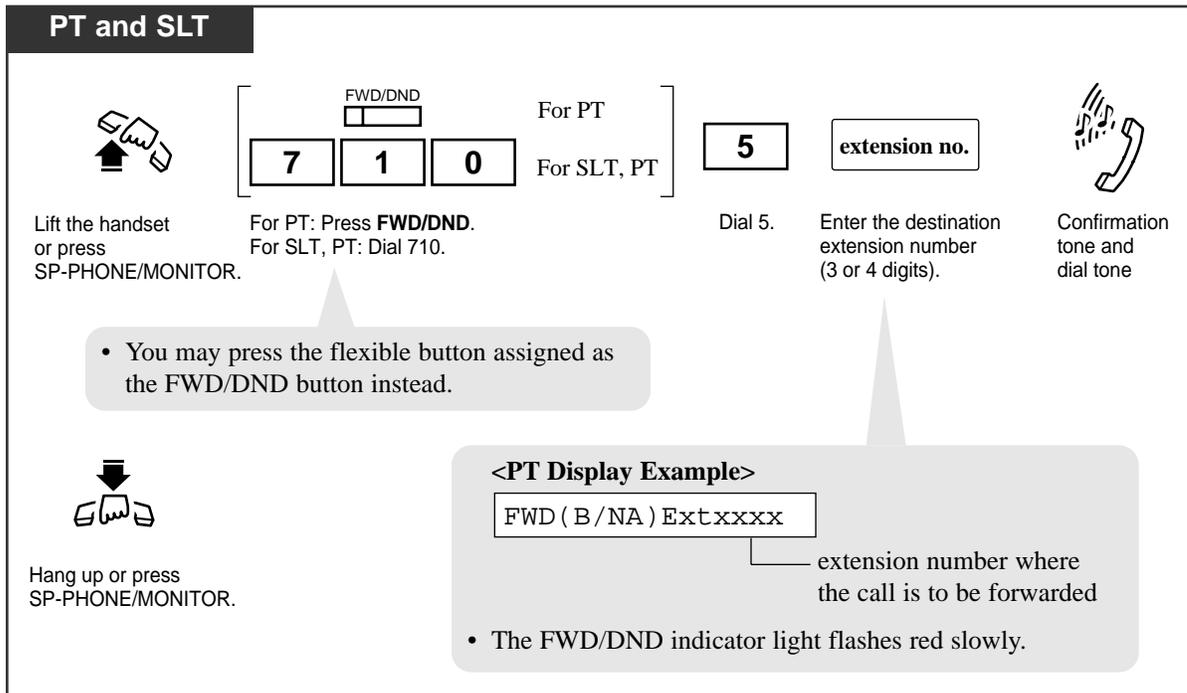
Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD ( B / NA ) Extxxxx

extension number where the call is to be forwarded

- The FWD/DND indicator light flashes red slowly.



### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - Call Forwarding-No Answer Time (1-12 rings)

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# C

### Call Forwarding — to CO or TIE Line

You can forward all incoming calls to your extension to an outside party via a CO or TIE line. The telephone number of the outside party must be pre-programmed.

**7235 / 7436**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Press **FWD/DND**.

Press **NEXT (S3)**.

Press **FWD-CO/TIE Line(F2)**.

Enter a line access code (9 or 77 or 801 through 848).

Dial the phone number.

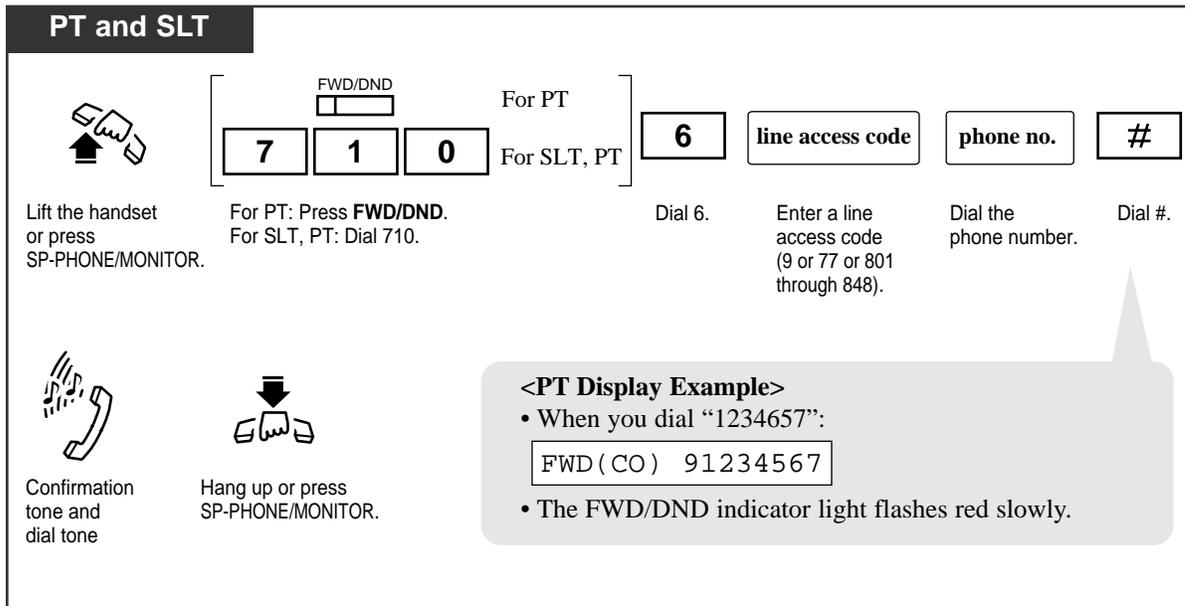
Dial #.

Confirmation tone and dial tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

- When you dial "1234567"  
FWD(CO) 91234657
- The FWD/DND indicator light flashes red slowly.



### Conditions

- Up to 16 digits (including a line access code) can be programmed.
- **Class of Service**  
Class of Service programming determines the extensions that can perform this feature.
- **Treatment of the calls to be forwarded**  
Toll Restriction, Automatic Route Selection (ARS) and Account Code Entry requirements of the extension in Call Forwarding mode still applies to the call forwarded by this feature.
- **Extension-to-CO Line Call**  
If a call between an extension and an outside party is established by this feature, the call duration can be restricted by the following system timer  
“Extension-to-CO Line Call Duration Time (1-64 min.)”  
This restriction applies to the extension whose “Time Limit of Outside Calls” setting (Class of Service programming) is set to “Yes” by System Programming.
- **CO-to-CO Line Call**  
If a call between two outside parties is established by this feature, the call duration is determined by “CO-to-CO Line Call Duration Time (1-64 min.)”. An alarm tone is sent to both outside parties 15 seconds before the time-out. The call is disconnected at the time-out.
- **Trunk-to-Trunk Connection**  
Before utilizing this feature, “Trunk-to-Trunk Connection” should be enabled by System Programming.

## 4.3 *Station Features and Operation*

---

C

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Time Limit of Outside Calls
    - Call FWD to CO
    - Trunk Group Setting
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - Extension-to-CO Line Call Duration Time (1-64 min.)
    - CO-to-CO Line Call Duration Time (1-64 min.)
  - 4.2.6 System - Trunk to Trunk Restriction

### Call Forwarding — Follow Me

You can set the “Call Forwarding” feature from the destination extension. This is useful if you forget to set “Call Forwarding — All Calls” before you leave your desk.

#### Setting

7235 / 7436

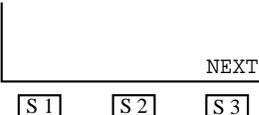
*At the destination extension;*



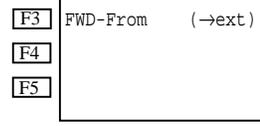
Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **FWD/DND**.



Press **NEXT (S3)**.



Press **FWD-From (F3)**.

your extension no.

Dial your extension number (3 or 4 digits).



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD (From) Extxxxx

└─ your extension number

- The FWD/DND indicator light flashes red slowly at your extension.

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# C

**PT and SLT**

*At the destination extension;*

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**FWD/DND**

For PT  
For SLT, PT

**7 1 0**

For PT: Press FWD/DND.  
For SLT, PT: Dial 710.

**7**

Dial 7.

**your extension no.**

Dial your extension number (3 or 4 digits).

Confirmation tone and dial tone

- You may press the flexible button assigned as the FWD/DND button instead.

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD (From) Extxxxx

your extension number

- The FWD/DND indicator light flashes red slowly at your extension.

Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

### Conditions

- This feature can be canceled either at your own extension or at the destination extension.
- Class of Service**  
Class of Service programming determines the extensions that can perform this feature.

### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.2.3 System - Class of Service  
— Call FWD Follow Me

### Call Forwarding — CANCEL

There are two canceling methods for “Call Forwarding.” The canceling method depends on the Call Forwarding type that is assigned.

#### Canceling Call Forwarding at your (original) extension

**7235 / 7436**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Press **FWD/DND**.

Press **FWD/DND Cancel (F1)**.

Confirmation tone and dial tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD/DND Cancel

- The FWD/DND indicator light turns off.

**PT and SLT**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

For PT: Press **FWD/DND**.  
For SLT, PT: Dial 710.

For PT  
For SLT, PT

Dial 0.

Confirmation tone and dial tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

You may press the flexible button assigned as the FWD/DND button instead.

**<PT Display Example>**

FWD/DND Cancel

- The FWD/DND indicator light turns off.

# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

## Canceling Call Forwarding at the destination extension — “Follow Me (All Calls)” only

**7235 / 7436**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Press **FWD/DND**.

Press **NEXT (S3)**.

Press **FWD-From Cancel (F4)**.

Dial your extension number (3 or 4 digits).

**your extension no.**

Confirmation tone and dial tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**  
 FWD Cancel Exxxx  
 your extension number.

- The FWD/DND indicator light on your own extension turns off.

**PT and SLT**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

For PT: Press **FWD/DND**.  
 For SLT, PT: Dial 710.

Dial **8**.

Dial your extension number. (3 or 4 digits).

**your extension no.**

Confirmation tone and dial tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**<PT Display Example>**  
 FWD Cancel EXXXX  
 your extension number.

- You may press the flexible button assigned as the FWD/DND button instead.
- The FWD/DND indicator light on your own extension turns off.

### Call Hold

Allows you to place an intercom or outside call on hold. While the call is on hold, you can make and receive other calls.

#### To place a call on hold

PT	SLT
<p><i>During a conversation;</i></p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-bottom: 10px;">  <p>HOLD</p> </div> <p>Press <b>HOLD</b>.</p> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 50px;">  <p>Confirmation tone and dial tone</p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; border-radius: 15px; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You may replace the handset.</li> </ul> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; border-radius: 15px; padding: 5px;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The corresponding CO or INTERCOM or DN indicator light flashes green slowly.</li> </ul> </div>	<p><i>During a conversation;</i></p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-bottom: 10px;">  <p>Flash the switchhook.</p> </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 50px;">  <p>Confirmation tone and dial tone</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block;">5</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block; margin-left: 10px;">0</div> </div> <p>Dial 50.</p> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 50px;">  <p>Confirmation tone and dial tone</p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; border-radius: 15px; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You may replace the handset.</li> </ul> </div>

#### Retrieving a call on hold

PT	SLT
<p><i>At the holding extension;</i></p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <small>(CO)</small>   </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <small>INTERCOM</small>   </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <small>(DN)</small>   </div> </div> <p>Press <b>CO</b> or <b>INTERCOM</b> or <b>DN</b> which is flashing green slowly.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; border-radius: 15px; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The CO or INTERCOM or DN indicator light turns steady green.</li> </ul> </div> </div>	<p><i>At the holding extension;</i></p> <div style="text-align: center; margin-bottom: 10px;">  <p>Lift the handset.</p> </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 50px;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block;">5</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 10px; display: inline-block; margin-left: 10px;">0</div> <p>Dial 50.</p> </div>

### Conditions

- To retrieve a call on hold at another extension, refer to “Call Hold Retrieve” in this manual.
- **Music on Hold**  
“Music on Hold” is sent to the party on hold, if available.
- **What if a call on hold is not retrieved?**  
If a call on hold is not retrieved in a specified period of time (Hold Recall Time), Hold Recall (if the extension on-hook) or Hold Warning tone (if engaged in another call) rings the extension where the call is held. Refer to Section 6 “Appendix” in this manual for details about Tone Patterns.

- **Automatic Disconnection**

If a call (outside, extension) placed on hold is not retrieved within 30 minutes, it is automatically disconnected.

- **How many outside calls can be held at a time?**

The number of outside calls that can be held on an extension at a time differs depending on the telephone type as follows :

**PT(ICM)**

— as many outside calls as the number of CO buttons on it

**PT(DN)**

— as many outside calls as the number of CO buttons and DN buttons on it

**SLT**

— One

- **How many intercom calls can be held at a time?**

The number of intercom calls that can be held on an extension at a time differs depending on the telephone type as follows :

**PT(ICM)**

— One

**PT(DN)**

— as many intercom calls as the number of DN ( PDN, SDN ) buttons on it

**SLT**

— One

### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - Music on Hold Source
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (31) Hold
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - Hold Recall Time (0-240 s)

### Feature References

- Call Hold Retrieve
- Hold Recall (→ see Features Guide)

## Call Hold, Exclusive

Allows you to prevent other extension users from retrieving your held call. A call put on exclusive hold can only be retrieved from the extension that placed it on hold.

### To place a call on exclusive hold

**PT**

*During a conversation;*

HOLD

Press **HOLD**.

HOLD

Press **HOLD** again.

- The CO or INTERCOM or DN indicator light flashes green moderately.
- The current call is placed on exclusive hold.

- The CO or INTERCOM or DN indicator light flashes green slowly.
- The current call is placed on hold.

### Retrieving a call on exclusive hold

**PT**

(CO)

or

INTERCOM

or

(DN)

Press the **CO** or **INTERCOM** or **DN** which is on exclusive hold.

- The CO or INTERCOM or DN indicator light turns steady green.
- You can talk to the held party again.

### Conditions

**• Music on Hold**

“Music on Hold” is sent to the party on hold, if available.

**• What if a call on Exclusive Hold is not retrieved?**

If a call on Exclusive Hold is not retrieved in a specific period of time (Hold Recall Time), Hold Recall (if the extension is on-hook) or Hold Warning tone (if engaged in another call) rings the extension where the call is held. After this, the held call can be retrieved from any other extension. Refer to Section 6 “Appendix” in this manual for details about Tone Patterns.

**• Automatic Disconnection**

If a call (outside, extension) placed on hold is not retrieved in 30 minutes, it is automatically disconnected.

**• How many outside calls can be put on Exclusive Hold at a time?**

The number of outside calls that can be placed on Exclusive Hold on an extension at a time differs depending on the telephone type as follows :

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

---

# C

**PT(ICM)** — as many outside calls as the number of CO buttons on it

**PT(DN)** — as many outside calls as the number of CO buttons and DN buttons on it

**SLT** — Not available

- **How many intercom calls can be put on Exclusive Hold at a time?**

The number of intercom calls that can be placed on Exclusive Hold on an extension at a time differs depending on the telephone type as follows:

**PT(ICM)** — One

**PT(DN)** — As many intercom calls as the number of DN (PDN, SDN) button on it.

**SLT** — Not available

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - Music on Hold Source
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (31) Hold
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - Hold Recall Time (0-240 s)

### *Feature References*

Call Hold

Hold Recall (→ see Features Guide)

### Call Hold Retrieve

Allows you to retrieve a call that has been placed on hold at other extensions.

#### Retrieving an outside call on hold

**Any Telephone**

*At the other extension;*



Lift the handset or press  
SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

5

3

Dial 53.

trunk port physical no.

Enter the held  
trunk port physical  
number.



Confirmation  
tone  
(optional)

**PT**

*At the other extension;*



Press **CO** whose indicator  
is flashing red slowly.

- The CO indicator light  
turns steady green.

#### Retrieving an intercom call/an outside call on hold

**Any Telephone**

*At the other extension;*



Lift the handset or press  
SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

5

1

Dial 51.

extension no.

Dial the extension  
number at which a call is  
placed on hold.



Confirmation tone  
(optional)

## 4.3 *Station Features and Operation*

---

# C

### *Conditions*

- **Confirmation Tone**  
A confirmation tone is sent to the extension user who retrieved the held call.  
Eliminating the tone is programmable.
- The extension user cannot retrieve the following calls:
  - Unattended Conference Calls
  - Calls held at the System Call Parking Area
  - Calls placed on Exclusive Hold

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (32) Hold Retrieve-Station
    - (33) Hold Retrieve-Trunk
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (9) Confirmation Tone for Call Pickup, Paging-Answer, TAFAS-Answer, Hold Retrieve and Call Park Retrieve

### *Feature References*

Call Hold

### Call Park

Allows you to place a held call into a system parking area. You can be released from the parked call to perform other operations. The parked call can be retrieved from any extension.

#### Parking a call

PT and SLT

*During a conversation;*

TRANSFER

For PT

For SLT

Confirmation tone and dial tone

5

2

Dial 52.

parking zone no.

Enter a parking zone number (00 through 99).

Confirmation tone and dial tone

**<PT Display Example>**

C. Parked at xx

└ Parking zone number (00 through 99)

- If you hear a busy tone, it indicates the specified parking zone is unavailable.

**<PT Display Example>**

Park at xx N/A

- You can change the parking zone simply by entering the parking zone number while hearing the busy tone.

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# C

### Retrieving a parked call

**Any Telephone**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

Dial 52.

Enter a parking zone number (00 through 99) where the call is parked.

Confirmation tone (optional)

You can talk to the party.

- If there is no held call, you will hear a reorder tone.

**<PT Display Example>**

No Held Call

### Conditions

- Up to 100 parking areas, numbered from 00 to 99, are available in the system by default. Up to 100 calls can be parked at the same time in the system.
- **Tenant Service**  
If “Tenant Service” is employed, each tenant can use up to 100 parking areas independently.
- **Call Park Recall**  
If a parked call is not retrieved in a specific period of time, Call Park Recall rings back the extension who parked the call.
- **Automatic Disconnection**  
If a parked call is not retrieved in 30 minutes, it is automatically disconnected.
- **Confirmation Tone**  
A confirmation tone is sent to the extension user who retrieved the parked call. Eliminating the tone is programmable.

### Programming References

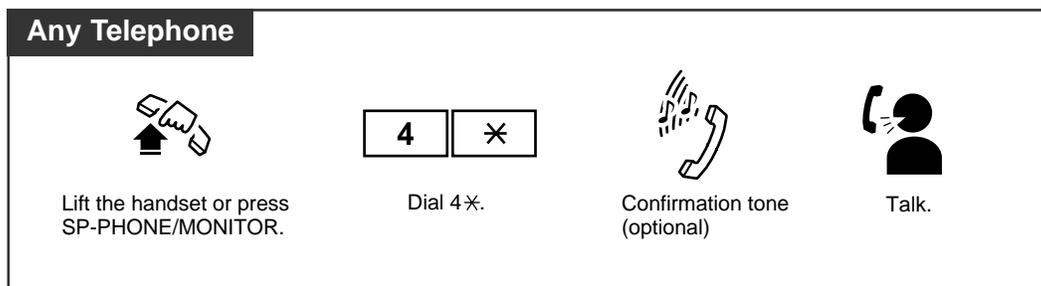
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (35) Call Park/Call Park Retrieve
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - Call Parking Recall Time (0-1800 s)
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (9) Confirmation Tone for Call Pickup, Paging-Answer, TAFAS-Answer, Hold Retrieve and Call Park Retrieve

### Feature References

- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

**Call Pickup, CO Line**

Allows you to answer an incoming CO call that is ringing at another extension.

**Conditions**

- **Tenant Service**  
If “Tenant Service” is utilized, this feature is only available for a CO call ringing on an extension within the same tenant.
- Call Pickup starts with the lowest physical number CO.
- **Call Waiting**  
This feature does not apply to a call waiting call.
- **Confirmation Tone**  
A confirmation tone is audible when the call is picked up. Eliminating the tone is programmable.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

**Programming References**

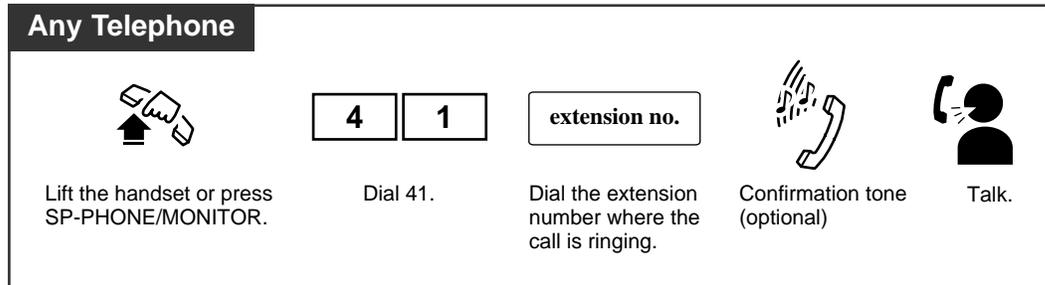
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (28) CO Call Pickup
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (9) Confirmation Tone for Call Pickup, Paging-Answer, TAFAS-Answer, Hold Retrieve and Call Park Retrieve

**Feature References**

- Call Pickup Deny
- Call Waiting
- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

### Call Pickup, Directed

Allows you to answer an incoming call ringing at any other extension.



#### Conditions

- **Tenant Service**  
If “Tenant Service” is utilized, this feature is only available for the calls ringing on an extension within the same tenant.
- **Doorphone Call**  
Doorphone calls can be picked up from extensions that are not programmed to answer doorphone calls.
- **Call Waiting Call**  
This feature applies to a call waiting call.
- **Confirmation tone**  
A confirmation tone is audible when the call is picked up. Eliminating the tone is programmable.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

#### Programming References

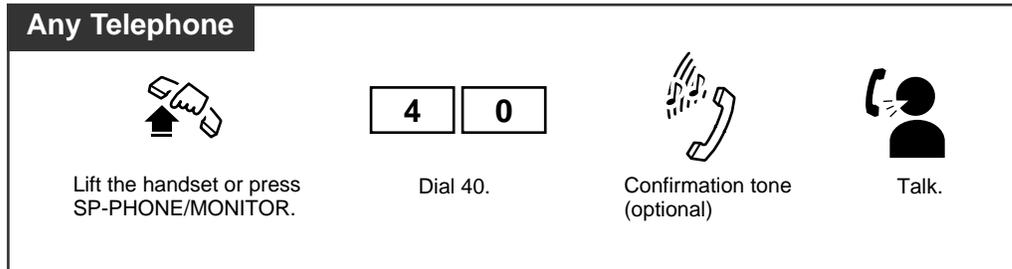
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (30) Directed Call Pickup
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (9) Confirmation Tone for Call Pickup, Paging-Answer, TAFAS-Answer, Hold Retrieve and Call Park Retrieve

#### Feature References

- Call Pickup Deny
- Call Waiting
- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

## *Call Pickup, Group*

Allows you to answer a call that is ringing at another telephone within your extension group.



### *Conditions*

- **Group Call Pickup Priority:**

Outside call > Transferred call > Extension call > Doorphone call

If more than one call is ringing on an extension, Call pickup to that extension works for the first arrived call.

- **Call Waiting Call**

This feature does not apply to a call waiting call.

- **Confirmation tone**

A confirmation tone is audible when the call is picked up. Eliminating the tone is programmable.

- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (29) Group Call Pickup
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (9) Confirmation Tone for Call Pickup, Paging-Answer, TAFAS-Answer, Hold Retrieve and Call Park Retrieve
  - 4.3.2 Group - Extension Group

### *Feature References*

Call Pickup Deny

Call Waiting

Extension Group (→ see Features Guide)

KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# C

### Call Pickup Deny

Allows you to prevent another extension from picking up your calls with the “Call Pickup” feature.

#### Setting / Canceling

**Any Telephone**

  
Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

  
Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7	2	0	1	To set.
7	2	0	0	To cancel.

To set: Dial 7201.  
To cancel: Dial 7200.

  
Confirmation tone and dial tone

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:
- When canceling:

### *Conditions*

- **Applicable calls**

This feature applies to the following calls.

Outside calls – DIL 1:1, DISA, TIE

Intercom calls – Calls ringing on a single extension

- **Distinctive Dial Tone**

Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (43) Dial Call Pickup Deny Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.7 System - Option
    - (15) Special dial tone after setting feature

### *Feature References*

Call Pickup, CO Line

Call Pickup, Directed

Call Pickup, Group

KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

## Call Splitting

Allows you to have two callers on a line and alternate between them. If a call comes in while you are already on the line, you can place the current call (1st call) on hold and have a conversation with the other party (2nd call).

**When you are engaged in the 2nd call (inside/outside), while placing the 1st call (inside/outside) on hold temporarily (Consultation Hold\*)**

**PT**



Press **TRANSFER**.

- You are connected to the 1st caller.
- Pressing the TRANSFER button alternates between two callers.

---

**SLT**



Flash the switchhook.

- You are connected to the 1st caller.
- Flashing the switchhook alternates between two callers.

**When you are engaged in the 2nd call (inside), while placing the 1st call (inside) on (exclusive) hold**

**PT** (ICM/CO type PT only)

*Between two extensions;*



Press **HOLD**.

- Pressing the HOLD button alternates between two callers.

**When you are engaged in the 2nd call (inside/outside), while placing the 1st call (inside/outside) on (exclusive) hold**

**PT**



Press **HOLD**.

(CO)  or INTERCOM  or (DN) 

Press **CO** or **INTERCOM** or **DN**.

- Repeating these operations (steps 1 and 2) alternates between two callers.

### *Conditions*

- This feature does not work during a doorphone call or paging.

### *Feature References*

Call Hold

Call Hold, Exclusive

Consultation Hold\* (→ see Features Guide)

\*Consultation Hold places a call on hold temporarily to transfer it or makes a Conference call or Call Splitting.

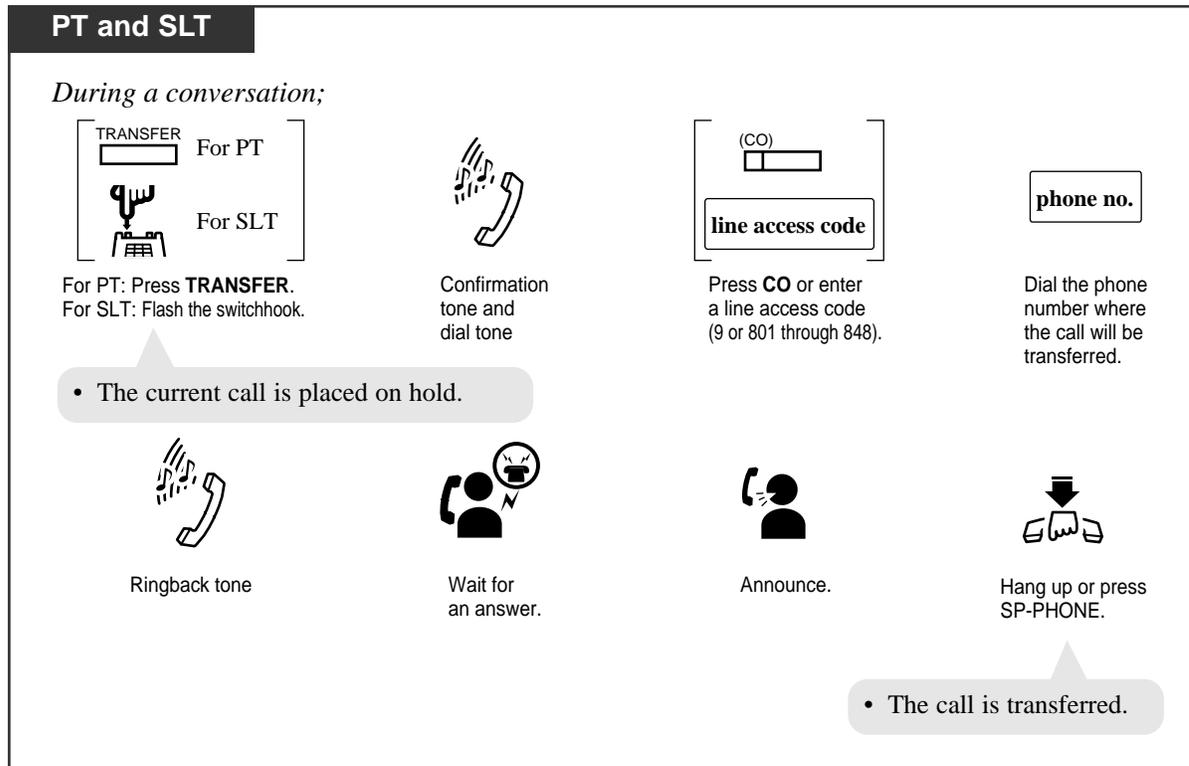
## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# C

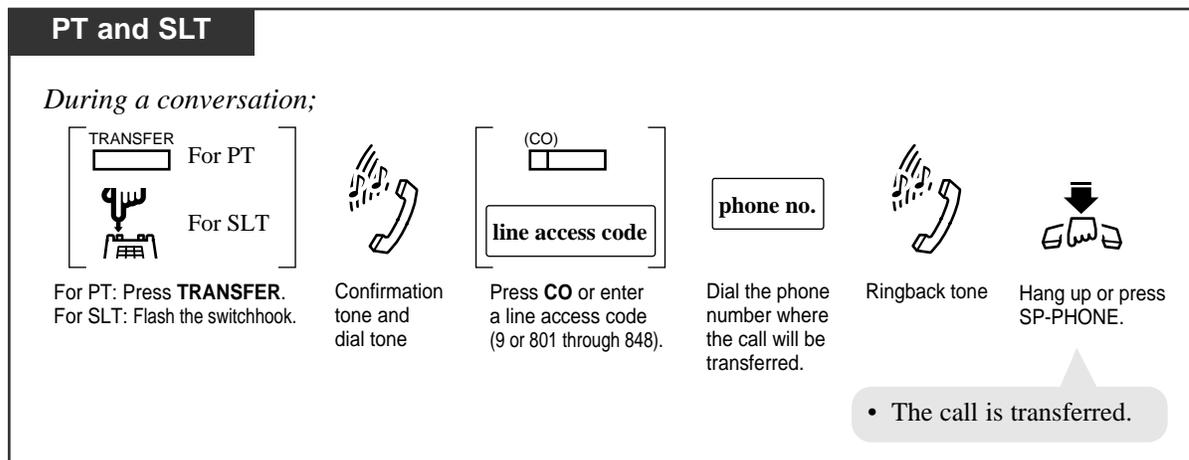
### Call Transfer — to CO

You can transfer a call (intercom, CO, TIE) to an outside party via CO line.

#### Screened Call Transfer



#### Unscreened Call Transfer



**Conditions**

- **Class of Service**

Class of Service programming determines the extensions that can perform this feature.

- **CO-to-CO call**

If a CO call is transferred to an outside party, “CO-to-CO call” is established and the call duration is restricted by a system timer “CO-to-CO Line Call Duration Time (1-64 min.)”.

Hold Recall tone

Hold Recall tone is generated to the extension who transferred the call 50 seconds before the time-out.

Hold Alarm tone

Hold Alarm tone is generated to both outside parties 15 seconds before the time-out. The call is disconnected at the time-out unless the extension user (who transferred the call) joins the CO-to-CO call to establish a conference call.

- PT • Pressing the FLASH button while dialing clears the display. Then you can enter the revised number.
- PT • If you want to return to the held call, press the TRANSFER button or corresponding CO or INTERCOM or DN button before the destination party answers.
- PT • If you want to join the conversation after transferring the call or while hold recall tone is sent, press the corresponding CO button. A conference call is established.

**Programming References**

- System Programming —Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Transfer to CO
    - Trunk Group Setting
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - CO-to-CO Line Call Duration Time (1-64 min.)

**Feature References**

Hold Recall (→ see Features Guide)

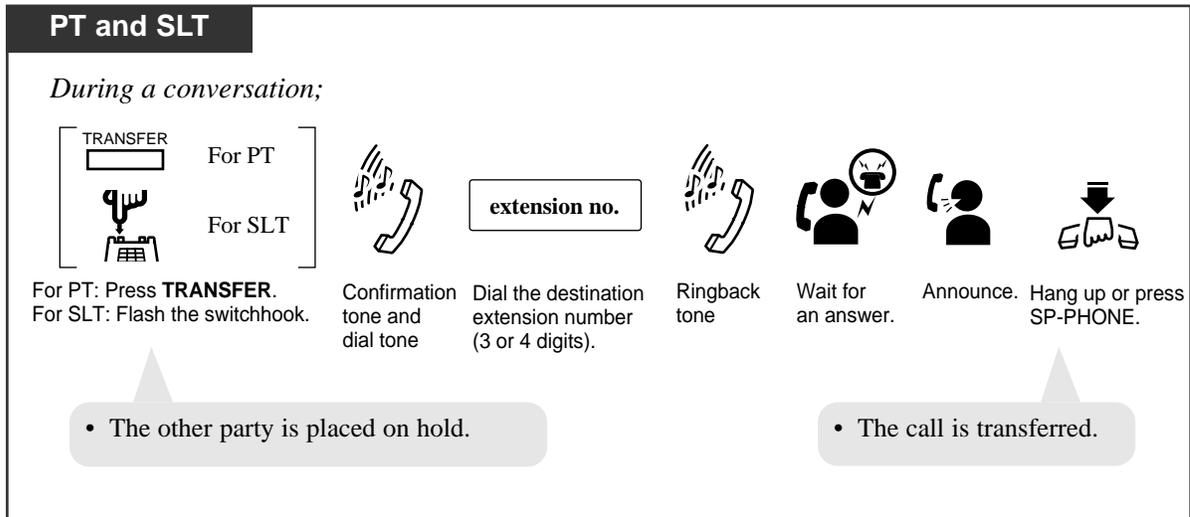
## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# C

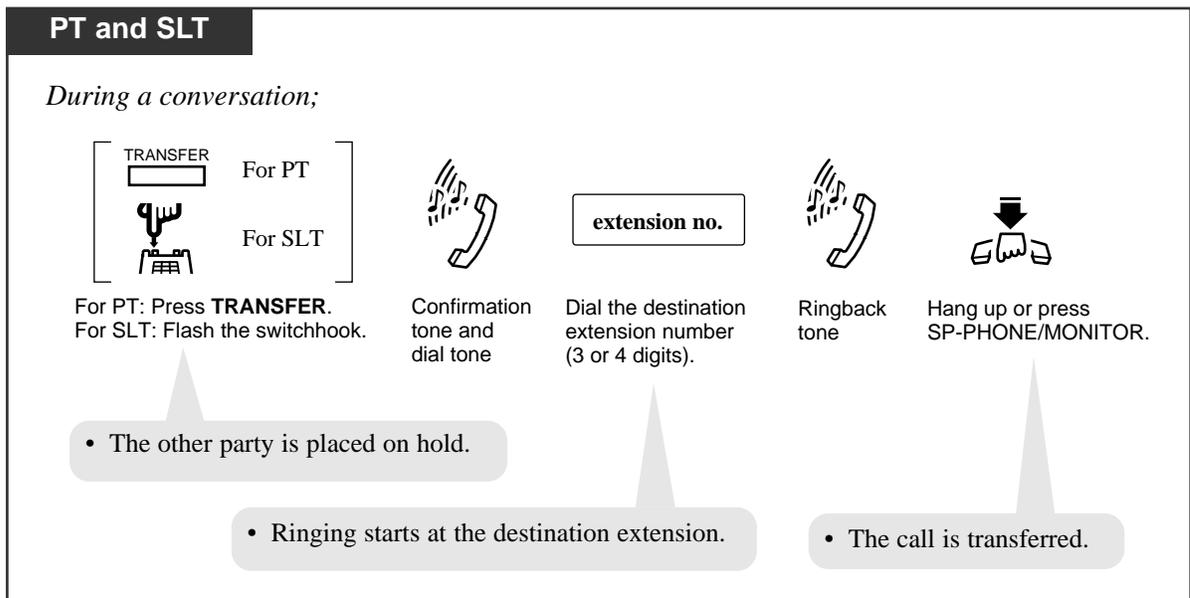
### Call Transfer — to Extension

Allows you to perform a Screened or Unscreened Call Transfer to another extension. A call can also be transferred to an extension by using the DSS button, if it is programmed.

#### Screened Call Transfer to Extension



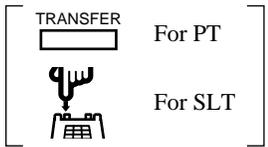
#### Unscreened Call Transfer to Extension



### Unscreened Call Transfer to Remote Resource/UCD Group

PT and SLT

*During a conversation;*



For PT: Press **TRANSFER**.  
For SLT: Flash the switchhook.



Confirmation tone and dial tone

floating directory no.

Dial the floating directory number (3 or 4 digits) for Remote Resource/UCD Group



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

- The other party is placed on hold.
- The call is transferred.

### Call Transfer using a DSS button

Allows PT users to perform Screened or Unscreened Call Transfer by using a DSS button. There are two operations, depending on whether or not One-Touch Transfer\* is set.

\* **One-Touch Transfer** allows you to hold an outside call and transfer it to an extension by pressing one key. This feature provides automatic hold and transfer, without pressing the TRANSFER button. System Programming is required to use this function.

### When “One-Touch Transfer” mode is enabled:

PT

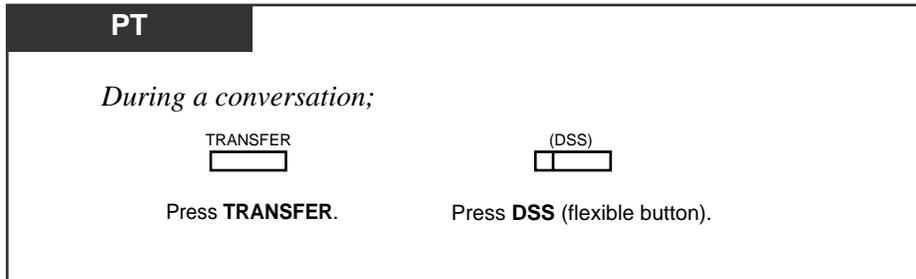
*During a conversation;*



Press **DSS** (flexible button).

- The other party is placed on hold and the destination extension is called immediately.

When “One-Touch Transfer” mode is disabled:



### Conditions

- **Automatic Disconnection**

If there is no answer for 30 minutes after “Transfer Recall” starts, the line will be disconnected.

- **Music on Hold or Ringback Tone (for Unscreened Call Transfer only)**

If “Music on Hold” is enabled, music is sent to the caller while being transferred. It is system programmable whether to send ringback tone or “Music on Hold” to the caller.

- **Transfer Recall Destination**

If the call (extension, outside) transferred to the destination party is not answered within a certain number of rings, it may ring an Operator Group extension instead of the extension who originally transferred it. This is determined by the System Programming.

- **Remote Maintenance**

Any extension user can transfer a call to Remote resource (Modem) for remote maintenance.

- **Camp-on Transfer**

When the transfer destination party is busy, the call is put in waiting status. If the destination party remains busy or does not answer the call within a specified period of time(Transfer Recall Time), the call will ring back the extension who transferred the call.

- **Ringling Pattern**

A transferred call will ring following the regular ringing pattern depending on the type of call being transferred.

**PT** • Pressing the FLASH button while dialing clears the display. Then you can enter the revised number.

**PT** • If you want to return to the held call, press the TRANSFER button or corresponding CO, INTERCOM or DN button before the destination extension answers.

**PT** • When “Transfer Recall” occurs, the display shows:

<Example>

RCL: Ext 103

**PT** • A flexible CO button can be assigned as a DSS button.

**PT** • To use “One-Touch Transfer,” System Programming is required.

- During a call transfer to the Remote Resource (Modem) or a UCD group, a confirmation tone is not emitted after dialing the FDN for the Remote Resource or a UCD Group.

### ***Programming References***

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — DSS Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - Transfer Recall Time (0 - 48 rings)
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (1) Sound source during transfer
    - (6) Transfer recall destination
    - (25) Pressing DSS key operation in CO talking
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS Key Assignment

### ***Feature References***

None

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# C

### Call Transfer — to TIE Line

You can transfer a call (intercom, CO, TIE) to an outside party via TIE line.

#### Screened Call Transfer

**PT and SLT**

*During a conversation;*

**TRANSFER** For PT  
 For SLT

For PT: Press **TRANSFER**.  
For SLT: Flash the switchhook.



Confirmation tone and dial tone

(CO)  
  
**line access code**

Press **CO** or enter a line access code (77 or 801 through 848).

**phone no.**

Dial the phone number where calls will be transferred.

- The current call is placed on hold.



Ringback tone



Wait for an answer.



Announce.



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- The call is transferred.

#### Unscreened Call Transfer

**PT and SLT**

*During a conversation;*

**TRANSFER** For PT  
 For SLT

For PT: Press **TRANSFER**.  
For SLT: Flash the switchhook.



Confirmation tone and dial tone

(CO)  
  
**line access code**

Press **CO** or enter a line access code (77 or 801 through 848).

**phone no.**

Dial the phone number where calls will be transferred.



Ringback tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- The current call is placed on hold.

- The call is transferred.

**Conditions**

- **Class of Service**

Class of Service programming determines the extensions that can perform this feature.

- **CO-TIE call**

If a CO call is transferred to the destination via TIE line, a CO-to-TIE call is established and the call duration is restricted by the System Timer “CO-to-CO Line Call Duration Time (1 - 64 min.)”

- PT • Pressing the FLASH button while dialing clears the display. Then you can enter the revised number.
- PT • If you want to return to the held call, press the TRANSFER button or corresponding CO or INTERCOM or DN button before the destination party answers.
- PT • If you want to join the conversation after transferring the call or while hold recall tone is sent, press the corresponding CO button. A conference call is established.

**Programming References**

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Transfer to CO
    - Trunk Group Setting
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - CO-to-CO Line Call Duration Time (1 - 64 min.)

**Feature References**

Hold Recall (→ see Features Guide)

# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

## Call Waiting

During a call, a Call Waiting tone informs you that there is another call waiting for you. You can answer the second call by disconnecting or placing the current call on hold. PT users can choose one of three Call Waiting modes.

### Setting

PT



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.


Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

1. Call Waiting BSS	7	3	1	1
2. Call Waiting OHCA	7	3	1	2
3. Call Waiting W-OHCA	7	3	1	3

1. Dial 7311.  
2. Dial 7312.  
3. Dial 7313.

**<PT Display Example>**

-1: C.Waiting BSS

-2: C.Waiting OHCA

-3: C.Waiting W-OHCA



Confirmation tone and dial tone

SLT



Lift the handset.

7	3	1	1
---	---	---	---

Dial 7311.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up.

### Canceling

Any Telephone



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7	3	1	0
---	---	---	---

Dial 7310.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

<PT Display Example>

C.Waiting Off
---------------

### To talk to the new party by terminating the current call

PT	SLT			
<p><i>While hearing a Call Waiting tone;</i></p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>(CO)            INTERCOM            (DN)</p> <table border="1" style="border-collapse: collapse; width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 30%; height: 20px;"></td> <td style="width: 30%; height: 20px;"></td> </tr> </table> </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> </div> <p>Press the flashing <b>CO</b> or <b>INTERCOM</b> or <b>DN</b>.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Talk to the new caller.</p> <div style="background-color: #ccc; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The current call is disconnected.</li> </ul> </div>				<p><i>While hearing a Call Waiting tone;</i></p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Hang up.</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Lift the handset.</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Talk to the new caller.</p> </div> </div> <div style="background-color: #ccc; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc; border-radius: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The current call is disconnected.</li> </ul> </div>

# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

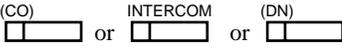
To talk to the new party by holding the current call

PT

While hearing the Call Waiting tone and the CO or INTERCOM or DN indicator is flashing rapidly;



Press **HOLD**.



Press the flashing **CO** or **INTERCOM** or **DN**.



Talk to the new caller.

- The current call is placed on hold.
- If both the current call and new call are extension calls, you will be connected to the new caller simply by pressing HOLD.

---

SLT

While hearing a Call Waiting tone;



Flash the switchhook.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Dial 50.



Dial tone



Hang up.



Lift the handset.



Talk to the new caller.

- The current call is placed on hold.

### Conditions

#### • BSS / OHCA / Whisper OHCA

If an extension user dials “1” while hearing a busy tone, BSS or OHCA or Whisper OHCA may be activated at the called extension.

This is determined by the following conditions.

Calling extension	Called extension			
	Call Waiting setting			
	OFF	ON		
COS-OHCA assignment	0	1	2	3
Disable	_____	BSS	BSS	BSS
Enable	_____	BSS	OHCA <sup>*1</sup> →BSS	W-OHCA <sup>*2</sup> →OHCA→BSS

<sup>\*1</sup>: OHCA (Off-Hook Call Announcement) is activated when the called extension is KX-T7130, KX-T7235 or KX-T7436.

<sup>\*2</sup>: Whisper OHCA is activated when both calling and called extensions are using one of the KX-T7400 series PT.

- The call waiting tone is generated when a CO call, a doorphone call is received, or when an extension caller executes Busy Station Signaling.

- **Data Line Security**

Setting Data Line Security temporarily cancels Call Waiting which has been turned on by an extension user.

**PT(ICM)**

- BSS (Busy Station Signaling) works when the other extension is in off-hook status and the INTERCOM button is idle.

**PT(DN)**

- BSS, OHCA and Whisper OHCA do not function at a DN type PT.

**PT**

- **Call Waiting Tone Selection**

For PT users, two types of call waiting tones are provided to prevent them from missing the tone. A Call Waiting Tone type can be selected either by Station or System Programming.

- **Distinctive Dial Tone**

Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Call Waiting Tone Type Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (45) Call Waiting Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA)
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Call Waiting Tone Type

### *Feature References*

Busy Station Signaling (BSS)

Data Line Security

Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA)

Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA), Whisper

KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

## Call Waiting from Central Office

During a conversation, a call waiting tone offered by the local Central Office signals your extension that there is another call waiting .

You can answer the second call by placing the first call on hold.

**7230 / 7235 / 7433 / 7436**

While hearing a Call Waiting tone through the handset;



Press **EFA (S2)**.

- The current call is placed on hold and you can talk to the second caller.

### Using the FLASH button

**PT**

While hearing a Call Waiting tone through the handset;



Press **FLASH**.

- The current call is placed on hold and you can talk to the second caller.

### Using the feature number

**PT and SLT**

While hearing a Call Waiting tone through the handset;



Flash the switchhook.      Dial 6.

- The first party is placed on hold.
- You can talk to the second party.

### *Conditions*

- PT • You can return to the original party by pressing the FLASH or EFA (S2) button again.
- SLT • You can return to the original party by repeating steps (1 and 2).
- This is an optional telephone company service.  
For more information, consult the local telephone company.

### *Programming References*

No programming required.

### *Feature References*

None

## Conference

During a two-party conversation, you can add a third party to make a three-party conference. The members of a conference on a line may be three extensions, one extension and two CO lines, or two extensions and one CO line.

### To establish a conference

PT

*During a two-party conversation;*



Press **CONF**.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Dial the phone number of the third party.



Talk to the third party.



Press **CONF**.



Confirmation tone (optional)

A three-party conference is now established.

- The CONF indicator light turns steady red.
- The corresponding CO or INTERCOM or DN indicator light turns green.

- You must dial a line access code (9 or 801 through 848) as the first digit when calling an outside party.

- The current party is placed on hold.
- The CONF indicator light flashes red slowly.

---

SLT

*During a two-party conversation;*



Flash the switchhook.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Dial the phone number of the third party.



Talk to the third party.



Flash the switchhook.



Dial 3.



Confirmation tone (optional)

A three-party conference is now established.

- You must dial a line access code (9 or 801 through 848) as the first digit when calling an outside party.

- The other party is placed on hold.

*To leave the conference*

**Any Telephone**



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- The other two parties may continue their conversation.
- If both other two parties are on outside lines, they will be disconnected.

*To terminate one party and talk to the other*

**PT**

(CO)  or INTERCOM  or (DN)




Press the **CO** or **INTERCOM** or **DN** of the party to remain connected.

Confirmation tone (optional)

Talk.

- A conversation with the desired party is established and the other party is disconnected.
- This operation is available only when the extension user established the conference call by using two different line access buttons. (Not available when only one button is used.)

*To talk to the third party while holding the original party*

**PT**

TRANSFER




Press **TRANSFER**.

Confirmation tone (optional)

Talk to the third party.

- If both other two parties are extensions, the INTERCOM or PDN indicator light flashes green moderately.

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

*To talk to the original party while holding the third party*

**SLT**



Flash the switchhook.



Confirmation tone (optional)



Talk to the original party.

*To put both parties on hold*

**PT**

HOLD



Press **HOLD**.

- This feature is only available when at least one party is on a CO line.
- For the DN type PT, this operation is available only when the extension user established the conference call by using two different line access buttons. (Not available when only one button is used.)

### Conditions

- **Conference call arrangements**  
A conference call can be one of the following three arrangements: 1-inside and 2-outside; 2-inside and 1-outside; and 3-inside.
  - **Conference trunk**  
Up to eight conference calls are available simultaneously at a time by default. If optional TSW Conference Expansion card is installed, up to 64 conference calls are available simultaneously at a time.
  - **Executive Busy Override, Privacy Release**  
A 3-party conference call is also established by Executive Busy Override or Privacy Release.
  - **Confirmation tone**  
When a 2-party call is changed to a 3-party conference call or vice versa, a confirmation tone is sent to all three parties. Eliminating the tone is programmable.
- PT** • Pressing a CO button which is not in the conference, allows you to exit from the conference leaving the other two parties connected unless they both are on CO lines. If they both are on CO lines, they will be disconnected.
- PT** • You can return to the original party before the third party answers by pressing the TRANSFER button.
- 7250** • CONF button is not provided on your PT. However, it can be assigned to a flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button by Station, User or System Programming.

- **Call Splitting**

During a 3-party conference call, the conference originator can talk to either one of other two parties alternately by pressing the TRANSFER button (for PT user) or flashing the switchhook (for SLT user). In this case, the PT user is connected with the latter party first and the SLT user is connected with the previous party first.

- SLT If “Released Link Operation“ is enabled on your extension by System Programming, you cannot establish a conference call.

### ***Programming References***

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Conference (CONF) Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Released Link Operation
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (8) Confirmation Tone for Override, Barge-in and Conference
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment

### ***Feature References***

Conference, Unattended  
Executive Busy Override — Barge-in  
Executive Busy Override — Extension  
Privacy Release

### Conference, Unattended

When you are in a conference with two outside parties, you can leave the three-party conference allowing the other two parties to continue their conversation.

#### To establish an Unattended Conference

**PT**

During a conversation with two outside parties;

**CONF**

Press **CONF** to leave the conference.

- A CO-to-CO line call between the other two parties is established.

#### To return to the conference

**PT**

**(CO)** or **(DN)**

Press **CO** or **DN** flashing green moderately.

#### To answer Hold Recall (To return to the conference on the line)

**PT**

While hearing Hold Recall;

 or **(CO)** or **(DN)**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE. Press **CO** or **DN** button which is flashing rapidly.

**Conditions**

- **Class of Service**

An Unattended Conference cannot be established unless the extension is allowed to transfer a call to an outside party by COS programming.

- **Call duration limit**

The duration of an unattended conference is restricted by a system timer.

Hold Recall tone

Hold Recall tone is sent to the extension user who left the conference 50 seconds before the time-out.

Alarm tone

An alarm tone is sent to both outside parties three times at 5-second interval 15 seconds before the time-out. The call is disconnected at the time-out unless the extension who originated the Unattended Conference returns to the call.

- PT • If your extension is engaged in a call when Unattended Conference Recall occurs, the display flashes “10101 & 20211” for example, for 5 seconds at 15 seconds intervals. This is available when Call Waiting feature is enabled on your extension beforehand.

**Programming References**

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Transfer to CO
    - Trunk Group Setting
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - CO-to-CO Line Call Duration Time (1-64 min.)

**Feature References**

Conference

Hold Recall (→ see Features Guide)

Limited Call Duration (→ see Features Guide)

\* Class of Service (COS) is used to define the features which are allowed for a group of extensions. Refer to “Class of Service (COS)” in the Features Guide.

### Data Line Security

Your extension is protected against interruptions from the “Call Waiting,” “Hold Recall,” and “Executive Busy Override” features. Data communication devices, such as computers and facsimiles, operate uninterrupted.

#### Setting / Canceling

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press  
SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7	3	0	1	To set.
7	3	0	0	To cancel.

To set: Dial 7301.  
To cancel: Dial 7300.



Confirmation tone  
and dial tone



Hang up or press  
SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:
 

Data Mode On
- When canceling:
 

Data Mode Off

#### Conditions

- **Automatic Privacy**  
Assigning Data Line Security always offers conversation privacy unless Privacy Release is executed.
- If one extension in a conversation has set Data Line Security, it applies to the both extensions.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.
- **Distinctive Dial Tone**  
Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

#### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (44) Data Line Security Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (15) Special dial tone after setting feature

### 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line — Data Line Mode

#### *Feature References*

Call Waiting

Executive Busy Override — Barge-in

Executive Busy Override — Extension

Hold Recall ( see Features Guide)

Privacy Release

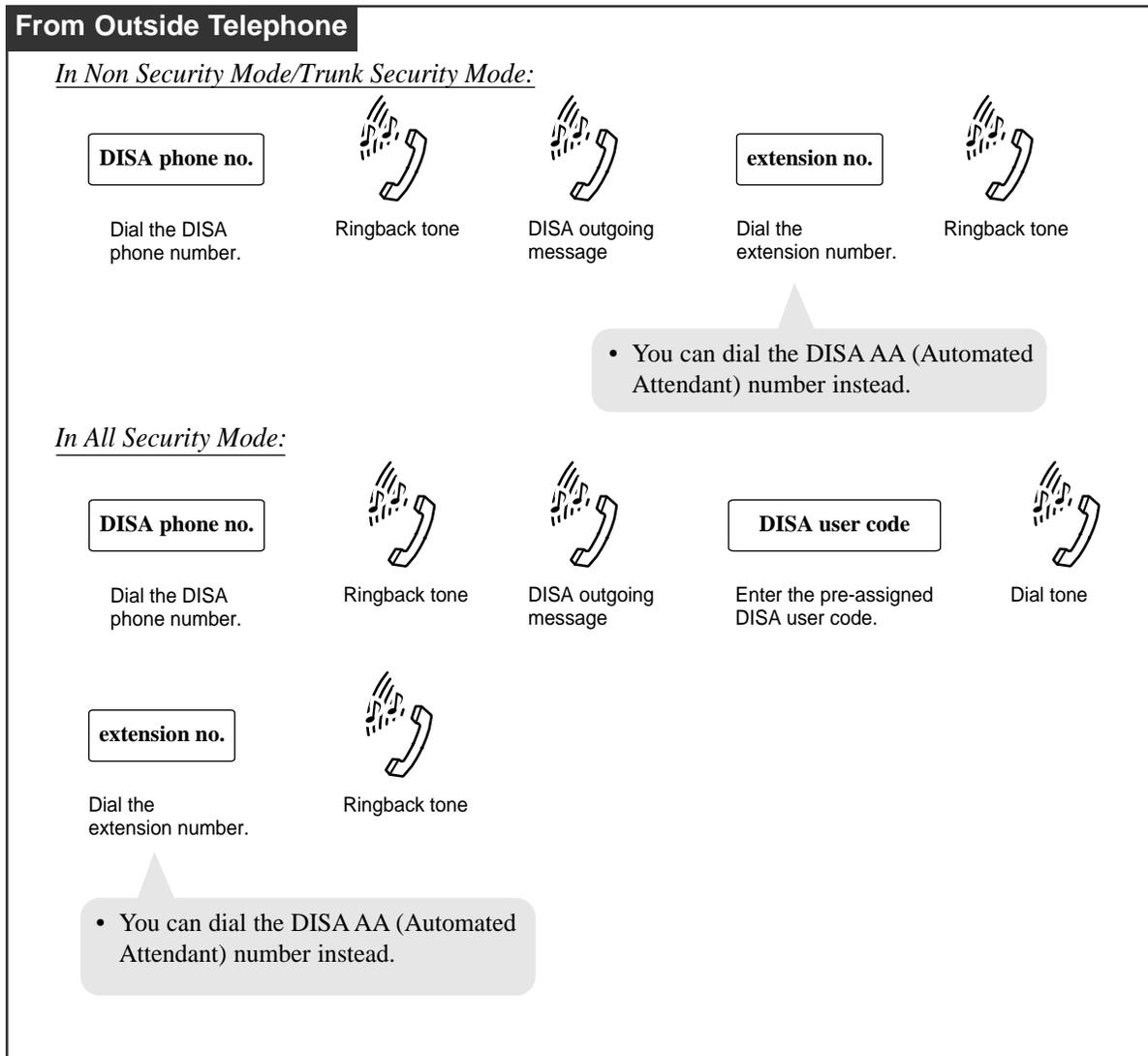
KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu  
(4.5/Special Display Features)

## Direct Inward System Access (DISA)

Allows an outside caller to access specific system features as if the caller is an extension in the system. A DISA outgoing message is used to give outside callers assistance, such as listing the extension numbers in the system. You can also reach extensions using a single digit (DISA built-in auto attendant number).

### Calling an extension



### Calling an outside party

**From Outside Telephone**

In Non Security Mode:

<b>DISA phone no.</b>			<b>line access code</b>	<b>phone no.</b>
Dial the DISA phone number.	Ringback tone	DISA outgoing message	Enter a line access code (9 or 801 through 848).	Dial the phone number of the outside party.

In Trunk Security Mode:

<b>DISA phone no.</b>			<b>line access code</b>	<b>DISA user code</b>	<b>phone no.</b>
Dial the DISA phone number.	Ringback tone	DISA outgoing message	Enter a line access code (9 or 801 through 848).	Enter the pre-assigned DISA user code.	Dial the phone number of the outside party.

In All Security Mode:

<b>DISA phone no.</b>			<b>DISA user code</b>	<b>line access code</b>	<b>phone no.</b>
Dial the DISA phone number.	Ringback tone	DISA outgoing message	Enter the pre-assigned DISA user code.	Enter a line access code (9 or 801 through 848).	Dial the phone number of the outside party.

### Extending the call duration while calling a CO line

**From Outside Telephone**

*When you make a call to any CO line using the DISA feature, the line is disconnected after a preprogrammed time (default: 10 min)*

**any key except “\*”**

Dial any key except “\*” after the warning tone.

### Re-try

**From Outside Telephone**

*It is possible (by System Programming) to dial a different number during a conversation with an outside party or while hearing a ringback, reorder, or busy tone.*

Press \*.

- You hear a dial tone.
- If you dial “\*” while hearing a DISA outgoing message, dial tone, or after the DISA outgoing message, the call will be disconnected.

- You must dial a line access code (9 or 801 through 848) when calling an outside party.

### Conditions

#### Calling an extension

- You can choose Non Security, Trunk Security or All Security mode. In All Security mode, the caller must enter a pre-assigned DISA user code to make intercom calls.
- If the DISA call is not answered within a specified period of time (DISA IRNA Time: 60 seconds (default)), the system redirects it to the pre-determined IRNA destination. If IRNA destination is not programmed, the DISA call continues to ring at the first destination extension.

#### Calling an outgoing CO line

- You can choose Non Security, Trunk Security or All Security mode. In Trunk Security mode, the caller must enter a pre-assigned DISA user code to make outside calls. In All Security mode, the caller must enter a pre-assigned DISA user code to make both CO and intercom calls.

#### General

- If the caller does not dial any digits during and after the playback of DISA outgoing message, the system will direct him or her to the pre-determined destination (Intercept Routing). “Intercept Routing” is activated 5 seconds after (default) or immediately after the playback depending on System Programming.
- **DISA Delayed Answer Time**  
A DISA call is answered after a ringback tone is returned to the caller after the “DISA Delayed Answer Time” expires. The caller can dial while hearing the OGM message.
- **DISA User Code**  
The KX-TD500 System can store up to 32 programmable DISA user codes with a COS level for each. Each code should be unique.
- **DISA User Code Entry Failure**  
If the DISA caller fails to enter the valid DISA user code three times consecutively, the call will be disconnected.

- **DISA built-in Automated Attendant Tables**

This system can store up to eight DISA built-in auto attendant number tables, each includes 10 one-digit numbers.

- **DISA built-in Automated Attendant Number**

The DISA built-in auto attendant number may be the same as the first digit of other numbers (extension number, Floating Number, etc.). To avoid confusion, the system waits for the second digit for a pre-programmed amount of time (default: 1 second). If the second digit is not dialed until the timer expires, the system assumes that the first digit is a DISA built-in auto attendant number.

- **Call Forwarding-to CO or TIE Line**

If a DISA call is forwarded to an outside party, the caller is not required to enter a DISA user code if the DISA security mode is “Non Security” or “Trunk Security.”

- **CO-to-CO line call duration**

The duration of CO-to-CO line calls can be limited by System Programming. When the specified time expires (default: 10 min), both lines are disconnected unless the caller prolongs the duration time, if available. A warning tone is sent to both parties 15 seconds before the time-limit at 5-second intervals.

- Prolonging the CO-to-CO line call is possible. To prolong his/her call, the caller should press any dialpad key except **\***. The amount of prolonging is set by “DISA Prolong Time” (0 to 7 minutes). (If this is set to zero, then prolonging is disabled.) Depending on “(13) DISA Prolong Operation”, the call can be prolonged ten times or without limit.
- To detect the end of a CO-to-CO line call, CPC Signal Detection and Tone Detection can be assigned.

- **DISA Call Re-try by Pressing \***

The “**\***” key can be entered during a DISA call. The action taken by the system depends upon System Programming (System Option 2/4, (14) ‘ Dialing “**\***” in DISA CO-to-CO talking ’ ). If “Disconnect and make a new call” is selected, then the system will disconnect the current call and prepare for a new call. Otherwise, the **\*** will be transmitted down the line to the other party.

- **Intercept Routing**

The Floating Number of a DISA OGM Group can be selected as the destination of Intercept Routing.

- **What if the destination extension is busy?**

If the destination extension has enabled Call Waiting, then he or she will hear the Call Waiting tone. Otherwise, the caller may hear a busy tone, or the call is redirected to the IRNA destination. This is determined by System Programming (Section 4.2.7 System-System Option, “(17) Destination Busy-DISA” in the Installation Manual).

- **What if an illegal number is dialed?**

The caller may hear a reorder tone, or the call is redirected to the IRNA destination. This is determined by System Programming (Section 4.2.7 System-System Option, “(21) Illegal Number-DISA” in the Installation Manual).

- **How many times does the IRNA destination ring ?**  
This is determined by System Programming (Section 4.2.4 System - System Timer, “Call Forwarding — No Answer Time” in the Installation Manual).

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - <To enable DISA feature>
    - 4.1.6 Configuration - DISA Port Assignment
    - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
      - (41) OGM Playback /Record
    - 4.2.6 System - Trunk to Trunk Restriction
    - 4.2.7 System - System Option
      - (13) DISA Prolong Operation
      - (14) Dialing “\*” in DISA CO-to-CO talking
      - (17) Destination busy-DISA
      - (21) Illegal Number -DISA
    - 4.3.5 Group - OGM Group
      - FDN
      - Tenant No.
      - OGM Type
      - Security Mode
      - Destination of DISA single digit dialing
    - 4.4.1 Line - Trunk Line
      - Incoming Type
      - Destination, Day/Night
      - CPC Signal
        - OUT Detection, Detection Time
        - IN Detection, Detection Time
    - 4.5.8 Features - DISA/TIE User Code
      - Code
      - COS
  - <To set DISA timer values>
    - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
      - CO-to-CO Line Call Duration Time (1-64 min.)
      - DISA Prolong Time (0-7 min.)
      - DISA Delayed Answer Time (0-6 rings)
      - DISA Automated Attendant Time (1-5 s)
  - <To enable the Intercept Routing feature>
    - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
      - DISA IRNA Time (5-240 s)
      - Intercept Timer after OGM
    - 4.3.1 Group - Trunk Group
      - Intercept Destination, Day/Night

### *Feature References*

- Intercept Routing (→ see Features Guide)
- Outgoing Message (OGM) Record / Playback (4.4/Operator / Manager Service Features)

### Do Not Disturb (DND)

Allows you to prevent other parties from disturbing you. Your extension will not receive intercom and outside calls.

#### Setting

**7235 / 7436**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Press **FWD/DND**.

Press **Do Not Disturb (F2)**.

Confirmation tone and dial tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**  
Do Not Disturb

#### Canceling

**7235 / 7436**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Press **FWD/DND**.

Press **FWD/DND Cancel (F1)**.

Confirmation tone and dial tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**  
FWD/DND Cancel

# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# D

## Setting / Canceling

PT and SLT



Lift the handset  
or press  
SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

FWD/DND		
7	1	0

For PT: Press **FWD/DND**.  
For SLT, PT: Dial 710.

For PT

1	To set.
0	To cancel.

To set: Dial 1.  
To cancel: Dial 0.



Confirmation tone  
and dial tone

- When setting, the FWD/DND indicator lights.  
 <PT Display Example>  

Do Not Disturb
- When canceling, the FWD/DND indicator light turns off.  
 <PT Display Example>  

FWD/DND Cancel



Hang up or press  
SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

## Conditions

- DND also works for an incoming call from a doorphone.
- DND does not work for the following calls:**
  - Hold Recall
  - Timed Reminder Alarm Tone
  - Calls directed by Intercept Routing

### Do Not Disturb Override

An extension in DND mode can be called by other extension users who are allowed to override DND in their Class of Service.

- PT • An extension user may have only one type of Call Forwarding / Do Not Disturb feature in effect at any time. If one of Call Forwarding/Do Not Disturb feature is assigned, another does not function but the assignment itself is preserved for future use. The extension user can choose either one by pressing the FWD/DND button while on-hook. In this case, pressing the button changes the settings as follows:

→ DND → FWD → Off →

The lighting patterns of the FWD/DND button are as follows:

Off : Both functions are canceled

Red on: DND mode

Red flash: FWD mode

}

This setting can be changed by System Programming.

### PT • FWD/DND button

Regarding the PT (7050/7055/7250) without the FWD/DND button, it can be assigned to a flexible (CO, DSS, PF) button by Station, User or System Programming.

- PT • A PT user in DND mode can answer a call by pressing a flashing button which shows the arrival of the call.
- **Distinctive Dial Tone**  
Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — FWD/DND Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (42) Call FWD - Do Not Disturb Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - DND Override
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (15) Special dial tone after setting feature
    - (33) FWD/DND lamp pattern
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment

### *Feature References*

- Call Forwarding
- Do Not Disturb (DND) Override

## Do Not Disturb (DND) Override

You can override the “Do Not Disturb (DND)” feature set on the other extension, if permitted by System Programming beforehand.

**7230 / 7235 / 7433 / 7436**

*If you make an intercom call and hear the Do Not Disturb (DND) tone;*

Press **Over (S2)**.

Wait for an answer and talk.

**<PT Display Example>**

101 : DND

**Any Telephone**

*If you hear Do Not Disturb (DND) tone after making an intercom call;*

DND tone

Dial 1.

Wait for an answer and talk.

**<PT Display Example>**

101 : DND

### *Conditions*

- **Class of Service**  
Class of Service (COS) programming determines the extension that can perform this feature.
- If you hear a reorder tone after dialing 1, your extension is not permitted to execute “Do Not Disturb (DND) Override” feature by System Programming.
- **What if a busy tone is heard after DND override?**  
The other extension in DND mode is busy.  
In this case, you may perform the following features.
  - Automatic Callback (Camp-on)
  - Busy Station Signaling (BSS)
  - Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA)
  - Whisper OHCA
  - Executive Busy Override

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - DND Override

### *Feature References*

Do Not Disturb (DND)

## Doorphone Call

Allows you to have a conversation with a visitor at your doorphone. You can also unlock the door from your telephone.

### Calling an extension from a doorphone – operation for a visitor

Doorphone



Press the Doorphone button for one second.



Wait for an answer and talk.

### Answering a doorphone call

Any Telephone

*When you hear the doorphone ring tone at the extension;*



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

### Calling a doorphone

Any Telephone



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

3

1

Dial 31.

doorphone no.

Enter a doorphone number (1 through 8).



Confirmation tone



Talk.

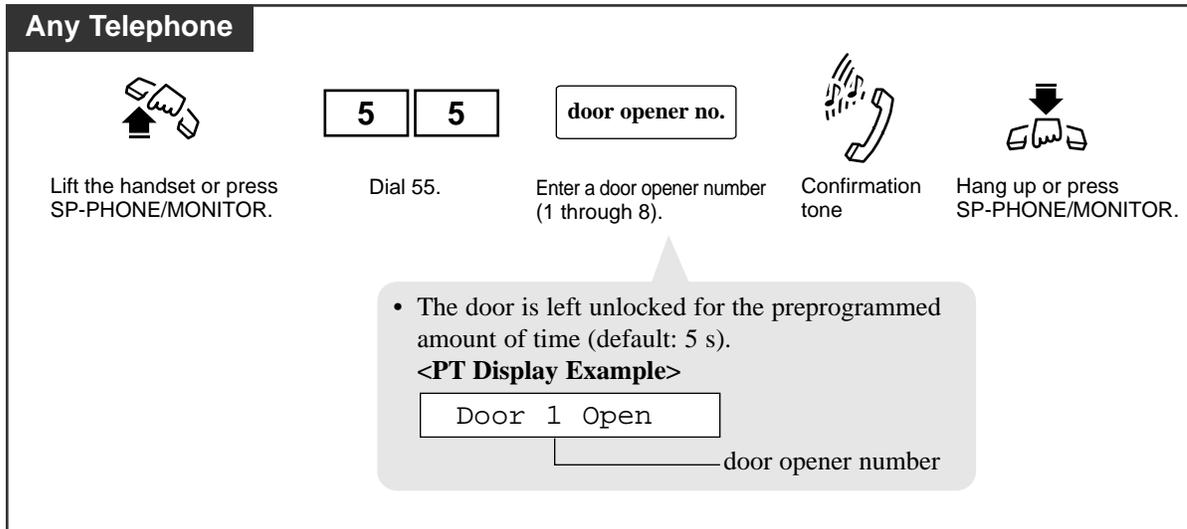
**<PT Display Example>**

Doorphone    x

— doorphone number (1 through 8)

### To unlock the door from an assigned extension

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

Dial 55.

Enter a door opener number (1 through 8).

Confirmation tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

- The door is left unlocked for the preprogrammed amount of time (default: 5 s).

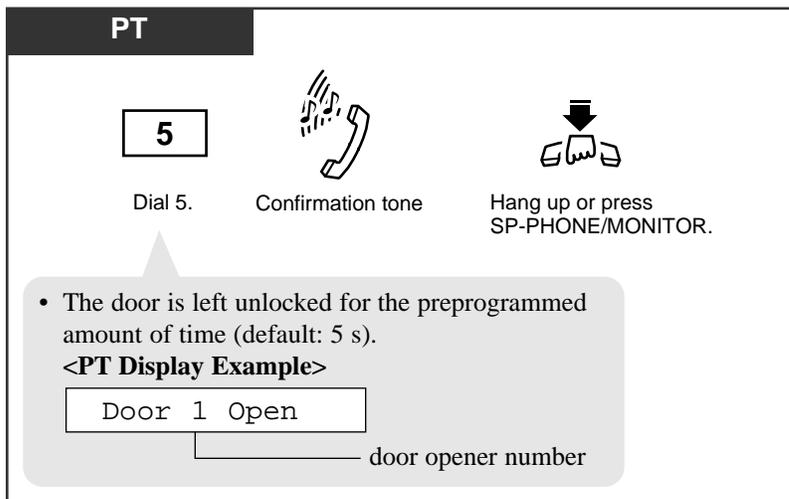
<PT Display Example>

Door 1 Open

door opener number

### To unlock the door while talking to the visitor at the doorphone from any extension

**PT**



Dial 5.

Confirmation tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

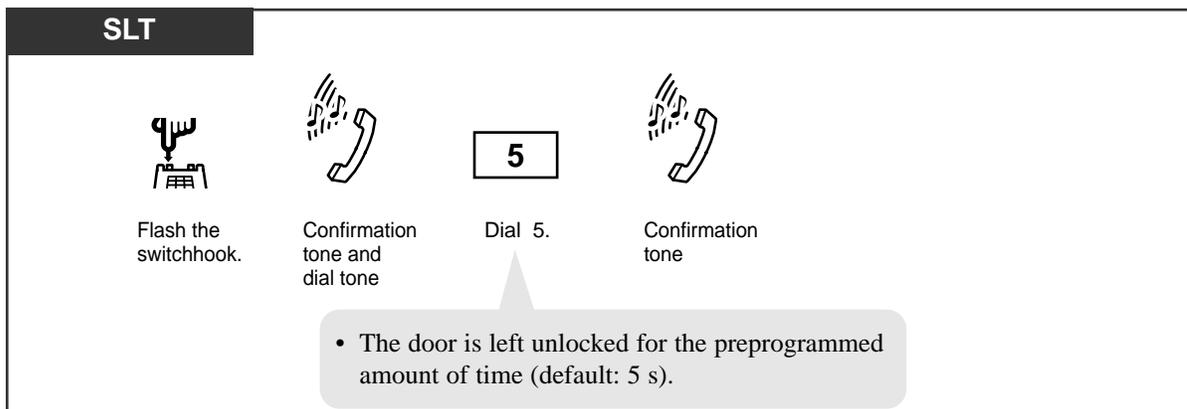
- The door is left unlocked for the preprogrammed amount of time (default: 5 s).

<PT Display Example>

Door 1 Open

door opener number

**SLT**



Flash the switchhook.

Confirmation tone and dial tone

Dial 5.

Confirmation tone

- The door is left unlocked for the preprogrammed amount of time (default: 5 s).

### *Conditions*

- If you dial “5” again while the door is open, the door will stay open for another five seconds.
- **Doorphone Call Destination**  
It is necessary to program the extensions that can receive doorphone calls during day and night mode.
- **What if a doorphone call is not answered?**  
If not answered within 30 seconds, the call stops ringing and is canceled.
- **Unlocking the door opener**  
During a doorphone call, any extension user can unlock the door opener (user-supplied) from their extensions by dialing “5” to let the visitor in.
- You cannot hold and transfer the doorphone call.
- The door can be unlocked by the following:
  - 1) Extensions that are programmed to receive doorphone calls.
  - 2) Any extension that is engaged in a doorphone call.
- While talking to a doorphone, you can unlock the door using the One-Touch dialing button instead of dialing “5.” In this case, “5” must be stored in the One-Touch dialing button by Station, User or System Programming.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — One-Touch Dialing Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (23) Doorphone Call
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer
    - Door Opener Time
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.4 Line - Doorphone
    - Destination, Day/Night

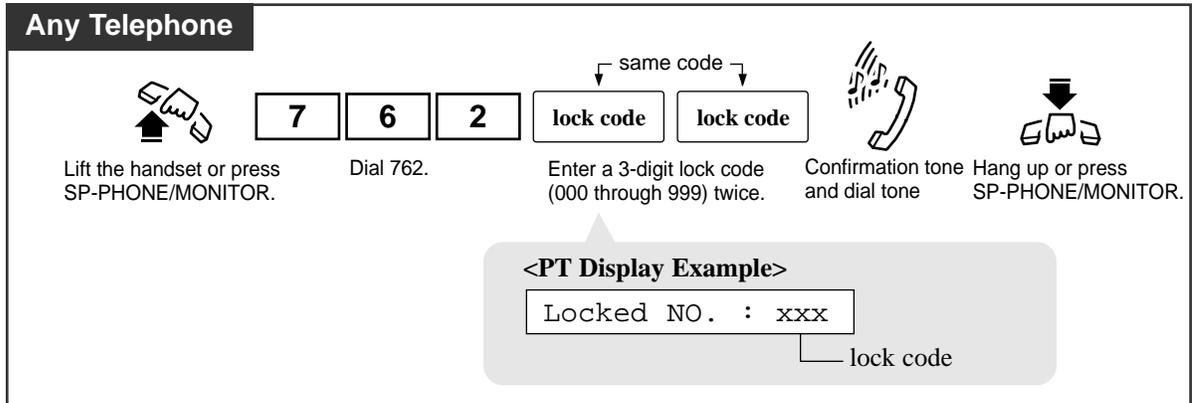
### *Feature References*

- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

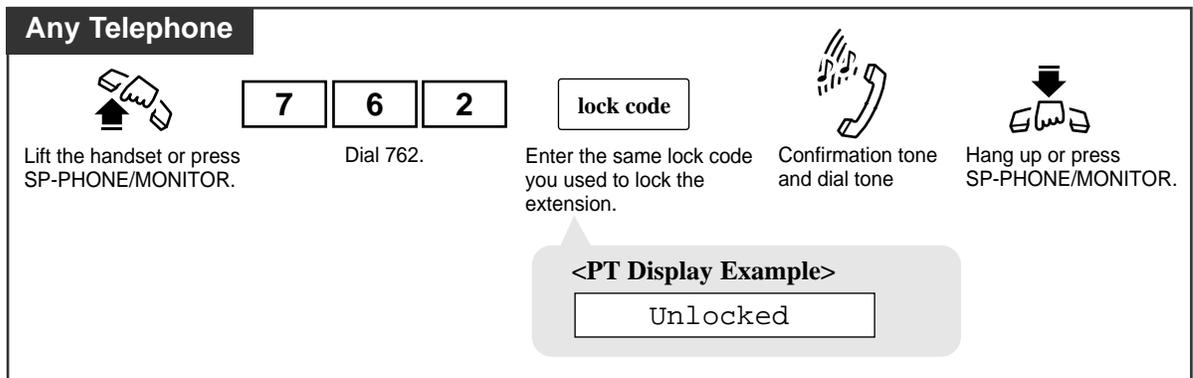
### Electronic Station Lockout

Allows you to lock your extension so that other users cannot make outgoing CO calls from your extension.

#### Locking



#### Unlocking



### Conditions

- **How does this feature restrict the extension?**

This feature restricts the extension from making an outside call only. Other operations are not affected.

- **Remote Station Lock**

Remote Station Lock Control overrides Electronic Station Lockout. If the Manager or an Operator sets Remote Station Lock on an extension that has already been locked by the extension user, the extension user cannot unlock it.

**PT**

- If someone tries to make an outgoing CO call from a locked extension, he or she hears a reorder tone and “Restricted” is shown on the display.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.
- **Distinctive Dial Tone**

Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (50) Station Lock Set/Cancel

### Feature References

Remote Station Lock Control (4.4/Operator / Manager Service Features)

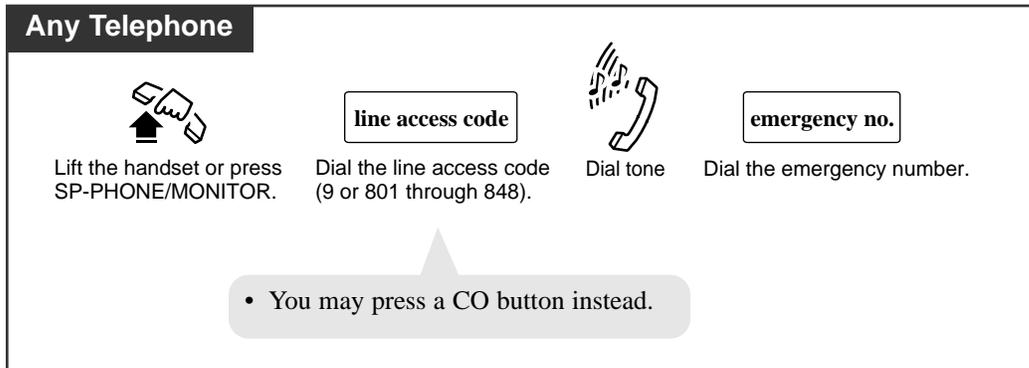
KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

### Emergency Call

Allows you to dial out a pre-assigned emergency number after seizing a CO line regardless of the restrictions imposed on your extension. Up to 10 emergency dial numbers can be stored in the system.

#### Dialing



#### Conditions

- The emergency number “911” is already stored at the factory. System Programming is required to store other emergency numbers.
- An emergency call is allowed even in the following cases;
  - in Account Code – Verified (All Calls, Toll Restriction Override) mode
  - in any toll restriction level
  - in Electronic Station Lockout / Remote Station Lock
- If your KX-TD500 System is connected to a host PBX as a behind PBX, you must dial the host PBX line access code after dialing the line access code and it must be included as the first digit of the emergency number.

#### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.5.3 Features - Emergency Dial Code

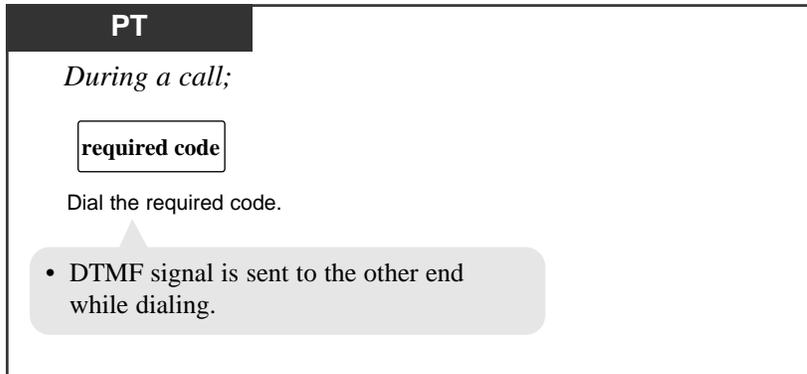
#### Feature References

None

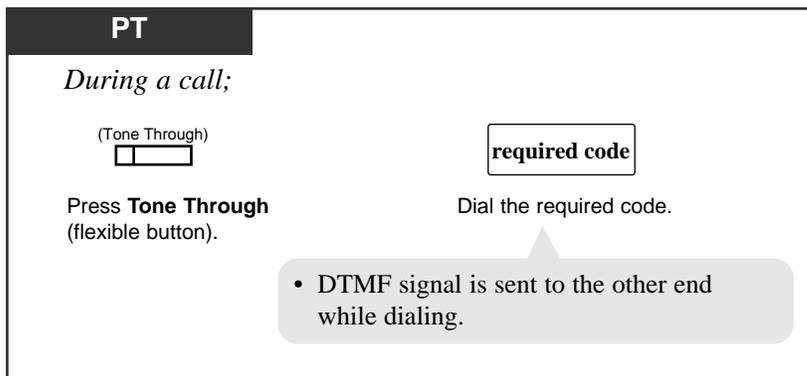
## End-to-End DTMF Signaling (Tone Through)

DTMF signaling is required for access to special network services offered by some telephone companies. This system allows you to signal the other end using DTMF tones during an established call.

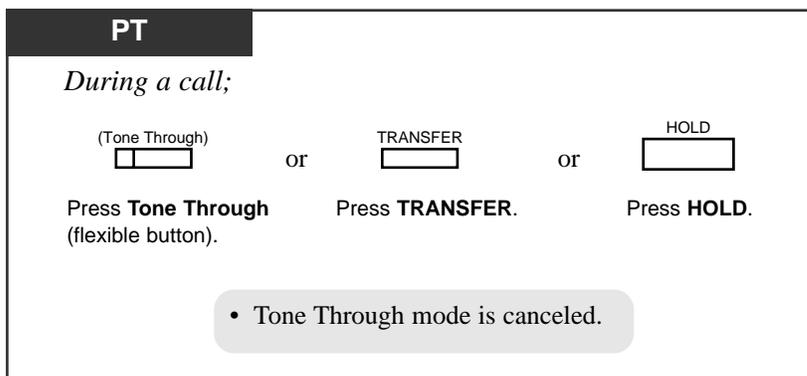
### End-to-End DTMF Signaling (1)



### End-to-End DTMF Signaling (2) (When “Automatic Hold-All Calls” is enabled)



### Canceling End-to-End DTMF Signaling mode



### *Conditions*

- If the dial type of the line is assigned to DTMF, Tone Through mode is established automatically after the dialing sequence is finished and the call is established.
- PT • **Tone Through button**  
This button can be assigned to a flexible button (CO, DSS) by Station, User or System Programming.
- PT • Tone Through button is effective during a call between two extensions or extension to outside.

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)  
Flexible Button Assignment — Tone Through Button
- User Programming (Section 3)  
[005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Automatic Hold
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS Key Assignment

### *Feature References*

None

## Executive Busy Override — Barge-in

You can interrupt an existing outside call (either between two outside parties or between an outside party and an inside party) by pressing the red lit S-CO or DN button. This establishes a 3-party conference call.

### Setting

<b>PT</b>		
	(CO) <input type="checkbox"/> or (DN) <input type="checkbox"/>	
Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.	Press the red lit <b>CO</b> or <b>DN</b> corresponding to the desired caller.	Confirmation tone (optional)
<u>A three-party conference is now established.</u>		

### To leave the conference

<b>PT</b>	
	<u>The other two parties continue their conversation.</u>
Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.	

### To terminate one party and talk to the other

<b>PT</b>	
(CO) <input type="checkbox"/> or INTERCOM <input type="checkbox"/>	
Press <b>CO</b> or <b>INTERCOM</b> of the party to remain connected.	Confirmation tone (optional)

### Conditions

- Executive Busy Override Deny**  
 Extension users can prevent this function from being executed by another extension user.
- Class of Service**  
 Class of Service programming determines the extension that can perform this feature. The pre-assigned extension users can interrupt an existing outside call even if access to that line is not allowed by System Programming.

- This feature does not work if Executive Busy Override Deny or Data Line Security is set at the extension engaged in the existing CO call.

- **Confirmation tone**

When a 2-party call is changed to a 3-party call and vice versa, a confirmation tone is sent to all three parties. This tone can be eliminated by System Programming.

**PT**

**PT(DN)**

- This feature is available between two extensions who share the same S-CO button.
- This feature is available when one extension has an SDN button associated with the PDN button of the other extension.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (44) Data Line Security Set/Cancel
    - (46) Executive Override Deny Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Busy Override
    - Busy Override Deny
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (8) Confirmation Tone for Override, Barge-in and Conference

### *Feature References*

Conference  
Data Line Security  
Executive Busy Override Deny

## Executive Busy Override — Extension

You can interrupt an existing extension call (either between two inside parties or between an outside party and an inside party) by dialing “2”. This establishes a 3-party conference call.

**7230 / 7235 / 7433 / 7436**

*If you hear a busy tone after making an intercom call;*



Press **Over (S2)**.



Confirmation tone (optional)

A three-party conference is now established.

**Any Telephone**

*If you hear a busy tone after making an intercom call;*

2

Dial 2.



Confirmation tone (optional)

A three-party conference is now established.

### To leave the conference

**Any Telephone**



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

The other two parties continue their conversation.

### To terminate one party and talk to the other

**PT**

(CO)  OR INTERCOM

Press the **CO** or **INTERCOM** of the party to remain connected.



Confirmation tone (optional)

### *Conditions*

- **Class of Service**  
Class of Service programming determines the extension that can perform this feature.
- This feature does not work when “Data Line Security” or “Executive Busy Override Deny” is set at either or both of the other parties.
- **Executive Busy Override Deny**  
It is possible for extension users (if allowed by Class of Service Programming) to prevent this feature from being executed by another extension user.
- **Confirmation tone**  
When a 2-party call is changed to a 3-party call and vice versa, a confirmation tone is sent to all three parties. This tone can be eliminated by System Programming.
- **Terminate one party and talk to the other**  
This feature can be performed only during conference with an outside party and inside party.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (44) Data Line Security Set/Cancel
    - (46) Executive Override Deny Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Busy Override
    - Busy Override Deny
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (8) Confirmation Tone for Override, Barge-in and Conference

### *Feature References*

Conference  
Data Line Security  
Executive Busy Override Deny

### Executive Busy Override Deny

Allows you to prevent other extension users from interrupting your telephone conversation.

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press  
SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7	3	3	1	To set.
7	3	3	0	To cancel.

To set: Dial 7331.  
To cancel: Dial 7330.



Confirmation tone  
and dial tone

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:  

Busy Ovrde Deny
- When canceling:  

Busy Ovrde Allow

#### Conditions

- **Class of Service**  
“Class of Service” programming determines the extensions that can perform this feature.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.
- **Distinctive Dial Tone**  
Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

#### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan  
— (46) Executive Override Deny Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service  
— Busy Override Deny
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option  
— (15) Special dial tone after setting feature

#### Feature References

- Executive Busy Override — Barge-in
- Executive Busy Override — Extension
- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

### External Feature Access

Allows you to access special features (e.g. Call Waiting) offered by a host PBX, Centrex or Central Office. This feature is effective only during an outside call.

**7230 / 7235 / 7433 / 7436**

*During a conversation with an outside party;*



Press **EFA (S2)**. Enter the desired service code.

### Using the FLASH button

**PT**

*During a conversation with an outside party;*



Press **FLASH**. Enter the desired service code.

- The current call is placed on hold.

### Using the feature number

**PT and SLT**

*During a conversation with an outside party;*



For PT: Press **TRANSFER**. For SLT: Flash the switchhook. Dial tone. Dial **6**. Enter the desired service code.

- The current call is placed on hold.

### Conditions

- **Flash Time**  
The flash time must be assigned as required by the Centrex, host PBX or CO line.
- PT • **FLASH Button Operation**  
Pressing the FLASH button on a PT results in either sending Flash signal or disconnecting the current call.  
This is determined by System Programming (Section 4, System - System Option, “(3) FLASH button operation while CO talking,” “(4) Flash button operation when “Don’t release the trunk” is selected at #3” in the Installation Manual).
- PT • **Memory Dialing**  
During outside calls, a FLASH stored in System Speed Dialing, Station Speed Dialing or One-Touch Dialing works as External Feature Access, not as Flash (Disconnect Signal).
- SLT • This feature does not function, if an SLT has a call on Consultation Hold.

### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (38) External Feature Access
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (3) FLASH button operation while CO talking
    - (4) FLASH button operation when “Don’t release the trunk” is selected at #3
  - 4.3.1 Group - Trunk Group
    - Flash Time
    - Max. Dial No. after EFA Signal

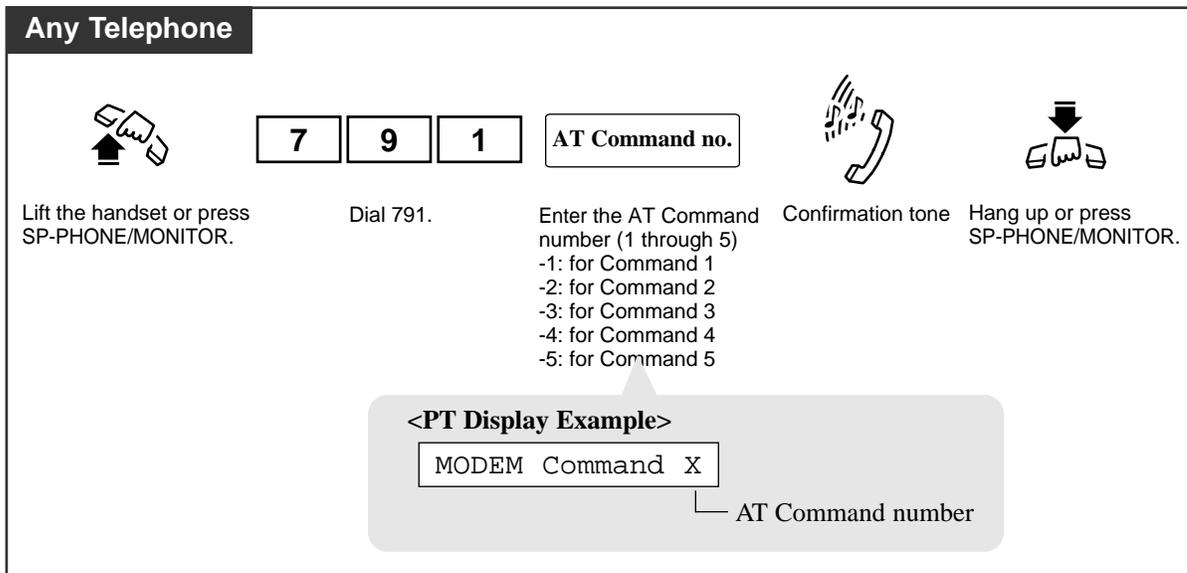
### Feature References

- Flash
- Host PBX Access (→ see Features Guide)

### External Modem Control

Allows you to control the external modem, connected to the RS-232C Port 1, by sending a pre-assigned AT Command (for enabling Automatic Answer, etc.).

#### Activating an AT Command to the RS-232C Port 1



#### Conditions

- An AT Command can only be programmed by Serial Interface/remote programming software.
- For more information about the AT Command, please refer to the modem instructions.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

#### Programming References

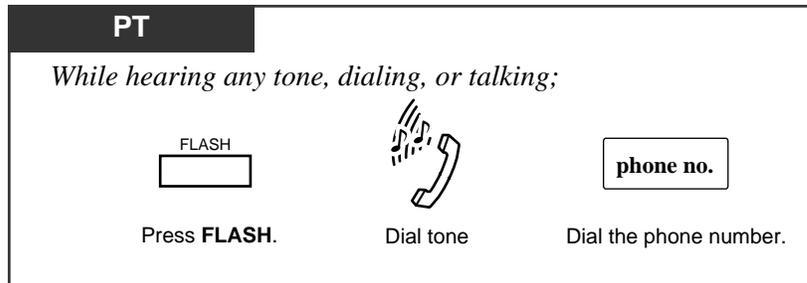
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (61) Modem Control
  - 4.10.1 Maintenance - External Modem 1/2, 2/2

#### Feature References

- External Modem Control (→ see Features Guide)
- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

### Flash

You can disconnect the current call and make another call without hanging up.



#### Conditions

- PT** • **Flash or External Feature Access**  
Pressing the FLASH button on a PT results in either sending Flash signal (External Feature Access) or disconnecting the current call (Flash). This is determined by System Programming (Section 4.2.7 System - System Option, “(3) FLASH button operation while CO talking” and “(4) FLASH button operation when “Don’t release the trunk” is selected at #3.” in the Installation Manual).
- PT** • Pressing the FLASH button re-starts the conversation duration, outputs an SMDR record and checks toll restriction level again.

#### Programming References

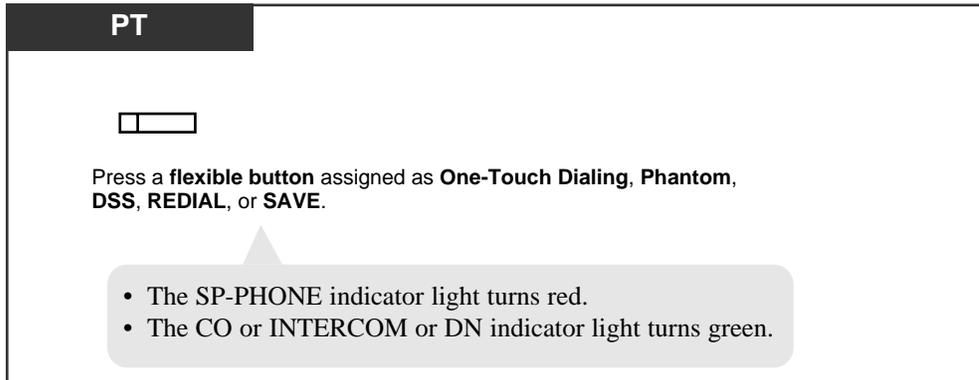
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (3) FLASH button operation while CO talking
    - (4) FLASH button operation when “Don’t release the trunk” is selected at #3.
  - 4.3.1 Group - Trunk Group
    - Disconnecting Time

#### Feature References

External Feature Access

## Full One-Touch Dialing

The hands-free speakerphone is automatically activated. You can enter a phone number or access a system feature with the touch of a button.



### Conditions

- PT** • DSS buttons on a DSS Console can also activate this feature.
- PT** • This feature must be initially assigned by Station Programming.

### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — DSS Button, One-Touch Dialing Button, SAVE Button
  - Full One-Touch Dialing Assignment
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment

### Feature References

One-Touch Dialing  
 Redial, Last Number  
 Redial, Saved Number

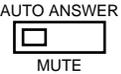
### Handset Microphone Mute

While on a handset call, you can turn off your PT's handset microphone so that you can consult privately with others in the room. When you activate Handset Microphone Mute, you can still listen to the other party's voice but he/she cannot hear your voice.

#### Setting

**PT**

*While on a handset call;*



AUTO ANSWER  
MUTE

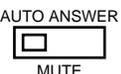
Press **AUTO ANSWER/MUTE**

- The AUTO ANSWER/MUTE indicator light flashes red slowly.

#### Canceling

**PT**

*When handset microphone mute is established;*



AUTO ANSWER  
MUTE

Press **AUTO ANSWER/MUTE**

- The AUTO ANSWER/MUTE indicator light turns off.

#### Conditions

- T7400** • If you press AUTO ANSWER/MUTE button during an OHCA call, Handset Microphone Mute mode will be turned on.
- T7400** • If you press AUTO ANSWER/MUTE button in Hands-free mode, Microphone Mute mode will be turned on.
- PT** • This feature is available for KX-T7400 series PT only.

#### Programming Reference

No programming required.

#### Feature References

Microphone Mute

### Hands-free Answerback

You can answer an intercom call without lifting the handset.

#### Setting

**PT**

When the *SP-PHONE* and the *AUTO ANSWER/MUTE* indicator are off;



Press **AUTO ANSWER/MUTE**.

- The *AUTO ANSWER/MUTE* indicator turns on.

#### Canceling

**PT**

When the *AUTO ANSWER/MUTE* indicator is on;



Press **AUTO ANSWER/MUTE**.

- The *AUTO ANSWER/MUTE* indicator turns off.

#### Conditions

- PT** • **Ring/Voice Intercom Alerting Mode Override**  
This feature overrides the “Alternate Calling — Ring/Voice” feature. A hands-free conversation mode is established as soon as a confirmation tone is sent.
- PT** • This feature does not work for the following calls:
  - Outside calls
  - Doorphone calls
  - Calls to a Ring Group
  - Calls to a Phantom button
  - Calls from a VM (Voice Mail) extension (except a call from a PT)
- PT** • This feature is not available for KX-T7250.

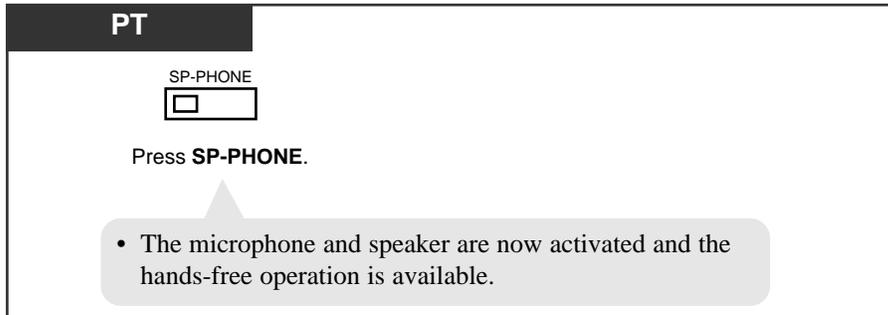
#### Feature References

Alternate Calling — Ring/Voice

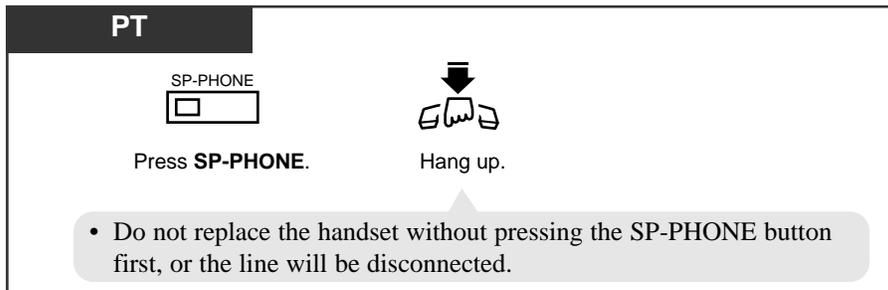
### Hands-free Operation

You can dial and talk to the other party without lifting the handset.

#### Setting



#### Switching from the handset to hands-free mode



#### Switching from hands-free to the handset mode



#### Conditions

- PT** • The hands-free mode is canceled if you do not start dialing within 10 seconds.
- PT** • The KX-T7050 and the KX-T7250 have a MONITOR button instead of an SP-PHONE button. It can be used for hands-free dialing, etc., but not for a hands-free conversation.
- PT** • You can enable hands-free mode by pressing a CO or INTERCOM or DN button without going off-hook.
- PT** • When “Full One-Touch Dialing” is enabled, pressing a One-Touch Dialing, DSS, REDIAL or SAVE button provides the hands-free mode.

#### Helpful hints

- Use this unit in a quiet room for best performance.
- If the other party has difficulty hearing you, decrease the volume.
- If you and the other party speak at the same time, parts of your conversation will be lost. To avoid this, speak alternately.

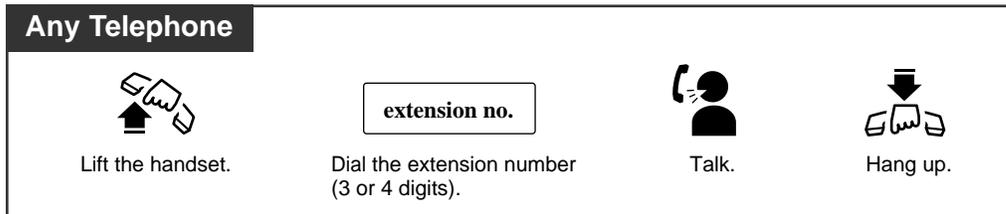
#### Feature References

Full One-Touch Dialing

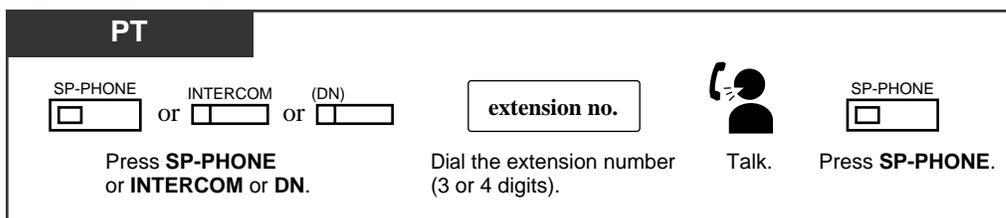
## Inter Office Calling

You can make a call to another extension user within the system or a tenant.

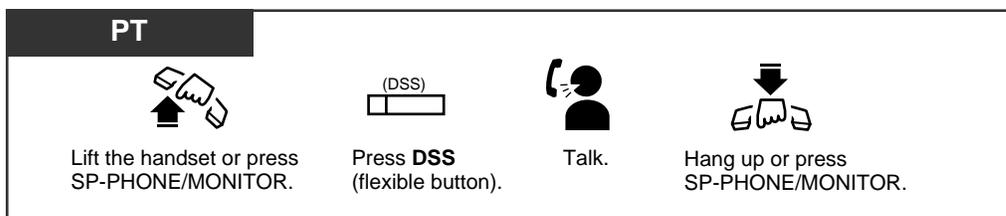
### Using the handset



### Using the Speakerphone



### Using a DSS (Direct Station Selection) button



### Conditions

- **Extension Number Assignment**

Extension numbers (3 or 4 digits) are assigned to all extensions according to “Numbering Plan” by System Programming (Installation Manual, Section 4).

- **Tenant Service**

If “Tenant Service” is employed, calling to other extensions in other tenants is enabled/disabled by System Programming.

- **Call Progress Tone**

After dialing an extension number, you will hear one of the following tones:

**Ringback tone:** Indicates the destination extension is being called.

**Confirmation tone:** Indicates you can perform voice calling (e.g. Paging).

**Busy tone:** Indicates the destination extension is busy.

**Do Not Disturb (DND) tone:** Indicates the destination extension has set the “Do Not Disturb (DND)” feature.

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# I

- PT** • **DSS Button**  
DSS buttons permit One-Touch access to an extension and provide Busy Lamp Field.
- PT** • You can assign a DSS button on a proprietary telephone (PT) or DSS Console by Station, User or System Programming.
- **Definition of extension busy status**
  - PT(ICM)** — Off-hook
  - ICM button is not idle
  - PT(DN)** — There is no idle DN buttons on a PT
  - Off-hook
  - While engaged in a call
  - SLT** — Off-hook
  - an SLT is ringing
  - an SLT has a call placed on hold
- display PT** • Extension Names can be given to all extensions by User or System Programming. An extension number and a name, if programmed, are shown on the display PT during an intercom call.
- **Call Directory - Extension Dialing**  
With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436, or KX-T7235, you can make an extension call using the “Call Directory - Extension Dialing” display operation.

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — DSS Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [004] Extension Name Set
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.1.3 Configuration - Extension Port Assignment
    - Attribute
    - Tel. Type
    - DN
    - Group No.
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - Inter - tenant Calling
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - 1st through 16th Hundred Block Extension
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Name
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS Key Assignment

### ***Feature References***

KX-T7235 Display Features – Call Directory - Extension Dialing (4.5/Special Display Features)

KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – Call Directory - Extension Dialing (4.5/Special Display Features)

## Live Call Screening (LCS)<sup>†</sup>

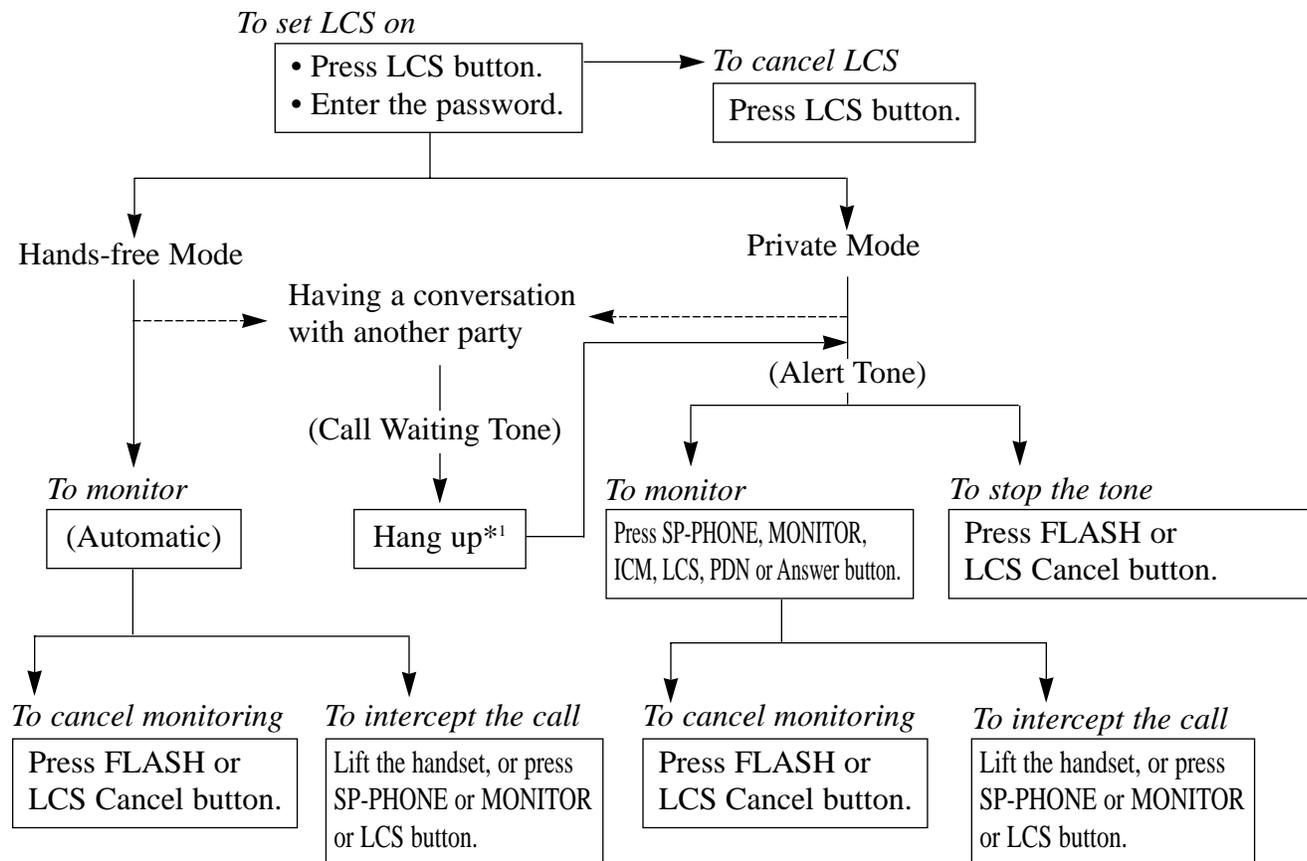
Allows a PT user to monitor his/her voice mailbox while incoming callers are leaving a message and, if desired, intercept the call.

### Flowchart of the Live Call Screening (LCS) Feature

#### Preparation

- Activating the LCS mode (System Programming)
- Assigning the LCS button (Station/System Programming)
- Selecting the mode, Hands-free or Private (Station/System Programming)
- Setting the password (Feature Number/System Programming)
- Setting the LCS feature

When using the SP-PHONE/MONITOR button in the Private Mode:

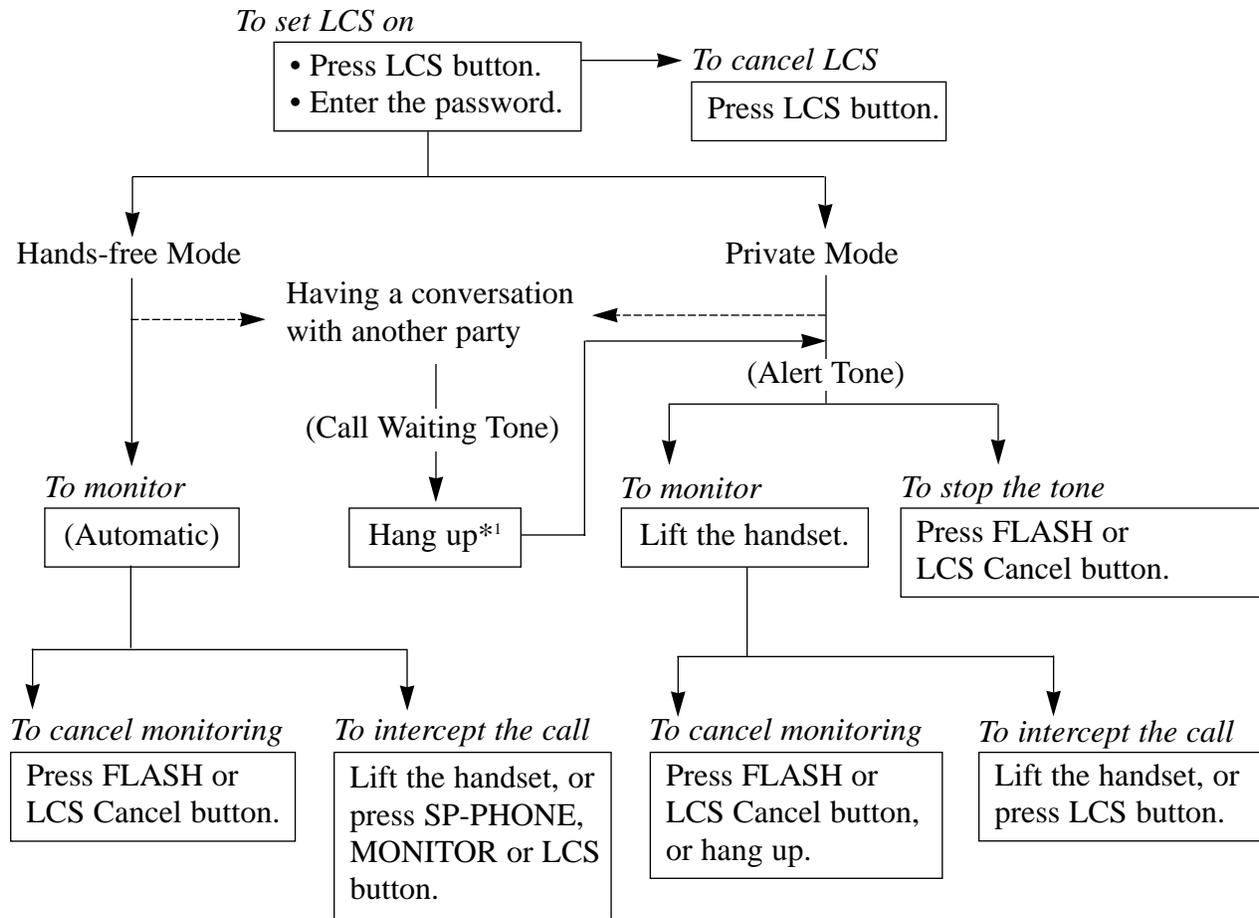


\*<sup>1</sup>: To hold the current call, press the HOLD button.

To return to the held call, press the CO button whose indicator light flashes green slowly.

<sup>†</sup>: Available when the Digital Super Hybrid System is connected to a Digital Proprietary Telephone capable Panasonic Voice Processing System (one that supports digital proprietary telephone integration; e.g. KX-TVS100).

When using the handset in the Private Mode;

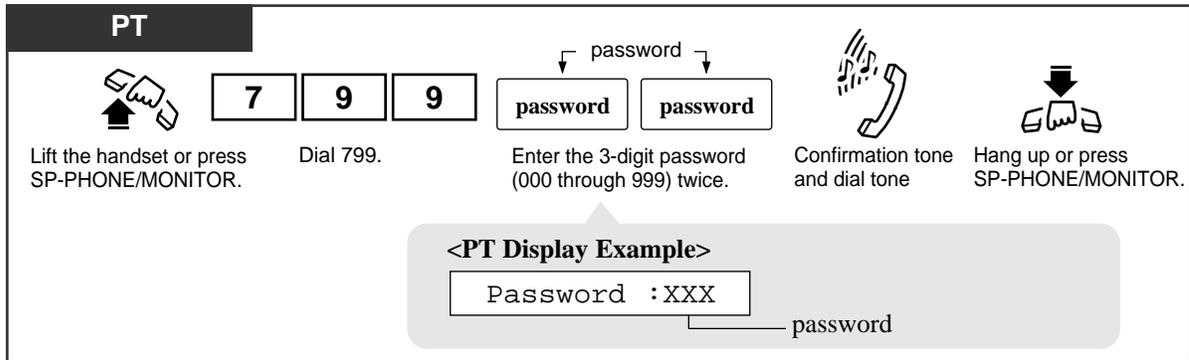


\*1: To hold the current call, press the HOLD button.

To return to the held call, press the CO button whose indicator light flashes green slowly.

# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

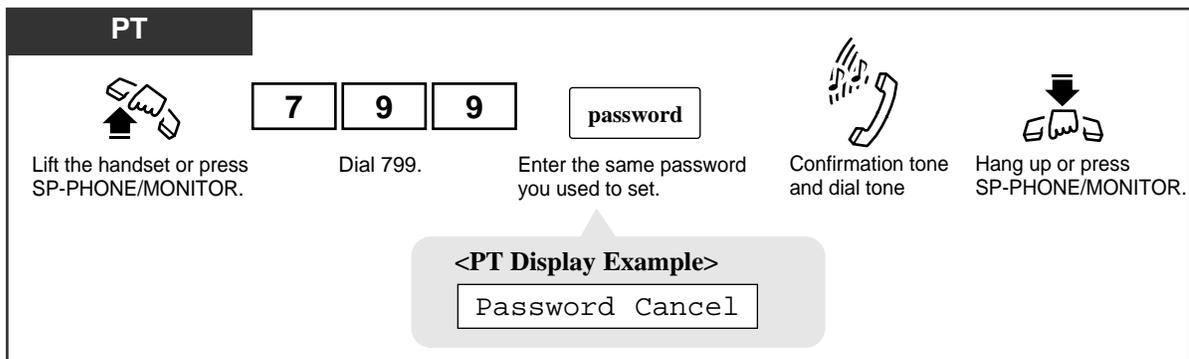
## Setting the password



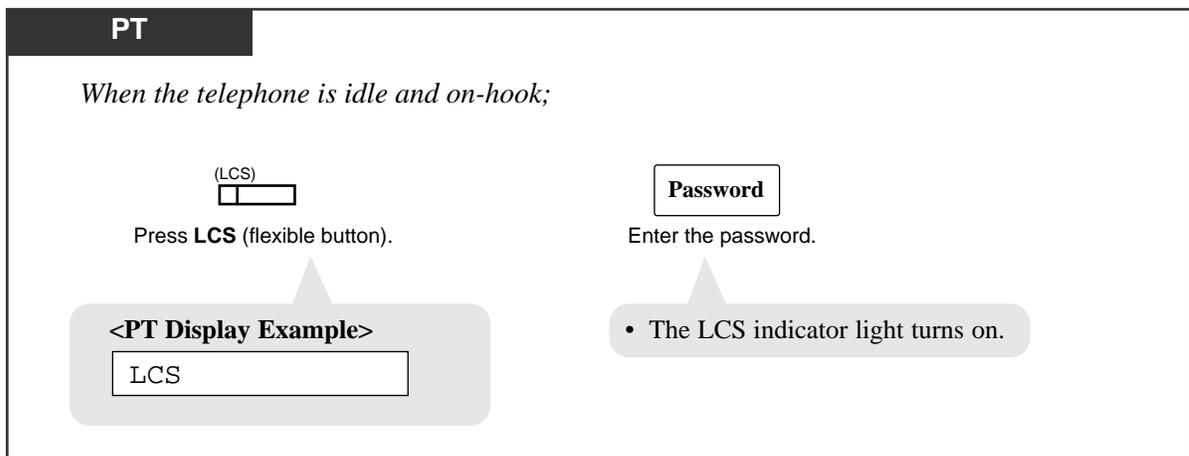
### Note:

In order to change the password, cancel the current password and then set a new password.

## Canceling the password



## Setting Live Call Screening



### Canceling Live Call Screening

**PT**

When the telephone is idle and on-hook;

(LCS)  


Press **LCS** (flexible button).

- The LCS indicator light turns off.

### In the Hands-free mode;

When callers are connected to your voice mailbox, the message recording is monitored automatically through your extension speaker. While monitoring in the Hands-free mode, the LCS indicator light flashes green slowly.

### Having a conversation with a party

**PT**

 or (LCS)  


Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR. Press **LCS** (flexible button).

- The LCS indicator light turns red from flashing green slowly.
- In Keep Recording mode, the Two-Way Record indicator turns on. Pressing the Two-Way Record button cancel the recording and the light turns off.

### Stopping the monitoring

**PT**

FLASH or (LCS Cancel)  
 or 

Press **FLASH** or **LCS Cancel** (flexible button).

- The LCS indicator light turns red from flashing green slowly.

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# L

### In the Private mode;

When callers are connected to your voice mailbox, an alarm tone is sent. The LCS indicator light flashes green rapidly when a caller is connected to your voice mailbox. (When using a single line telephone, which is connected with a proprietary telephone in parallel, you hear ringing.)

#### *Stopping the alarm tone*

**PT**

 or 

Press **FLASH**. Press **LCS Cancel** (flexible button).

- The LCS indicator light turns red from flashing green rapidly.
- The alarm tone stops.

#### *Monitoring the recording message*

**PT**

 or  or  or  or 

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR. Press the flashing **LCS** (flexible button). Press **INTERCOM**. Press **PDN**. Press **ANSWER**.

- The LCS indicator light flashes green slowly.
- To stop monitoring, lift the **handset**. The **FLASH** button or the **LCS Cancel** button can also be used to stop monitoring. The LCS indicator light turns red from flashing green slowly.

#### *Having a conversation with a party*

**PT**

 or 

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR. Press the flashing **LCS** (flexible button).

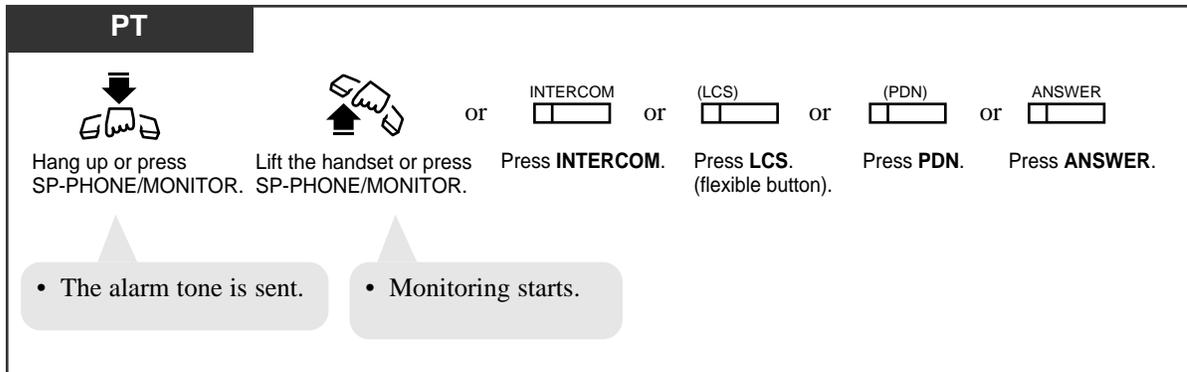
- The LCS indicator light turns red from flashing green slowly.
- In Keep Recording mode, the Two-Way Record indicator lights.

### During a conversation with another party;

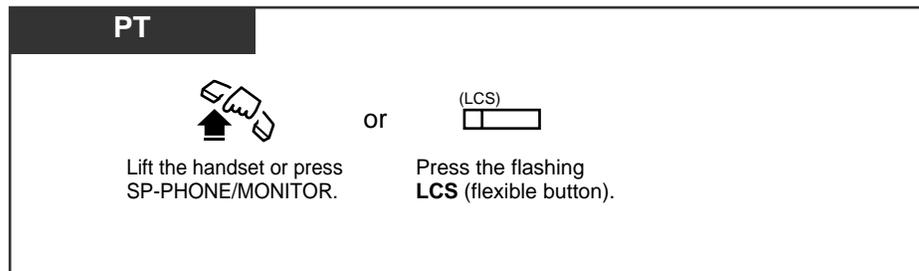
When the extension user is having a conversation, a call waiting tone is sent. The LCS indicator light flashes green rapidly.

- If you want to terminate the current call

#### Monitoring

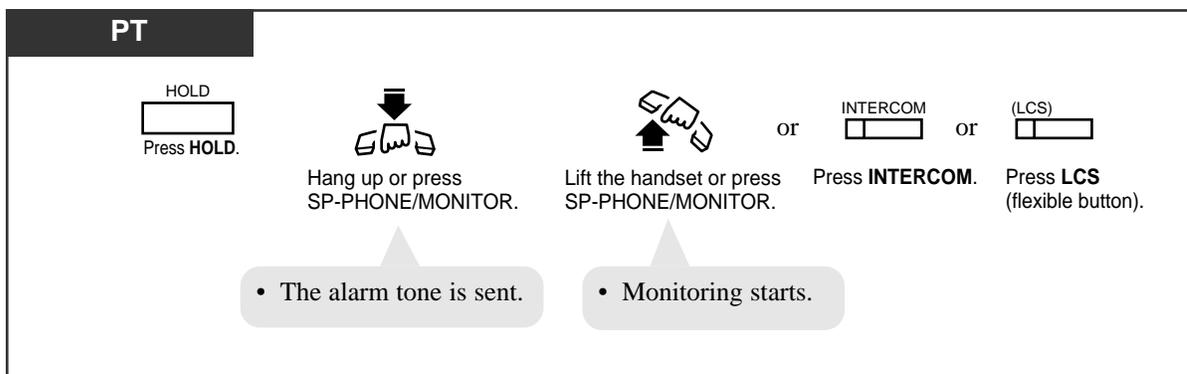


### Having a conversation with a party

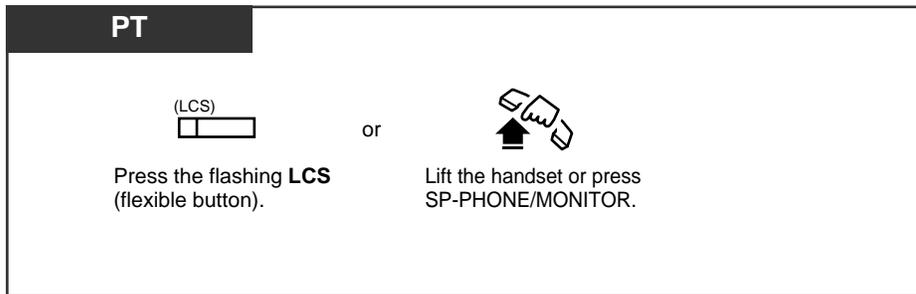


- If you want to hold the current call

#### Monitoring



## Having a conversation with the party



## Conditions

- PT** • The LCS indicator shows the feature status as follows.

  - Red (steady) .....The Live Call Screening mode is on.
  - Off .....The Live Call Screening mode is off.
  - Flashing green slowly .....Live Call Screening is acting.\*\*
  - Flashing green rapidly.....Alarm tone is ringing in the Private mode.\*\*

\*\* The LCS button which is assigned on a DSS Console (except KX-T7440 and KX-T7441) will flash in red.  
The LCS button which is assigned on the KX-T7440 or KX-T7441 will flash green slowly.
- PT** • The Two-Way Record indicator shows the feature status as follows.

  - On.....Recording the conversation
  - Off .....Not recording
- PT** • During Keep Recording mode, if you want to stop recording the conversation, press the Two-Way Recording button.
- PT** • **Call Waiting**

If the extension user is busy on a call when a caller begins to leave a message, a call waiting tone is sent (if programmed beforehand). The extension user can put the current call on hold before accessing LCS.
- PT** • **LCS button/LCS Cancel button**

A flexible CO and DSS button can be assigned as an LCS/LCS Cancel button.
- PT** • **LCS Password Clear**

To prevent unauthorized monitoring, a 3-digit password must be set by the extension user. If the user forgets their password, it can be cleared by the Manager extension or an Operator.
- PT** • **Recording Mode**

Each extension can be programmed to either stop or continue recording the conversation after intercepting the recording in order to talk with the caller.
- SLT** • **LCS by an SLT (only in the Private Mode)**

An SLT which is connected with a PT in parallel, can also be used to monitor a message being recorded. Be sure that Live Call Screening on the connected PT has been activated.

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Live Call Screening Button, Live Call Screening Cancel Button, Two-Way Record Button
  - Live Call Screening Mode Set
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (54) Live Call Screening
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment
    - LCS (Live Call Screening), LCS Cancel, Two-Way Record
    - LCS Settings
      - Status
      - Operation Mode
      - Recording Mode
      - LCS Password
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS Key Assignment
    - LCS (Live Call Screening), LCS Cancel, Two-Way Record

### *Feature References*

- Live Call Screening Password Control (4.4/Operator / Manager Service Features)

### *Lockout*

If one party in a conversation goes on-hook, they both are disconnected from the speech path automatically. A reorder tone is sent to the off-hook party before it is disconnected. No operation is necessary.

### Log-In / Log-Out

Allows members (extension users) of an **Extension Group** (except Group Type: None) and **Phantom Extensions** to join (log-in) or leave (log-out) the group. They can leave the group temporarily when they are away from their desks, to prevent calls being sent to their extension. They can return to the group when they are ready to answer a call.

The lighting patterns of the Log-In / Log-Out button and status are as follows:

**Off** : Log-In mode

**Red On**: Log-Out mode

**Red slow flash** : Calls are waiting in the UCD queue.

#### Log-In / Log-Out (Using the Log-In / Log-Out button)

PT



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.



(Log-In/Log-Out)  
Press **Log-In/Log-Out** (flexible button).



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

- The Log-In/Log-Out indicator light turns off in Log-In mode or turns steady red in Log-Out mode.

#### Log-In / Log-Out (Using the feature number)

Any Telephone



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

4	5	1	To Log-In.
4	5	0	To Log-Out.

For Log-In mode: Dial 451.  
For Log-Out mode: Dial 450.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

<PT Display Example>

Log-in

or

Log-out

### Conditions

- By default, all extensions in the group are in “Log-In” mode.
- There should be at least one extension in the extension group that is in Log-In mode.
- When extensions are logged out, calls directed to the above mentioned group do not come in on their extension.

However, calls directed to their individual extension (extension call, DIL 1:1, DIL 1:N, etc.) still ring at their extension.

- The extension user cannot leave the group (Log-Out), if at least one call is coming in on the group.

**PT** • **Log-In/Log-Out button**

The Log-In / Log-Out button can be assigned to a flexible CO button.

- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Log-In / Log-Out Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (58) Login/Logout
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment

### Feature References

STATION HUNTING (→ see Features Guide)

UCD Login Monitor

KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

### Message Waiting

Allows you to leave a message notification for another extension. The message waiting lamp (MESSAGE indicator) gives visual indication that a message notification has been received.

This feature is useful when the called extension is busy or does not answer the call. Any SLT user can set message waiting notification to other extensions (PT with MESSAGE button or SLT with Message lamp).

#### Setting

Any Telephone								
	<table border="1"><tr><td>7</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr></table>	7	0	1	<table border="1"><tr><td>extension no.</td></tr></table>	extension no.		
7	0	1						
extension no.								
Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.	Dial 701.	Dial the extension number (3 or 4 digits) where a message notification will be left.	Confirmation tone and dial tone	Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.				

PT			
<i>If the called extension is busy or does not answer;</i>			
<table border="1"><tr><td>MESSAGE</td></tr></table>	MESSAGE		
MESSAGE			
Press <b>MESSAGE</b> .	Confirmation tone and dial tone	Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.	

#### Canceling

Any Telephone								
	<table border="1"><tr><td>7</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr></table>	7	0	0	<table border="1"><tr><td>extension no.</td></tr></table>	extension no.		
7	0	0						
extension no.								
Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.	Dial 700.	Dial the extension number (3 or 4 digits) where you left a message notification.	Confirmation tone and dial tone	Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.				

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# M

### Checking and Selecting a message notification by the receiver

#### Display PT

If there is any message notification, the message waiting lamp (MESSAGE indicator) light will be on.  
When the telephone is idle and on-hook;

MESSAGE  


Press **MESSAGE** repeatedly until the desired message appears.

- The message notifications you received are shown on the display in the order they were received.

<PT Display Example>  
When Tony at extension 123 left a message notification:

123:Tony

### Calling back the message notification sender

#### PT



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.



Dial tone 4.\*

MESSAGE  


Press **MESSAGE**.



Talk.

- If there are more than one message notification left on your extension, you can choose the desired message sender (display PT only).
- The message notification is cleared after the conversation.

#### SLT with Message Lamp



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.



Dial tone 4.\*

7

0

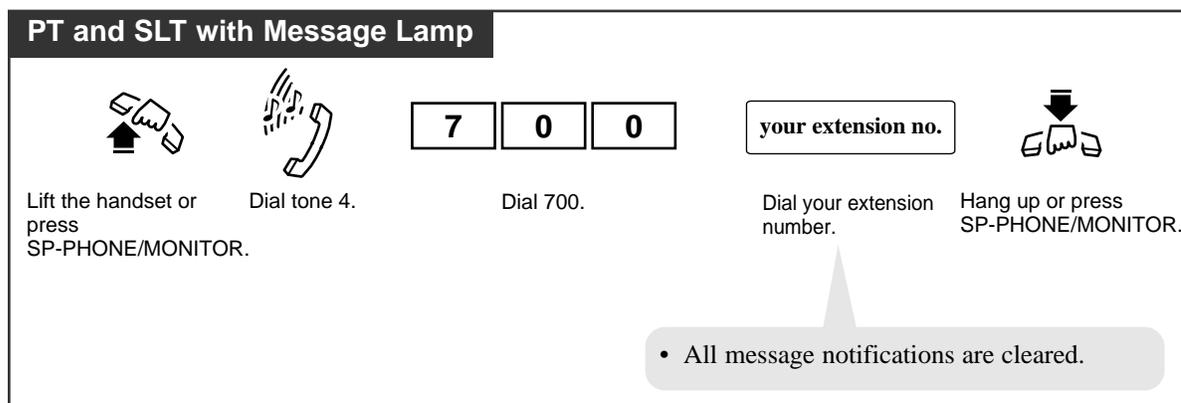
2



Talk.

- The message notification is cleared after the conversation.

\*One of the dial tones. Refer to the "Tone List" in the Appendix (Section 6).

*Clearing all message notifications left on your extension***Conditions**

- The system supports a maximum of 448 simultaneous message notifications. If you try to set the 449th message, you will hear a reorder tone.
- Call back Order**  
If multiple message notifications are left at your extension, callback is executed in the order received.
- If you select a specific message to call back, callback is executed in the order received, starting with the one selected.
- Hardware Requirements**  
To utilize the SLTs with Message Lamp, an MSLC card (KX-T96175) or an ESLC card (KX-TD50175) is required.
- Turning off the light**  
Either the message sender or the receiver can turn off the light.
- Messages are always left on the first called extension. It is not sent to a Call Forwarding or Station Hunting destination.
- PT MESSAGE button**  
If a MESSAGE button is not provided on a PT, a flexible CO/DSS button can be assigned as the MESSAGE button by Station, User or System Programming.
- PT VPS Integration**  
If VPS Integration is employed, a VM extension informs an extension that a message is left in his/her mailbox by turning on the MESSAGE lamp.  
The extension user can listen to the message in the mailbox simply by pressing the red lit MESSAGE lamp.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can set or cancel this feature using the display operation.
- Distinctive Dial Tone**  
Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Message Waiting (MESSAGE) Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (40) Message Waiting Set/Cancel/Call Back
  - 4.2.7 System - Option
    - (27) Message Waiting Lamp Pattern
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment
    - Message Lamp
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS Key Assignment
  - 4.5.9 Features - VPS Integration 2/2
    - Turn off control of Message Waiting Lamp

### *Feature References*

- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

### Microphone Mute

During a conversation in the hands-free mode, you can turn off your PT's microphone so that you can consult privately with others in the room. When you activate Microphone Mute, you can still listen to your caller's voice but your caller cannot hear your voice.

#### Setting

**PT**

*During a conversation in the hands-free mode;*

AUTO ANSWER  
  
MUTE

Press **AUTO ANSWER/MUTE**.

- The AUTO ANSWER/MUTE indicator light flashes red slowly.

#### Canceling

**PT**

*When microphone mute is established;*

AUTO ANSWER  
  
MUTE

Press **AUTO ANSWER/MUTE**.

- The AUTO ANSWER/MUTE indicator light turns off.

#### Conditions

- This feature is only available during a hands-free conversation.
- This feature is not available for KX-T7050, KX-T7055 and KX-T7250.

#### Programming References

No programming required.

#### Feature References

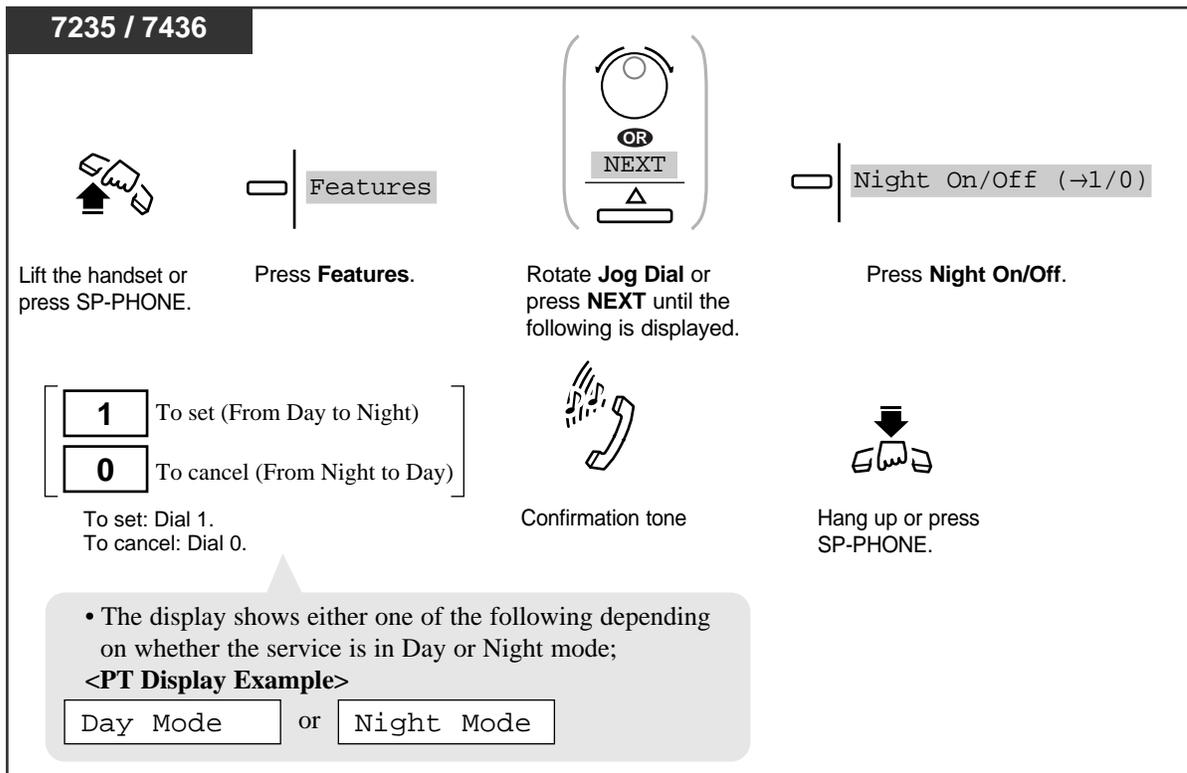
None

## Night Service On/Off

Allows you to turn on/off the night service mode.

The KX-TD500 System supports both the Night and Day modes of operation in a different arrangement. The system operation for originating and receiving calls can be programmed differently in Day and Night modes. Toll restriction calls can be programmed to prevent unauthorized toll calls at night.

### Switching Day/Night mode (Display operation)



### Switching Day/Night mode (Display operation)

7431



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **MODE** until "Feature Access" is displayed.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "Night Mode" is displayed.



Press **SELECT**.

1	To set (From Day to Night)
0	To cancel (From Night to Day)

To set: Dial 1.  
To cancel: Dial 0.



Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

• The display shows either one of the following depending on whether the service is in Day or Night mode;  
<PT Display Example>

Day Mode

or

Night Mode

### Switching Day/Night mode (Display operation)

7433



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **SHIFT** until "FEAT" is displayed.



Press **FEAT**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "Night Mode" is at the arrow.



Press **SEL**.

1	To set (From Day to Night)
0	To cancel (From Night to Day)

To set: Dial 1.  
To cancel: Dial 0.



Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

• The display shows either one of the following depending on whether the service is in Day or Night mode;  
<PT Display Example>

Day Mode

or

Night Mode

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

### Switching Day/Night mode (DAY/NIGHT button operation)

PT



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.



Press DAY/NIGHT (flexible button).



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

- The status of DAY/NIGHT indicator.

Day mode	Off
Night mode	On (Red)

**<PT Display Example>**

Day Mode

or

Night Mode

### Switching Day/Night modes (Feature number operation)

Any Telephone



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7

8

Dial 78.

1

To set (From Day to Night).

0

To cancel (From Night to Day).



Confirmation tone

- The display shows either one of the following depending on whether the service is in Day or Night mode;

**<PT Display Example>**

Day Mode

or

Night Mode

Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

### Confirming the current mode

Display PT

When the telephone is idle;

#

Press #.

- The display shows the current mode for three seconds.

### Conditions

- **Class of Service**  
Class of Service programming determines the extensions that can perform this feature.
- By System Programming, you can select either automatic Day/Night mode switching or manual Day/Night mode switching. In the automatic case, the default start time for Day mode is 9:00 a.m. every day and the default start time for Night mode is 5:00 p.m. every night.
- Any extension user (with display PT) can confirm the current mode, Day or Night.
- The following programming items can be assigned in a different way between day mode and night mode. Refer to Section 4 “System Programming” in the Installation Manual for detailed information on these programming items.

- 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
  - TRS Level, Day/Night
  - Trunk Group Setting, Day/Night
- 4.3.1 Group - Trunk Group
  - Intercept Destination, Day/Night
- 4.3.2 Group - Extension Group
  - Overflow Setting
  - Destination, Day/Night
- 4.4.1 Line - Trunk Line
  - Destination, Day/Night
- 4.4.4 Line - Doorphone
  - Destination, Day/Night
- 4.9.1 DID - Dial Registration
  - Destination, Day/Night

### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - DAY/NIGHT Switching Mode
    - Day 1/2, Night 1/2
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (51) Night Mode, Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Switching Day/Night Mode

### Feature References

- Direct In Lines (DIL) (→ see Features Guide)
- Doorphone Call
- Intercept Routing (→ see Features Guide)
- Toll Restriction (→ see Features Guide)
- Trunk Connection Assignment — Outgoing (→ see Features Guide)

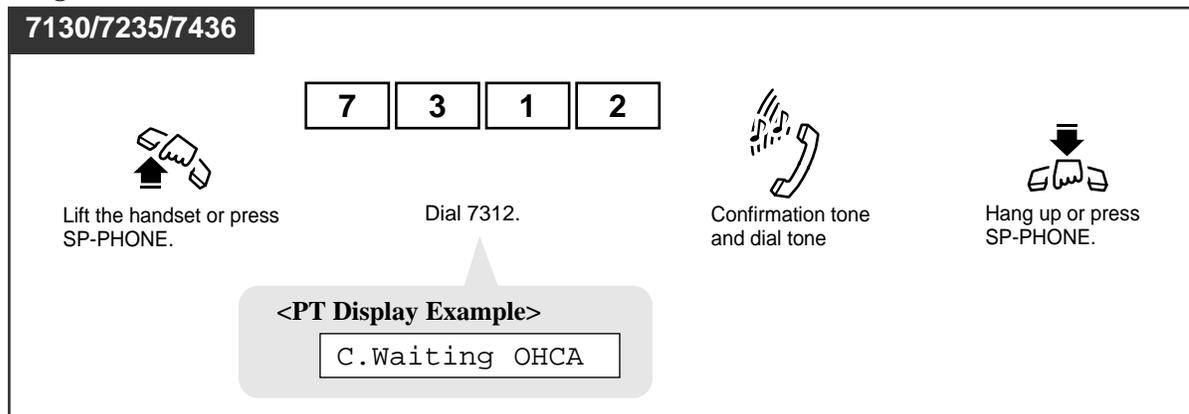
## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# O

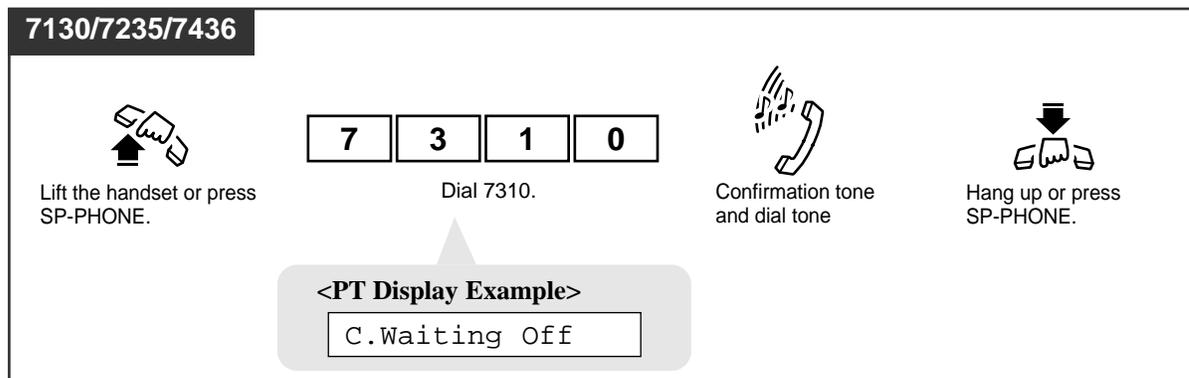
### Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA)

Allows you to signal a busy extension on a handset call that your call is waiting. Your voice is heard through the built-in speaker of the called party's PT (KX-T7130, KX-T7235 or KX-T7436). The called extension user can select to talk to you or their initial caller.

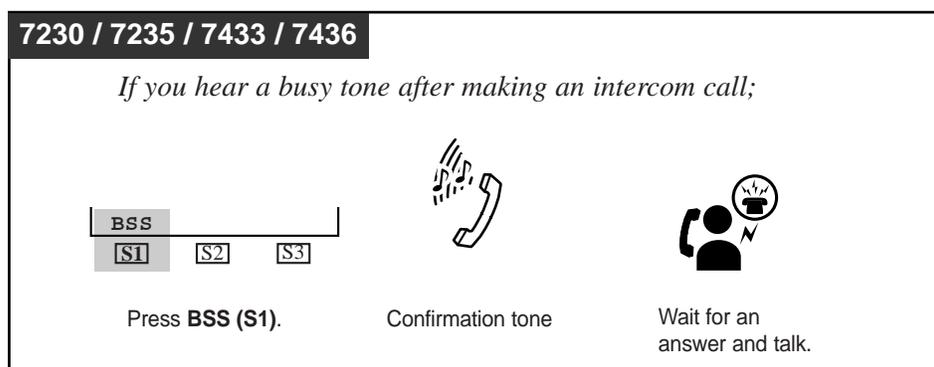
#### Setting



#### Canceling



#### Executing



### Executing

**Any Telephone**

*If you hear a busy tone after making an intercom call;*

1

Dial 1.



Confirmation tone



Wait for an answer and talk.

### To talk to the third party

**7130 / 7235 / 7436**

*If OHCA is activated by the other party when you are engaged in a call using the handset, you hear a confirmation tone and then the caller's voice through the built-in speaker of your PT.*



Speak with the third party through microphone.

- The caller's number or name is shown on the display for five seconds in 10 seconds intervals.

**<PT Display Example>**

123: Tony

————— Caller's extension number

- You can talk to two parties individually.

### To talk to the third party by terminating the current call in hands-free mode

**7130 / 7235 / 7436**

*If OHCA is activated by the other party when you are engaged in a call using the handset, you hear a confirmation tone and then the caller's voice through the built-in speaker of your PT.*



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

or

FLASH

Press FLASH.



Speak with the third party through microphone.

- The current call is disconnected.
- The INTERCOM indicator light turns green.

- You can talk in hands-free mode.

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

O

To talk to the third party by terminating the current call in handset mode

**7130/7235/7436**

If OHCA is activated by the other party when you are engaged in a call using the handset, you hear a confirmation tone and then the caller's voice through the built-in speaker of your PT.

INTERCOM



Press INTERCOM.

or

FLASH



Press FLASH.



Talk.

- The current call is disconnected.
- The INTERCOM indicator light turns green.
- You can talk in handset mode.

To talk to the third party after placing the current call on hold

**7130/7235/7436**

If OHCA is activated by the other party when you are engaged in a call using the handset, you hear a confirmation tone and then the caller's voice through the built-in speaker of your PT.

HOLD



Press HOLD.



Talk.

- The current call is placed on hold.
- The INTERCOM indicator light flashes green slowly.

### Conditions

- **BSS / OHCA / Whisper OHCA**

If an extension user dials "1" while hearing a busy tone, BSS or OHCA or Whisper OHCA will be activated at the called extension.

This is determined by the following conditions.

Calling extension	Called extension			
	Call Waiting setting			
	OFF	ON		
COS-OHCA assignment	0	1	2	3
Disable	————	BSS	BSS	BSS
Enable	————	BSS	OHCA <sup>*1</sup> →BSS	W-OHCA <sup>*2</sup> →OHCA→BSS

<sup>\*1</sup>: OHCA (Off-Hook Call Announcement) is activated when the called extension is KX-T7130, KX-T7235 or KX-T7436.

<sup>\*2</sup>: Whisper OHCA is activated when both calling and called extensions are using one of the KX-T7400 series PT.

- If “Do Not Disturb (DND)” feature is set at the called extension, you hear DND tone. In this case, to execute OHCA, you must first activate “Do Not Disturb (DND) Override” feature before OHCA is available.

- **Call Waiting**

This feature is only effective if the called extension has set “Call Waiting” feature. If not, you will hear a reorder tone after dialing 1.

PT(ICM)

- This feature works when the other extension is in off-hook status and the INTERCOM button is idle/lit in green.

PT(DN)

- BSS, OHCA and Whisper OHCA do not function at a DN type PT.

- **Distinctive Dial Tone**

Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (45) Call Waiting Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA)

### *Feature References*

Busy Station Signaling (BSS)

Call Waiting

Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA), Whisper

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# O

### Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA) –Whisper

This is a version of the OHCA feature. The difference is, OHCA provides two-way communication between two extensions but this feature provides one-way communication. When this feature is activated, the called party can hear caller's voice through the handset but the caller cannot hear the called party's voice.

By default, this feature is available only when both calling and called extensions are using KX-T7400 series PTs.

#### Setting

**7420/7425/7433/7436**

 Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

**7 3 1 3**  
Dial 7313.

 Confirmation tone and dial tone

 Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**  
C.Waiting W-OHCA

#### Canceling

**7420/7425/7433/7436**

 Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

**7 3 1 0**  
Dial 7310.

 Confirmation tone and dial tone

 Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**  
C.Waiting Off

#### Executing

**7433/ 7436**

*If you hear a busy tone after making an intercom call;*

**BSS**  
**S1 S2 S3**  
Press **BSS (S1)**.

 Confirmation tone

 Wait for an answer and talk.

### Executing

**7420/ 7425/ 7431/ 7433 / 7436**

*If you hear a busy tone after making an intercom call;*



Dial 1.



Confirmation tone



Wait for an answer and talk.

### Receiving a voice announcement

**7420/ 7425/ 7431/ 7433/ 7436**

*If Whisper OHCA is activated by the other party when you are engaged in a call, you hear a confirmation tone. Then you will be engaged in both calls with the current caller (two-way) and the third party (one-way).*

**<PT Display Example>**  
 The caller's extension number or name is shown on the display for five seconds in 10 seconds intervals.

123 : Tony

— Caller's extension number

### To talk to the third party by terminating the current call in hands-free mode

**7420 / 7425 / 7431 / 7433 / 7436**

*If Whisper OHCA is activated by the other party when you are engaged in a call, you hear a confirmation tone. Then you will be engaged in both calls with the current caller (two-way) and the third party (one-way).*



Hang up.

- The current call is disconnected.
- The INTERCOM indicator light turns green.



Speak with the third party through microphone.

- You can talk in hands-free mode.

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# O

To talk to the third party by terminating the current call in handset mode

**7420 / 7425 / 7431 / 7433 / 7436**

If Whisper OHCA is activated by the other party when you are engaged in a call, you hear a confirmation tone. Then you will be engaged in both calls with the current caller (two-way) and the third party (one-way).

 or 

Press INTERCOM.      Press FLASH.

 Talk.

- The current call is disconnected.
- The INTERCOM indicator light turns green.

- You can talk in handset mode.

To talk to the third party after placing the current call on hold

**7420 / 7425 / 7431 / 7433 / 7436**

If Whisper OHCA is activated by the other party when you are engaged in a call, you hear a confirmation tone. Then you will be engaged in both calls with the current caller (two-way) and the third party (one-way).



Press HOLD.

 Talk.

- The current call is placed on hold.
- The INTERCOM indicator light flashes green slowly.

### Conditions

- This feature can be enabled to any PTs (other than KX-T7400 series PT) by System Programming.
  - If the Whisper OHCA sender does not use a KX-T7400 series telephone, Whisper OHCA works as OHCA. If the receiver does not use a KX-T7400 series telephone, Whisper OHCA may not work properly. (e.g.the announcement may be heard by the other party.)
- PT(DN)** • BSS, OHCA and Whisper OHCA do not function at a DN type PT.

Other conditions are the same as that of “Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA).”

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (45) Call Waiting Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA)
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (32) Whisper OHCA to extensions other than T74XX

### *Feature References*

Busy Station Signaling (BSS)  
Call Waiting  
Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA)

### Off-Hook Monitor

While you are on a handset call, your call can be monitored by the others in the room through SP-PHONE.

#### Setting

**PT**

While on a handset call;

SP-PHONE  


Press **SP-PHONE**.

- The SP-PHONE indicator light turns red.
- Your handset call is heard through the SP-PHONE.

#### Switching from off-hook monitor to handset call

**PT**

While in the off-hook monitor mode;

SP-PHONE  


Press **SP-PHONE**.

- The SP-PHONE indicator light turns off.
- Off-hook monitor mode is canceled and handset call mode is re-established.

#### Switching from off-hook monitor to hands-free mode

**PT**

While in the off-hook monitor mode;

  
Hang up.

- Off-hook monitor mode is canceled and hands-free mode is established.

### *Conditions*

- This feature is available for KX-T7400 series PT only.
- If the SP-PHONE button is pressed during a handset call, either Off-Hook Monitor or SP-PHONE mode (hands-free mode) will be established. This is determined by System Programming (Section 4.2.7 System - System Option, (20) Off-hook Monitor” in the Installation Manual).
- Making an OHCA call is not available if the other extension is in Off-Hook Monitor mode.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.2.7 System - System Option  
— (20) Off-hook Monitor

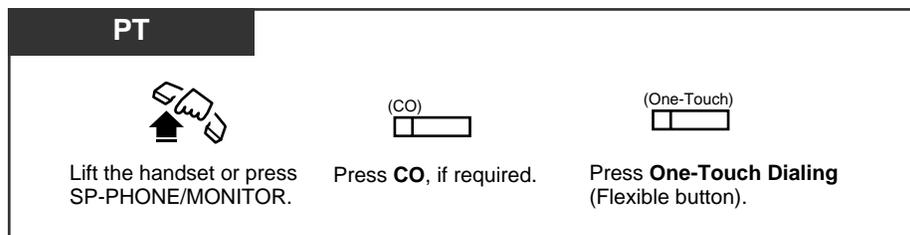
### *Feature References*

Hands-free Operation

### One-Touch Dialing

Allows you to make a call (intercom or outside) or access a system feature with the touch of a button. This is done by storing an extension number, telephone number or feature number (up to 16 digits) in a One-Touch Dialing button.

#### Dialing



#### Conditions

- PT** • One-Touch Dialing button can be programmed by Station, User or System Programming.
- PT** • If you store the telephone number of an outside party, a line access code (9, or 801 through 848) must be stored as the leading digit.
- PT** • You may press a CO button to select a desired CO line directly before pressing the One-Touch Dialing button.
- PT** • **Combination dialing**  
Speed Dialing, One-Touch Dialing, manual dialing, Last Number Redial and Saved Number Redial can be used in a combination.
- PT** • **Storing more than 17 digits number**  
It is possible to store a number consisting of 17 digits or more by dividing it and storing it in two One-Touch Dialing buttons. In this case, a CO line access code should be stored in the first button.
- PT** • **Full One-Touch Dialing**  
If "Full One-Touch Dialing" is enabled, press the One-Touch Dialing button directly without going off-hook.

#### Programming References

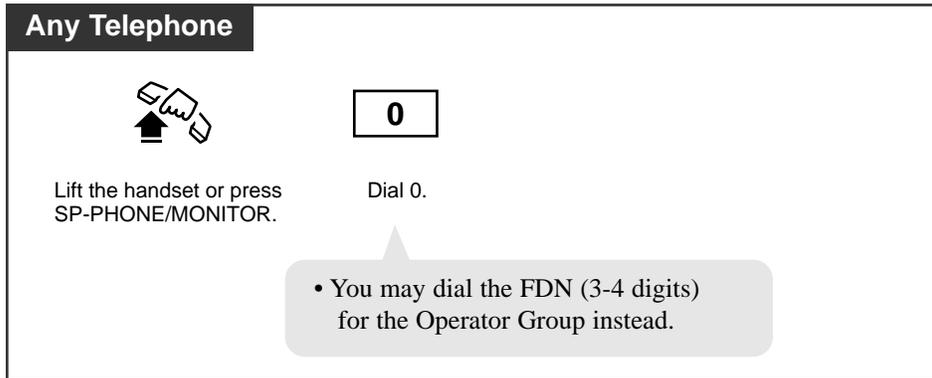
- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — One Touch Dialing Button
  - Full One-Touch Dialing Assignment
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment

#### Feature References

Full One-Touch Dialing

## *Operator Call*

Allows you to call an operator within the system.



### *Conditions*

- If no operator is assigned, this feature is not available and you will hear a reorder tone after dialing the feature number.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (17) Operator Call
  - 4.3.2 Group - Extension Group
    - FDN
    - Group Type:Operator
    - Tenant No.
    - Overflow Setting
      - Destination, Day/Night
      - Timer (0-60 min)
    - Operator Setting
      - Ringing Type
      - Call Priority

### *Feature References*

Extension Group – Operator Group (→see Features Guide)

### Outward Dialing, Trunk Access — SUMMARY

A CO line can be accessed in the following ways.

<PT users>

<b>Trunk Access, Idle</b>	Dial the <b>feature number (9)</b> . or Press a <b>Loop-CO (L-CO)</b> button
<b>Trunk Access, Trunk Group</b>	Dial the <b>feature number (8)</b> and a <b>trunk group number (01-48)</b> . or Press a <b>Group-CO (G-CO)</b> button.
<b>Trunk Access, Individual Trunk</b>	Press a <b>Single-CO (S-CO)</b> button.

<SLT users>

<b>Trunk Access, Idle</b>	Dial the <b>feature number (9)</b> .
<b>Trunk Access, Trunk Group</b>	Dial the <b>feature number (8)</b> and a <b>trunk group number (01-48)</b> .

#### Conditions

- The CO button assignment on your telephone can be re-arranged as required. Refer to “Flexible Button Assignment” in Station Programming (Section 2).
- After dialing the feature number or pressing the CO button, you will hear one of the following tones:

**Dial tone:** Indicates an idle CO line is accessed.

xxxxxx — is shown on the display.  
(xxxxxx: trunk port physical number)

**Busy tone:** Indicates the selected CO line is busy.

CO in use — is shown on the display.

**Reorder tone:**

- 1) Indicates the CO line you have attempted to access is not assigned.

CO Not Assigned — is shown on the display.

- 2) Indicates access to CO lines is denied.

Restricted — is shown on the display.

- Restricted may show on the display for the following reasons.
  - The extension has been locked by the owner (Electronic Station Lockout) or the operator / manager (Remote Station Lock Control).
  - The extension is restricted by the account code mode, “Verified - All Calls” or “Verified - Toll Restriction Override.”
  - The extension is restricted from making toll calls (Toll Restriction).

### ***Programming References***

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Loop-CO (L-CO) Button, Group CO (G-CO) Button, Single-CO (S-CO) Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - Automatic Route Selection
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (18) Local CO Line Access / ARS
    - (19) Trunk Group Access
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Trunk Group Setting
  - 4.2.5 System - Local Hunt Sequence
  - 4.3.1 Group - Trunk Group
    - Line Hunting Order
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment

### ***Feature References***

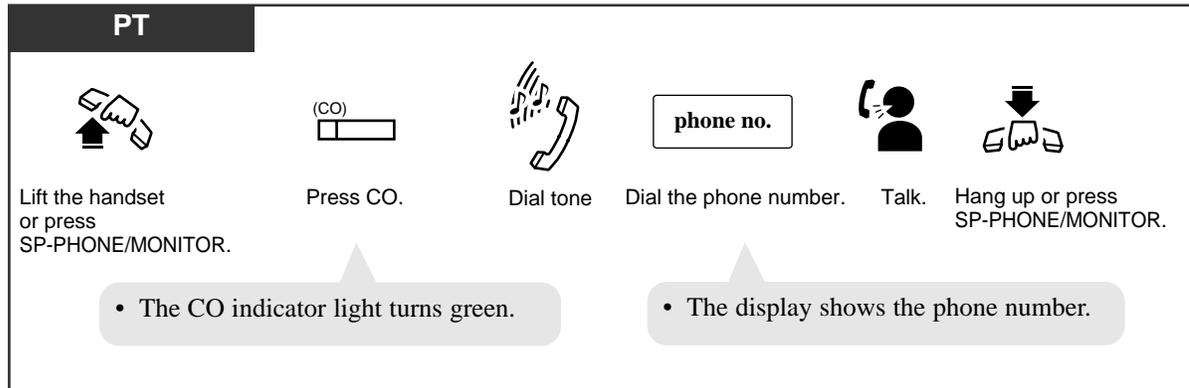
Account Code Entry  
Electronic Station Lockout  
Remote Station Lock Control (4.4/Operator / Manager Service Features)  
Toll Restriction (→ see Features Guide)

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

O

### Trunk Access, Direct

You can get an idle CO line for making a call by simply pressing a CO button (Single-CO, Group-CO or Loop-CO) directly.

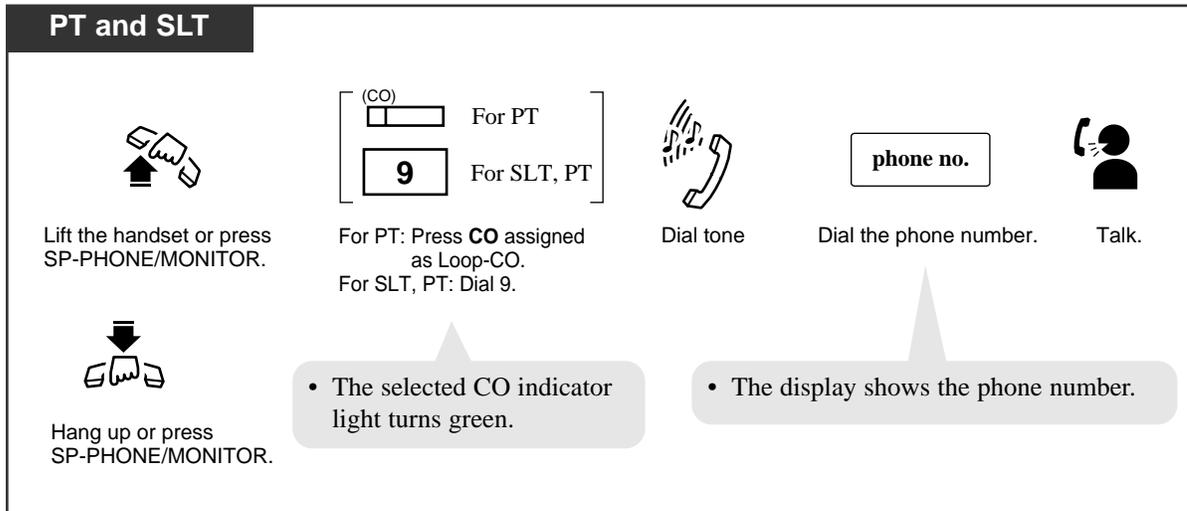


#### Conditions

- PT** • You may press the CO button directly without first going off-hook.

### Trunk Access, Idle

You can get an idle CO line for making a call simply by dialing “9.”

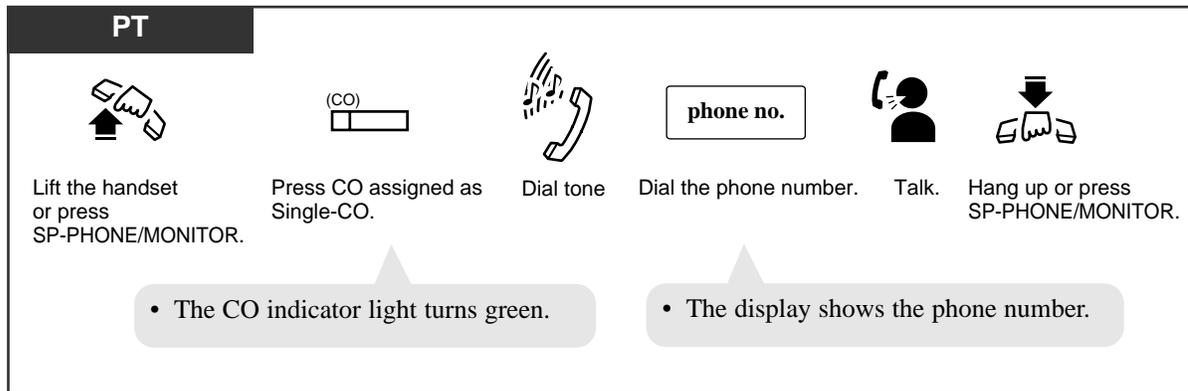


## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

0

### Trunk Access, Individual Trunk

Allows you to select the desired CO line without dialing the line access code.

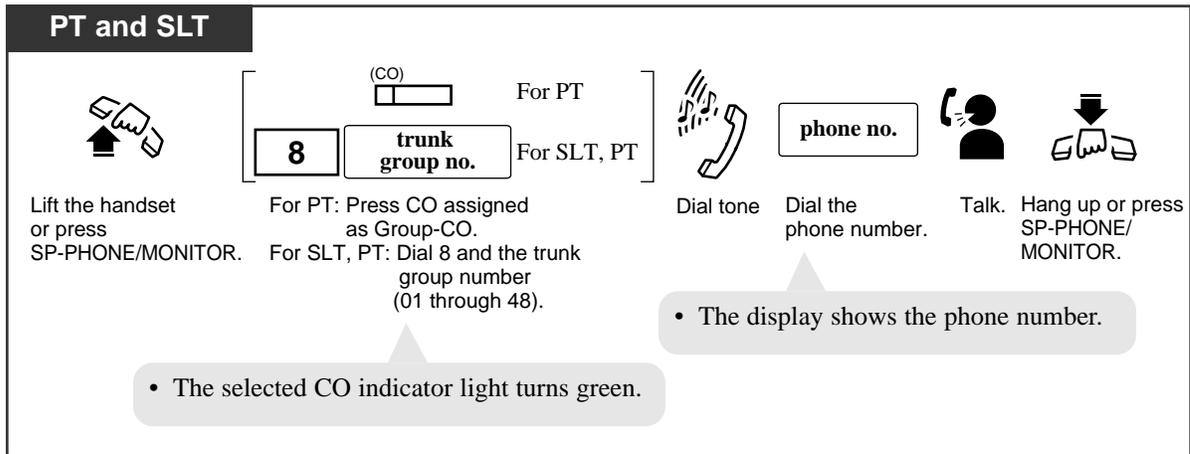


#### Conditions

- PT** • You may press the CO button directly without first going off-hook.

### Trunk Access, Trunk Group

Allows you to select an idle CO line within a designated trunk group. Through programming, CO lines can be divided into 48 trunk groups.



### Paging — SUMMARY

Allows you to make a voice announcement to several people at the same time. Your message is announced over the built-in speakers of proprietary telephones (PT) and/or external speakers (External Pagers). The paged person can answer your page from a nearby telephone. There are three types of paging as shown below. You can select the appropriate type according to your needs.

Type	Description
Paging — All	Paging through both the built-in speakers of PTs and external pagers.
Paging — External	Paging through all of the external pagers simultaneously.
	Paging to a specific external pager.
Paging — Group	Paging to all paging groups simultaneously.
	Paging to a particular group of extensions through the built-in speakers of PTs.

#### Conditions

- To deny receiving the page, refer to “Paging — DENY.”
- To answer the page, refer to “Paging — ANSWER.”
- The paged extension users hear a confirmation tone before the voice announcement.
- A confirmation tone from external pagers (External Paging Tone) is audible at the paged side, before the voice announcement.
- A confirmation tone is sent to extension before making the voice announcement. Eliminating the tone is programmable by System Programming.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

#### Feature References

Paging — ANSWER

KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

### Paging — All

Allows you to make a voice announcement to all extensions. Your message is announced over the built-in speakers of the proprietary telephones (PT) and external pagers.

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset  
or press  
SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

3	2	*
---	---	---

Dial 32\*.



Confirmation tone  
(Optional)



Announce.



Wait for  
an answer.



Talk.

<PT Display Example>

All Call Page

- You may dial “33\*” instead.

### Conditions

- To page extensions, extensions must belong to some extension group(s), and this / these extension group(s) must belong to some paging group(s).

### Programming References

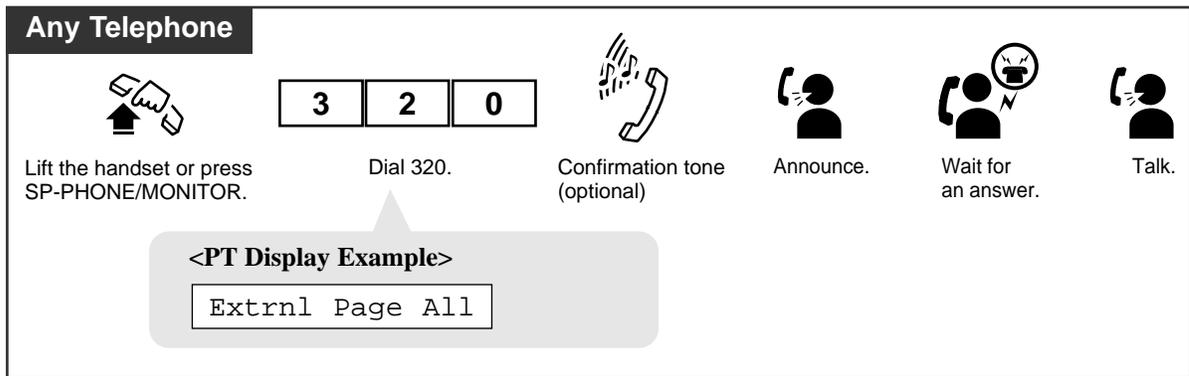
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - External Paging Tone
    - Confirmation Tone Station or External Paging
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (24) External Paging
    - (26) Station Paging
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (9) Confirmation Tone for Call Pickup, Paging-Answer, TAFAS-Answer, Hold Retrieve and Call Park Retrieve
  - 4.3.3 Group - Paging Group
    - Paging Group No.
    - Extension Group No.

# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

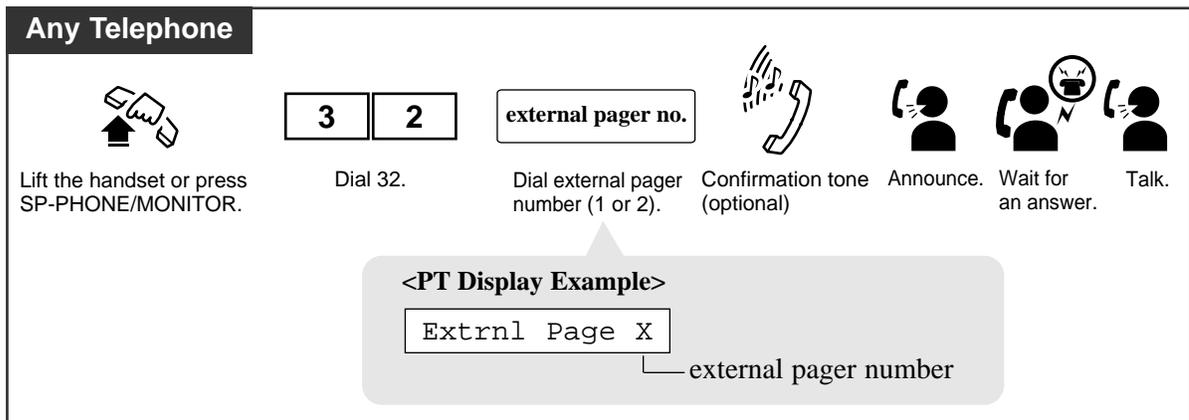
## Paging — External

Allows you to make a voice announcement over external pagers.

### To access all external pagers



### To access a particular pager



### *Conditions*

- If the designated pager is in use, a busy tone is heard.
- The paging priorities are as follows:
  - 1) TAFAS (Trunk Answer From Any Station)
  - 2) Paging — External
  - 3) Background Music (BGM) — External

If a higher priority page is requested when a lower priority page is active, the higher priority overrides the lower one.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - External Paging Tone
    - Confirmation Tone Station or External Paging
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (24) External Paging
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (9) Confirmation Tone for Call Pickup, Paging-Answer, TAFAS Answer, Hold Retrieve and Call Park Retrieve

### *Feature References*

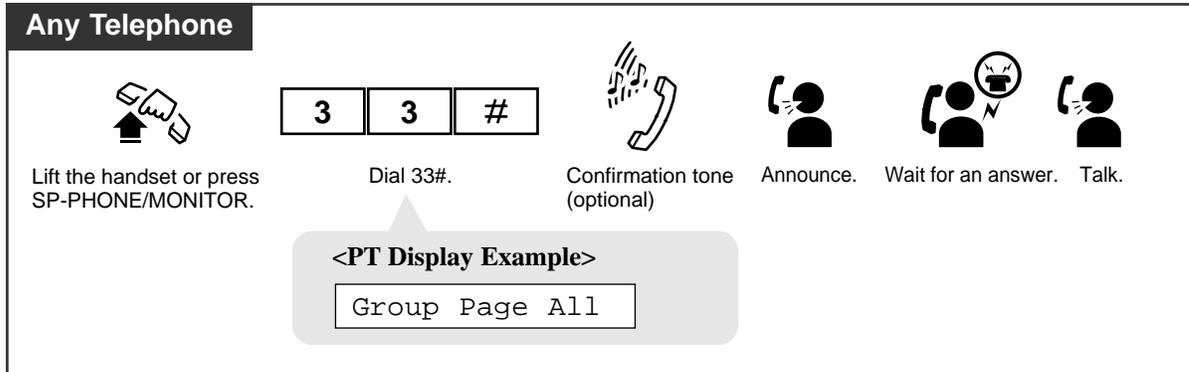
Background Music (BGM) — External (4.4/Operator / Manager Service Features)  
Trunk Answer From Any Station (TAFAS)

# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

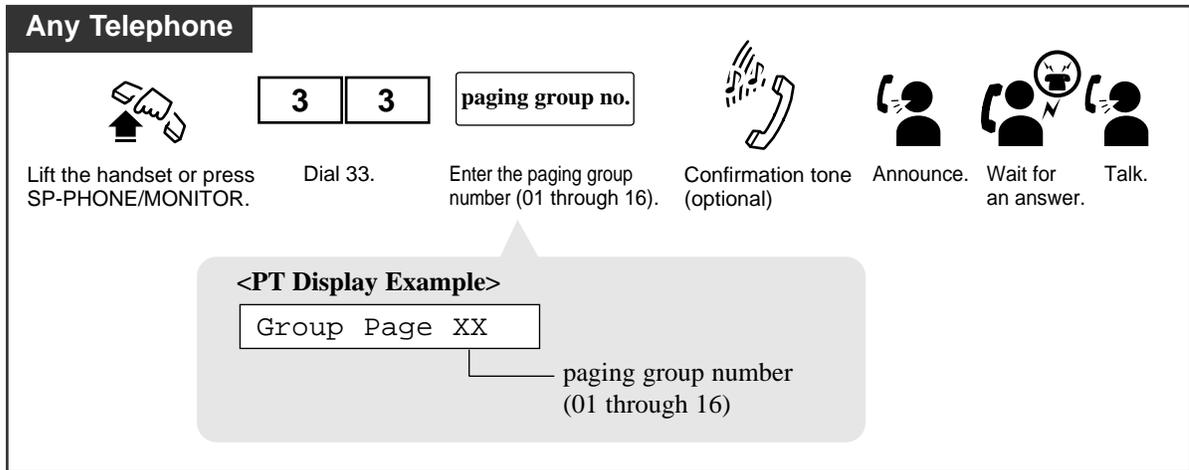
## Paging — Group

You can make a paging announcement by selecting a particular paging group.  
You can select a maximum of 16 paging groups simultaneously.  
The announcement can only be heard through the built-in speakers of PTs.

### To access all paging groups (01-16) simultaneously



### To access a particular paging group



### *Conditions*

- Up to 16 Paging Groups, each consisting of up to 24 Extension Groups, can be created in the system by System Programming.
- An Extension Group cannot belong to two or more Paging Groups at a time.
- “Paging — Group” to different paging groups can be performed simultaneously.
- The “Paging — Group” feature overrides Do Not Disturb (DND) at an extension.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming – Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - Confirmation Tone for Station or External Paging
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (26) Station Paging (Group 01-16)
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (9) Confirmation Tone for Call Pickup, Paging-Answer, TAFAS-Answer, Hold Retrieve and Call Park Retrieve
  - 4.3.3 Group - Paging Group
    - Paging Group No.
    - Extension Group No.

### *Feature References*

Paging Deny

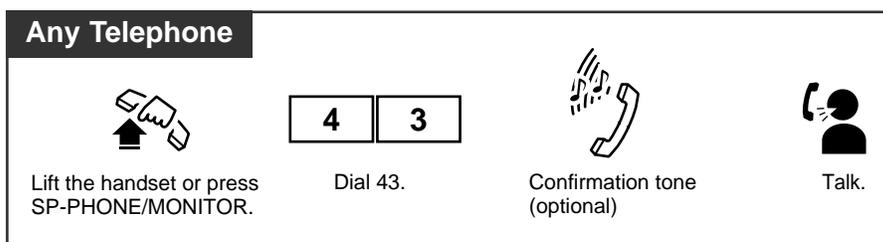
## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# P

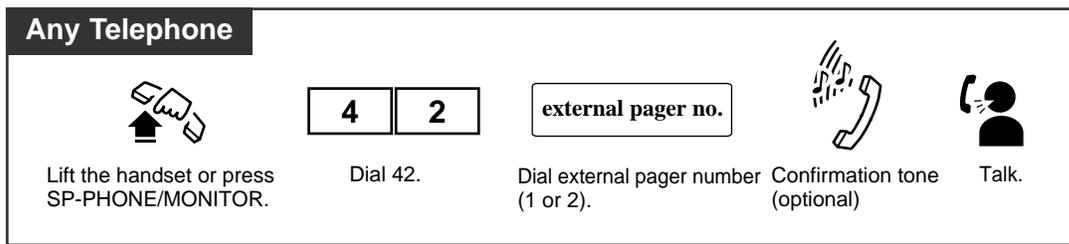
### Paging — ANSWER

Allows you to answer an announced page at any extension within the system.

#### Answering a page sent through a built-in speaker



#### Answering a page sent through a particular external pager



#### Conditions

- Only extensions within the paged group can answer “Paging — Group.”
- A confirmation tone is audible when the paging is answered. Eliminating the tone is programmable by System Programming.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

#### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (25) External Paging Answer/TAFAS Answer
    - (27) Station Paging Answer
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (9) Confirmation Tone for Call Pickup, Paging-Answer, TAFAS-Answer, Hold Retrieve and Call Park Retrieve

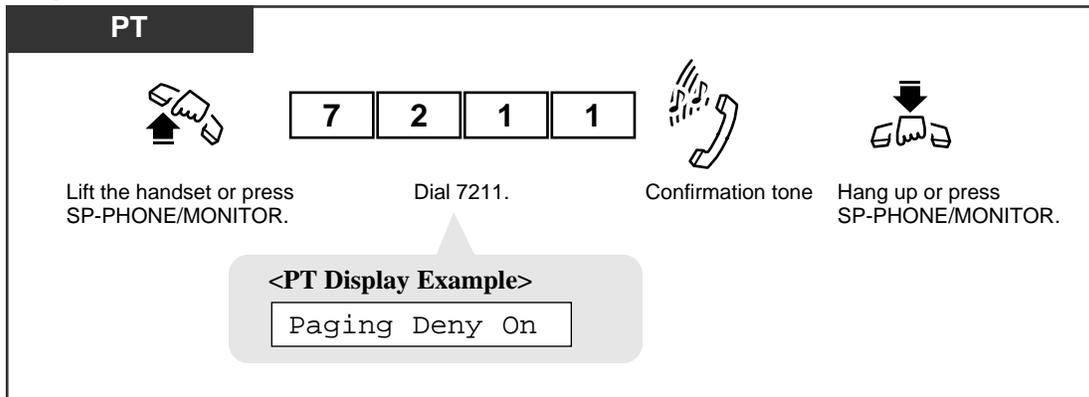
#### Feature References

- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

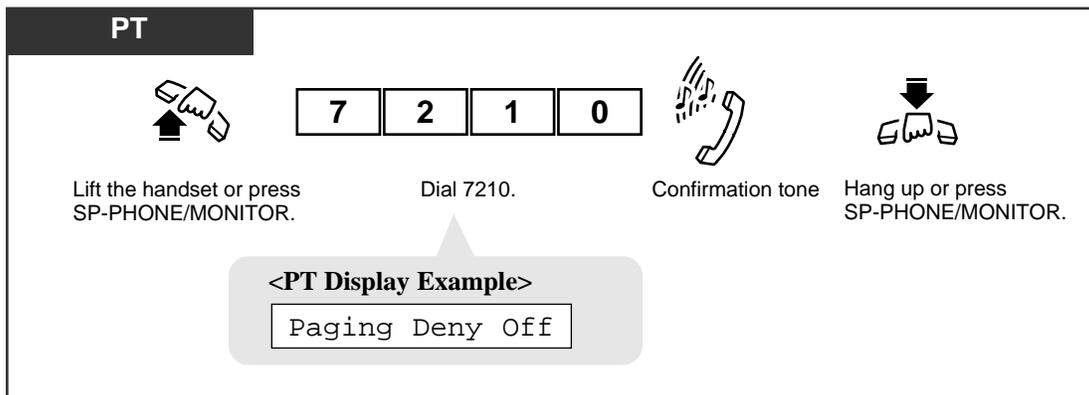
### Paging Deny

Allows you to deny receiving paging announcement through the built-in speakers of your PTs.

#### Setting



#### Canceling



#### Conditions

- **Distinctive Dial Tone**  
Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

#### Programming References

- System Programming – Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan  
— (93) Paging Deny Set/Cancel

## 4.3 *Station Features and Operation*

---

***P***

### *Feature References*

Paging

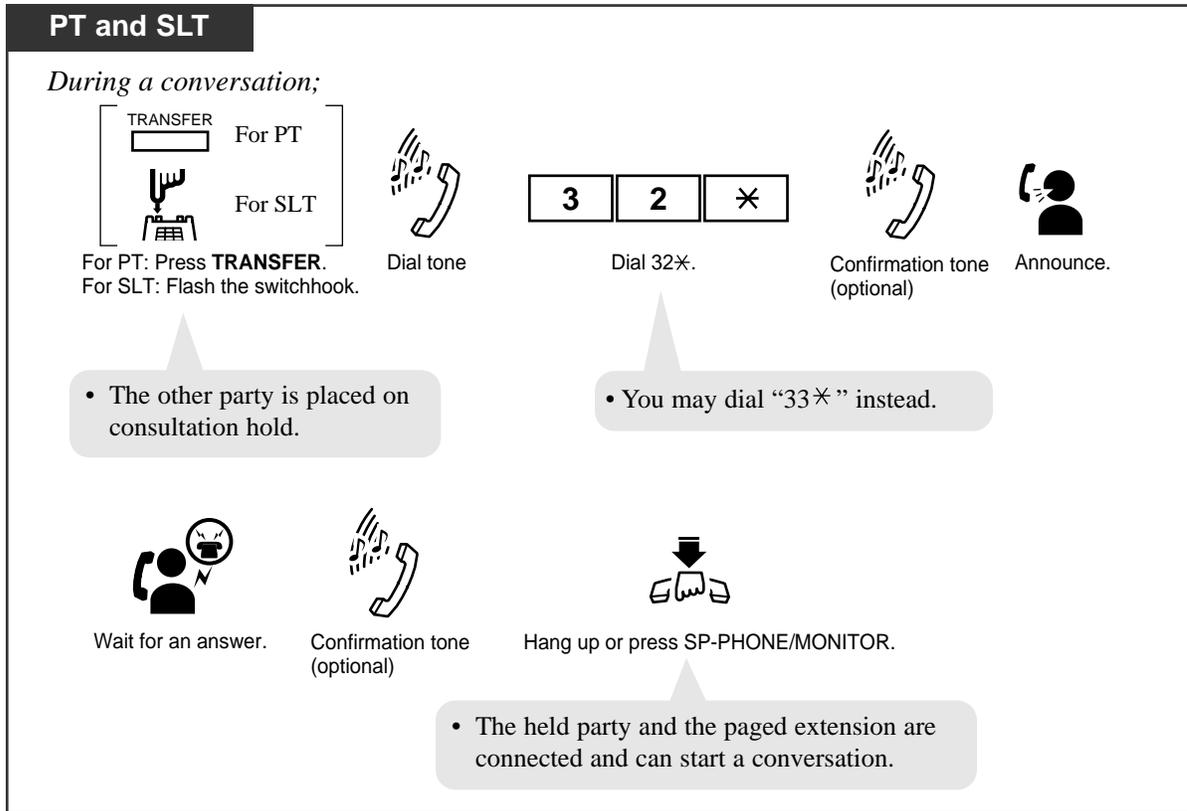
KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu  
(4.5/Special Display Features)

### Paging and Transfer

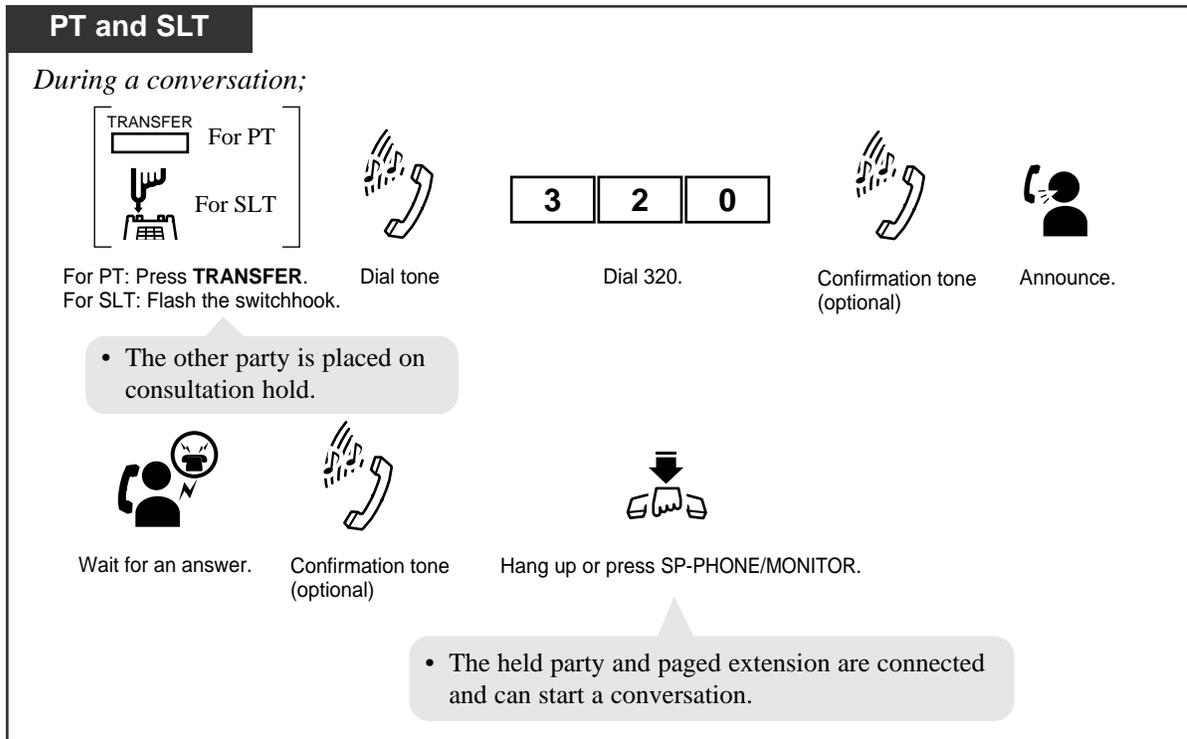
You can transfer a call after making a paging announcement via Paging — All, Paging — External, or Paging — Group.

#### Using Paging — All

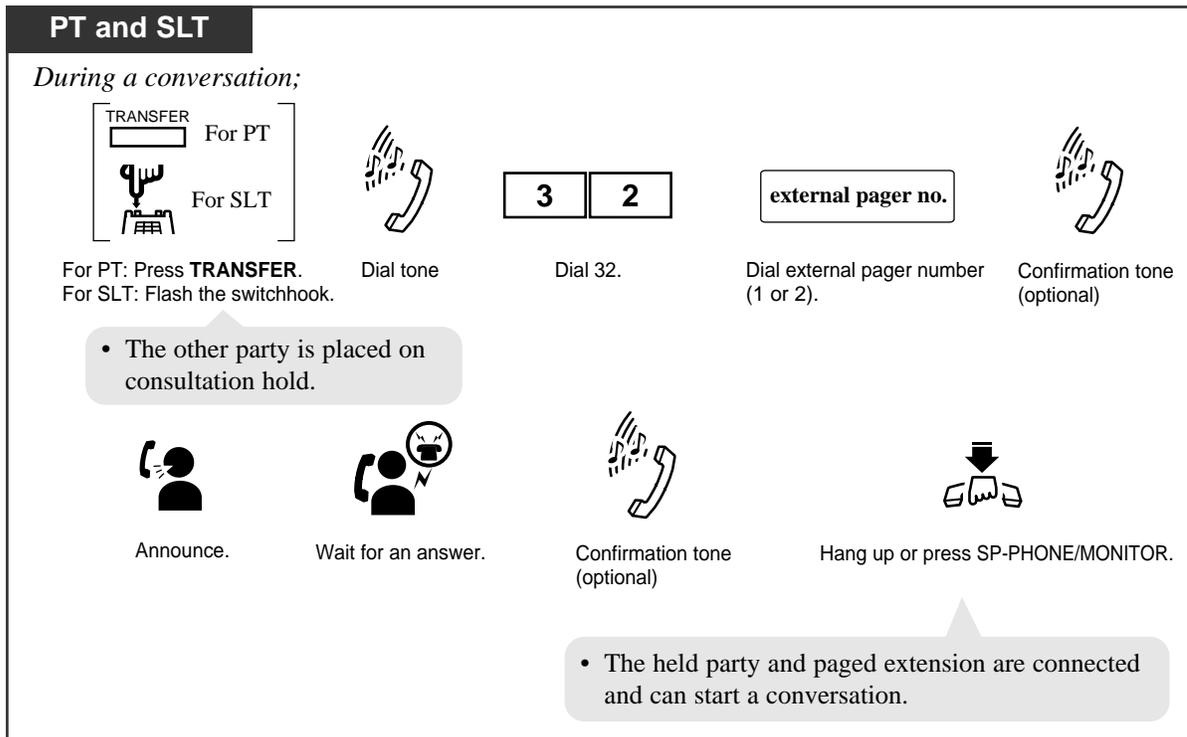


# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

## Using Paging — External: to all external pagers



## Using Paging — External: to a particular external pager



### Using Paging — Group: to all paging groups (01-16)

**PT and SLT**

*During a conversation;*

 For PT  
 For SLT



3

3

#











For PT: Press **TRANSFER**.

For SLT: Flash the switchhook.

Dial tone

Dial 33 #.

Confirmation tone (optional)

Announce.

Wait for an answer.

Confirmation tone (optional)

Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- The other party is placed on consultation hold.
- The held party and the paged extension are connected and can start a conversation.

### Using Paging — Group: to a particular paging group

**PT and SLT**

*During a conversation;*

 For PT  
 For SLT



3

3

paging group no.



For PT: Press **TRANSFER**.

For SLT: Flash the switchhook.

Dial tone

Dial 33.

Enter a paging group number (01 through 16).

Confirmation tone (optional)

- The other party is placed on consultation hold.



Announce.



Wait for an answer.



Confirmation tone (optional)



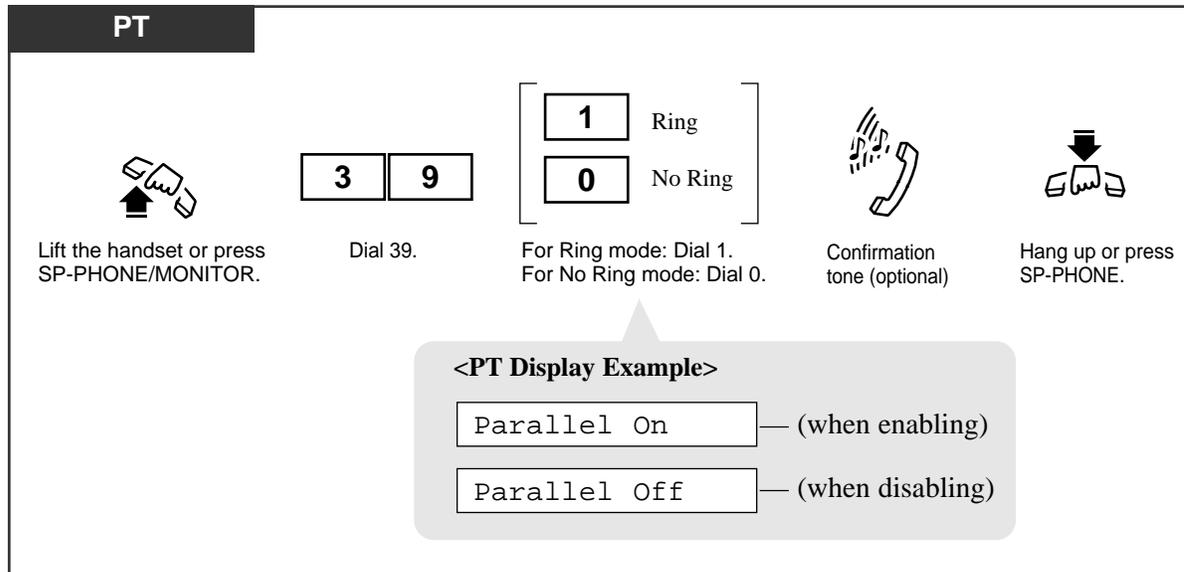
Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- The held party and the paged extension are connected and can start a conversation.

### Paralleled Telephone Connection

A Proprietary Telephone (PT) can be connected in parallel with a single line telephone (SLT). This feature allows you to enable or disable SLT ringing. When a parallel connection is made, either telephone can be used.

#### To enable / disable SLT ringing



#### Conditions

- The default is “Parallel Off (No ring).”
- The PT can be used to perform normal operations whether or not the SLT is set to ring.
- **When receiving a call:**
  - If SLT ringing is enabled, then both the PT and the SLT will ring except when the PT is in “Hands-free Answerback” mode or Voice-Calling mode with the “Alternate Calling — Ring/Voice” feature.
  - If SLT ringing is disabled, then the PT rings but the SLT does not. However, the SLT can answer the call.
- When the SLT is in use, the display and the indicators of the PT will work in the same way as if the PT is in use.
- In the DPT + SLT combination, if one telephone goes off-hook while the other telephone is on a call, the call is switched to the former.
- In the APT + SLT combination, if one telephone goes off-hook while the other telephone is on a call, a 3-party call is established. If one user goes on-hook, the other user continues the call.
- The “XDP\*” feature is available. Refer to the Installation Manual.

- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436, or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.
- This feature is only available for PT extensions that are connected to a DHLC or HLC card.

### ***Programming References***

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.1.3 Configuration - Extension Port Assignment  
— Parallel/XDP

### ***Feature References***

Alternate Calling — Ring/Voice

EXtra Device Port (XDP) (→ see Features Guide)

Hands-free Answerback

KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

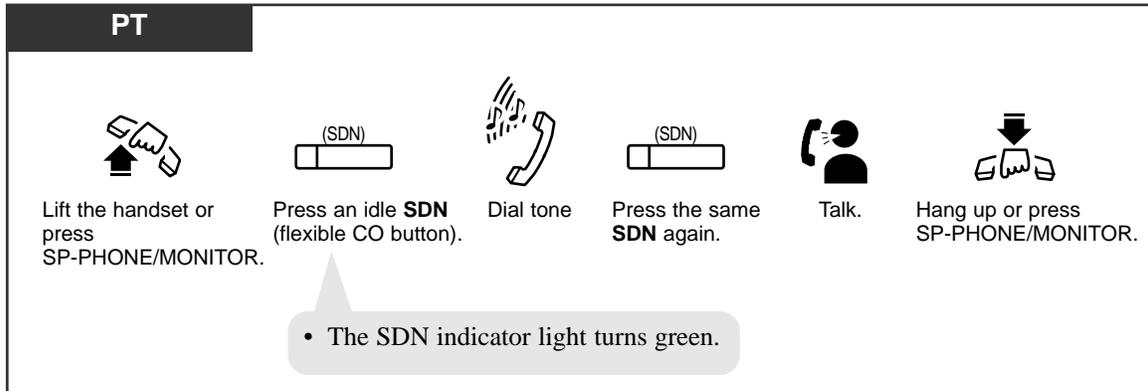
\* XDP (eXtra Device Port) expands the number of telephones available in the system by allowing an extension port to contain two telephones. For more details, please consult with your dealer.

# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

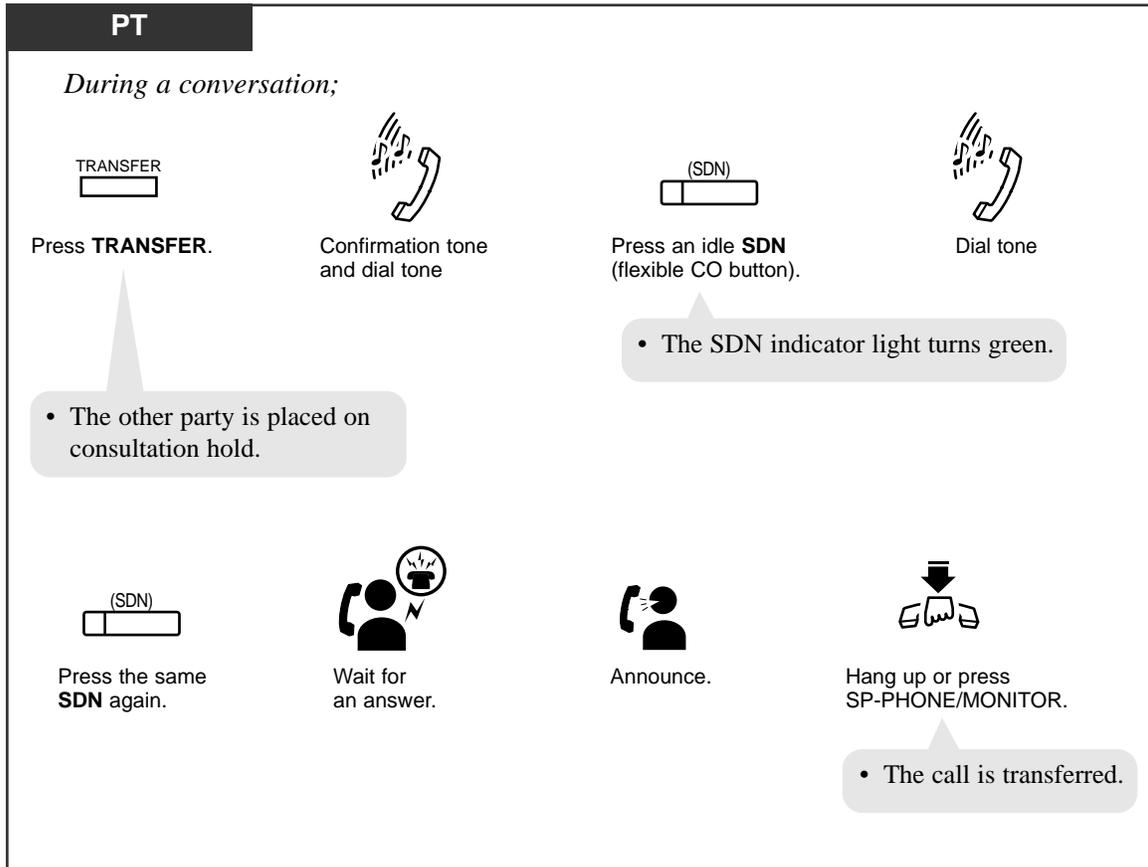
## PDN Call

If an SDN button (which corresponds with the PDN of another extension) is assigned on your PT, you can call that extension with a simple operation.

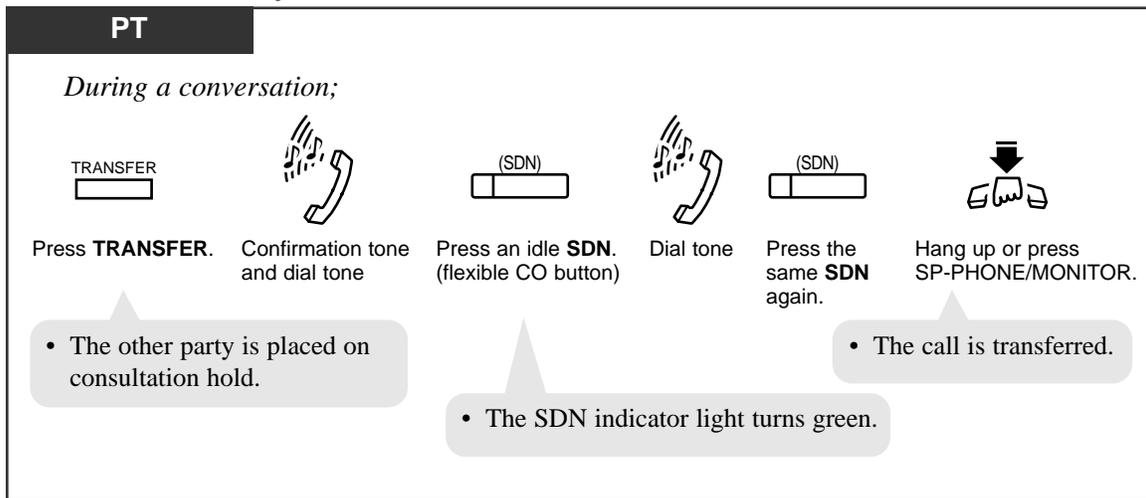
### Making a PDN call



### Screened Call Transfer



### Unscreened Call Transfer



### Conditions

- PT (DN) • SDN button**  
An SDN button can be assigned to a flexible CO button on a DN type PT by Station, User or System Programming.
- PT (DN) • FWD/DND Override**  
The call originated by this feature overrides FWD/DND (Call Forwarding/Do Not Disturb) feature assigned on the PDN owner extension.
- PT (DN) • A call made by this feature rings the destination PDN button immediately even if delayed ringing or no ring is set on that PDN button. Refer to “PDN/SDN Button Delayed Ringing Assignment” in Section 2.2 Station Programming.**

### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)  
Flexible Button Assignment - Secondary Directory Number (SDN) Button
- User Programming (Section 3)  
[005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.4.2 Line - Extension Line  
— Flexible CO Key Assignment

### Feature References

- Button, Line Access — Primary Directory Number (PDN) (→ see Features Guide)
- Button, Line Access — Secondary Directory Number (SDN) (→ see Features Guide)
- Ringing Transfer

## Phantom Extension

Allows you to route calls to a phantom extension. The call arrives at the extension who has the corresponding Phantom button. A flexible CO button can be assigned as the Phantom button. The lighting patterns of Phantom button and status are as follows.

- Off : Idle
- Red : You are calling a phantom extension.
- Flashing green rapidly : Incoming call

### To call a phantom extension

#### PT

While the Phantom button indicator light is off;

(Phantom)  or **Phantom extension no.**

Press **Phantom** (flexible button). Dial the phantom extension number.

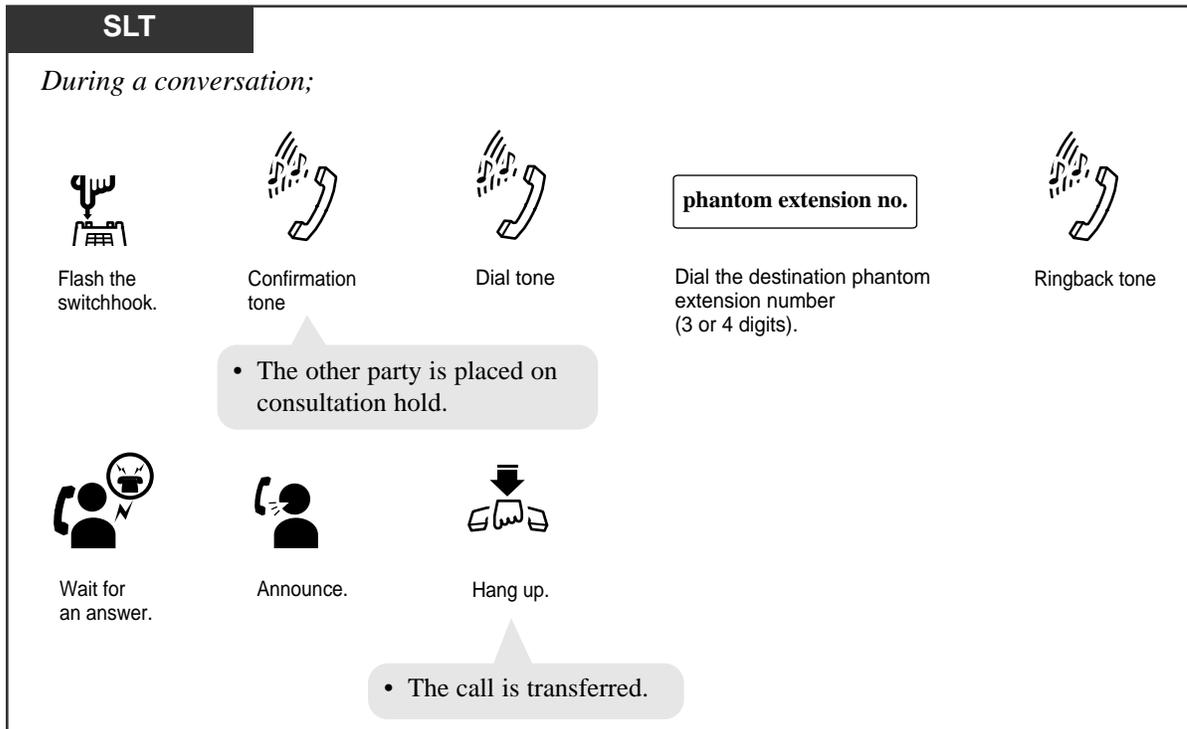
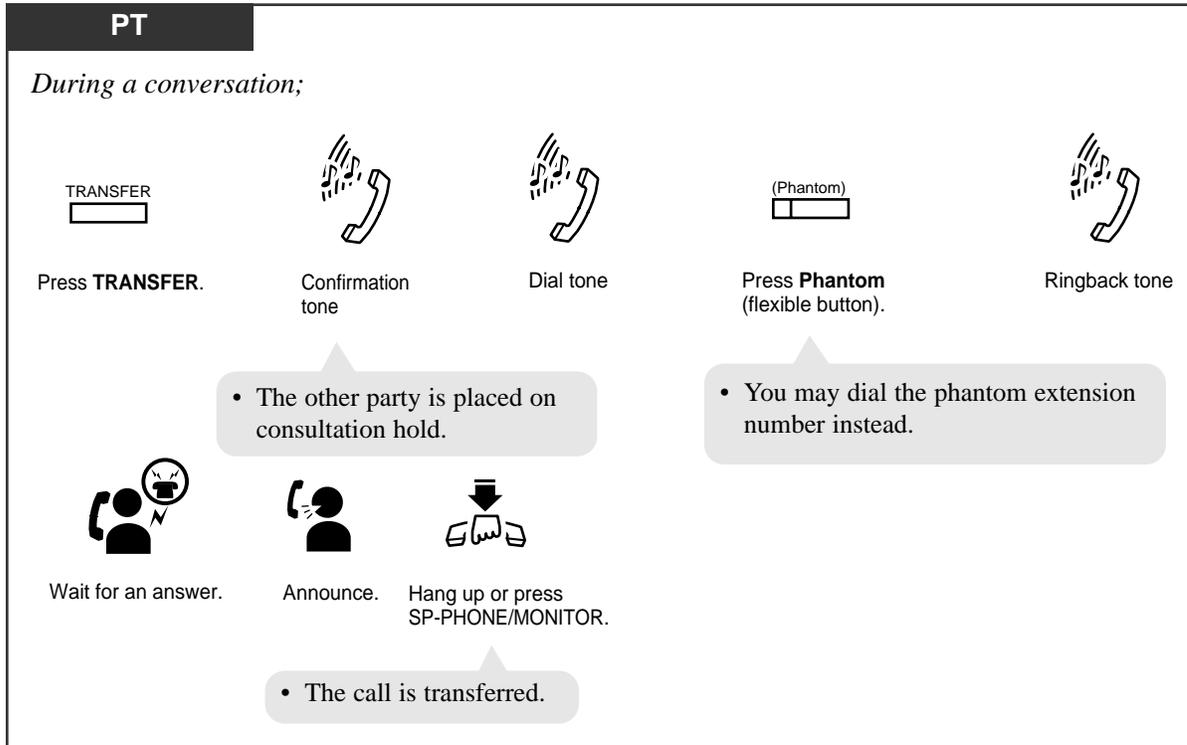
- You may dial the phantom extension number instead.
- The Phantom indicator light turns red (steady).

#### SLT

 **Phantom extension no.** 

Lift the handset. Dial the phantom extension number. Talk.

### To transfer a call to a phantom extension (Screened Call Transfer)



# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

## To transfer a call to a phantom extension (Unscreened Call Transfer)

**PT**

*During a conversation;*

Press **TRANSFER**.      Confirmation tone      Dial tone      Press **(Phantom)** (flexible button).      Ringback tone      Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

- The other party is placed on consultation hold.
- Ringing starts at the destination extension.
- The call is transferred.

**SLT**

*During a conversation;*

Flash the switchhook.      Confirmation tone      Dial tone      **phantom extension no.**      Ringback tone      Hang up.

Dial the destination phantom extension number (3 or 4 digits).

- The other party is placed on consultation hold.
- Ringing starts at the destination extension.

## To answer a phantom extension call

**PT**

*While the Phantom button indicator light is flashing green, and INTERCOM button associated with the incoming call is flashing green or CO/DN button associated with the incoming call is flashing red;*

(Phantom)      or      (CO)      or      INTERCOM      or      (DN)

Press **Phantom** (flexible button).      Press **CO** or **INTERCOM** or **DN** associated with the incoming call.

**SLT**

Lift the handset.

### Conditions

- A phantom number must be assigned by System Programming before assigning the Phantom button by Station Programming.
- If several extensions have the same phantom extension number, they will ring simultaneously.
- A maximum of 448 phantom numbers can be assigned by System Programming.
- PT • The Phantom button cannot be used for feature settings such as “Call Forwarding.”
- PT • **Automatic Hold**  
If Automatic Hold is enabled by COS programming, you can transfer the call without first pressing the TRANSFER button, that is, simply by pressing a Phantom button.
- PT • An incoming CO call may come in on a Phantom button directly depending on System Programming. In this case, a CO button (S-CO, G-CO or L-CO) associated with the incoming CO call should be assigned on a PT.

### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Phantom Button
  - Phantom Button Ringing ON/OFF Assignment
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming – Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.4.2. Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment
  - 4.5.2 Features - Phantom Extension

### Feature References

None

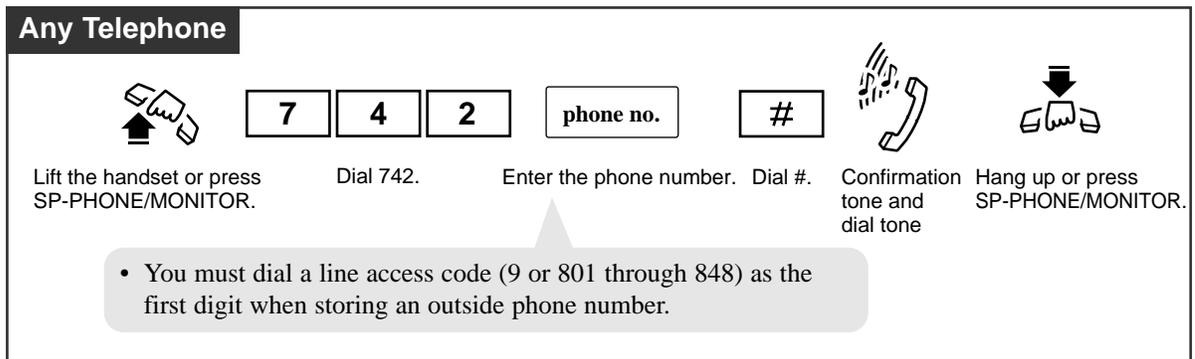
# 4.3 Station Features and Operation

## Pickup Dialing (Hot Line)

You can make a call to the pre-programmed party simply by going off-hook.

### Programming the phone number

**Any Telephone**



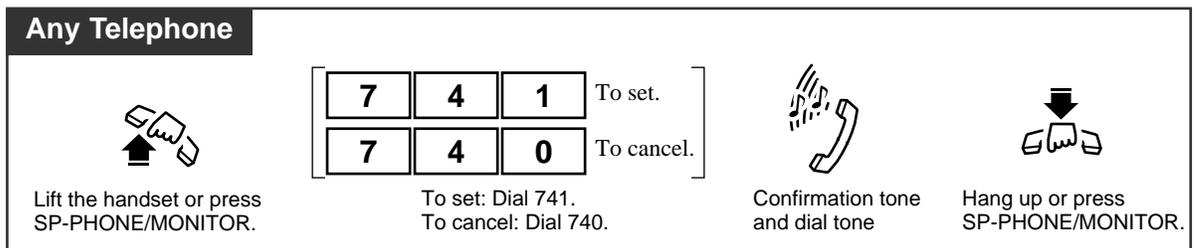
Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.      Dial 742.      Enter the phone number.      Dial #.

Confirmation tone and dial tone      Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

- You must dial a line access code (9 or 801 through 848) as the first digit when storing an outside phone number.

### Setting / Canceling

**Any Telephone**



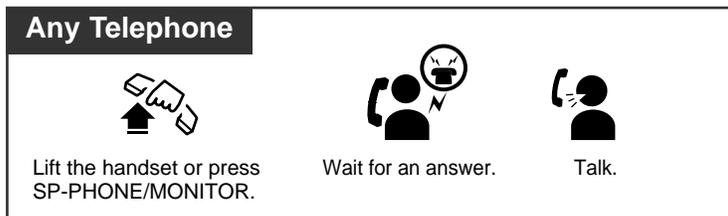
Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

To set: Dial 741.      To cancel: Dial 740.

Confirmation tone and dial tone      Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

### Dialing

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

Wait for an answer.      Talk.

### Conditions

- This feature does not work if you go off-hook to answer an incoming call or retrieve a call on hold.
- This feature does not work if a message notification is left on your extension.
- Up to 16 digits, consisting of “0 through 9” and “\*,” can be stored. “#” cannot be stored.
- During the waiting time after going off-hook, you can dial another party and override this feature. This waiting time (between going off-hook and connecting with the called line) can be changed by System Programming. (Default: 1 second)

- PT**
- In case the PT with a PF12 button, the number stored in the PF12 button is used for Pickup Dialing.
  - With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.
  - **Distinctive Dial Tone**  
Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

### Programming References

- System Programming – Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (47) Pickup Dialing Program/Set/Cancel
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer (1/2)
    - Pickup Dial Waiting Time (1-5 s)
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Pickup Dialing

### Feature References

- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

## Privacy Release

Allows you to establish a three-party conference call while connected to an existing call.

### Setting

**PT**

*During a conversation with an outside party, to allow another extension to join the conversation;*

-at your extension	-at the other extension	
(CO) 	(CO) 	
Press the corresponding CO.	Press the flashing CO within five seconds.	Confirmation tone (optional)

- The corresponding CO indicator light flashes green rapidly.
- A three-party conference is now established.

### To leave the conference

**PT**



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

- The other two parties may continue their conversation.

### To terminate one party and talk to the other

**PT**

(CO) or INTERCOM or PDN or SDN  
 or  or  or 

Press CO or INTERCOM or PDN or SDN of the desired party.

### *Conditions*

- PT • The CO button pressed to join the conversation needs to be assigned as a Single-CO (S-CO) button.
- PT • After the user presses the CO button, the CO indicator light of the other extension flashes rapidly for only 5 seconds. Pressing the CO button again gives you an additional 5 seconds.
- PT • This feature overrides “Data Line Security” and “Executive Busy Override Deny.”
- PT • When a two-party call is changed to a three-party call and vice versa, a confirmation tone is sent to all three parties. Eliminating the tone is programmable.

### *Programming References*

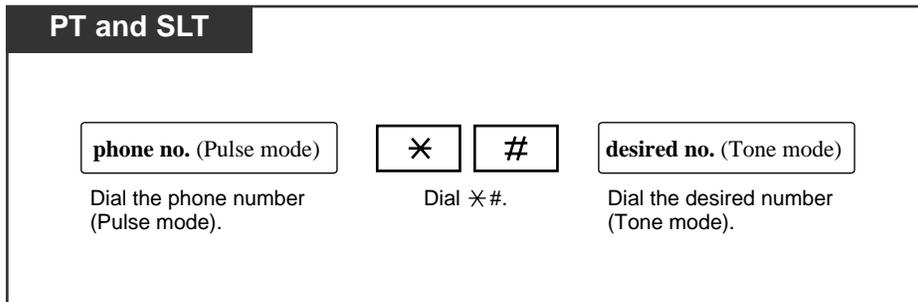
- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Single-CO (S-CO) Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (8) Confirmation Tone for Override, Barge-in and Conference
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS Key Assignment

### *Feature References*

Conference  
Data Line Security  
Executive Busy Override Deny

### *Pulse to Tone Conversion*

You can change the dialing mode from Pulse to Tone temporarily to access services such as computer telephone services, Voice Mail, etc., that require a tone.



#### *Conditions*

- You cannot change the dialing mode from Tone to Pulse.

#### *Programming References*

- System Programming - Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.4.1 Line - Trunk Line  
— Dial Type

#### *Feature References*

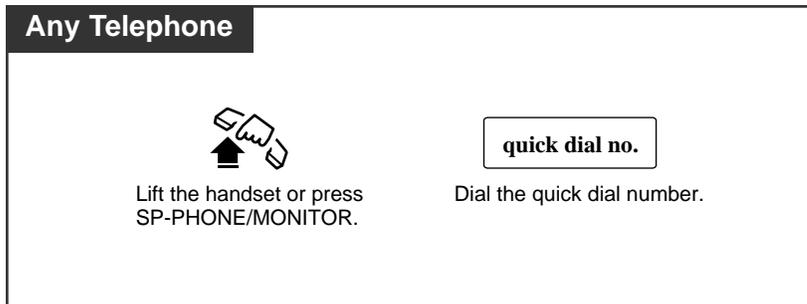
Dial Type Selection (→ see Features Guide)

### Quick Dialing

Allows you to make a quick dial call by dialing a pre-assigned quick dial number.

For example, Quick Dialing is convenient for room service calls in a hotel.

#### Dialing



#### Conditions

- Up to eight quick dial numbers can be stored by System Programming.
- You must assign a feature number in program “Section 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan” in the Installation Manual first and then a quick dial number in program “Section 5.4 Features - Quick Dialing” in the Installation Manual in order for Quick Dial to be effective.

#### Programming References

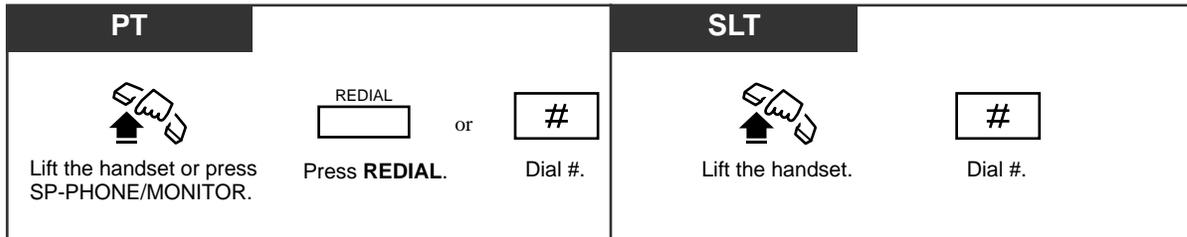
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [009] Quick Dial Number Set
- System Programming – Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (63) Quick-Dial 1 through (70) Quick Dial 8
  - 4.5.4 Features - Quick Dialing

#### Feature References

None

### Redial, Last Number

Automatically saves the last outside call number you dialed and allows you to make the same outgoing call again.



#### Conditions

- Up to 24 digits can be stored and redialed; this does not include a CO line access code.
  - “\*,” “#,” “PAUSE,” and “INTERCOM” (for secret dialing) are counted as one digit.
  - The memorized telephone number is replaced by a new one if at least one digit sent to a CO line is dialed. Dialing a CO line access code alone does not change the memorized number.
- PT**
- If you hear a busy tone when attempting to redial, select another line and press the REDIAL button.

#### Programming References

- System Programming – Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (34) Redial

#### Feature References

None

**Redial, Saved Number**

Allows you to store a telephone number during an outside call and automatically redial the number later. The saved number can be redialed until another number is stored.

**Storing**

PT	
<i>During a conversation or while hearing a busy tone;</i>	
 Press <b>STORE</b> .	 Press <b>SAVE</b> (flexible button).

**Dialing**

PT	
 Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.	 Press <b>SAVE</b> (flexible button).

**Conditions**

- PT • Up to 24 digits can be stored and redialed; excluding a line access code.
- PT • “\*,” “#,” “PAUSE,” and “INTERCOM” (for secret dialing) are counted as one digit.
- PT • **SAVE button**  
 A flexible button can be assigned as the SAVE button by Station, User or System Programming.

**Programming References**

- Station Programming (Section 2)  
     Flexible Button Assignment — SAVE Button
- User Programming (Section 3)  
     [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming - Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line  
 — Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console  
 — Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment

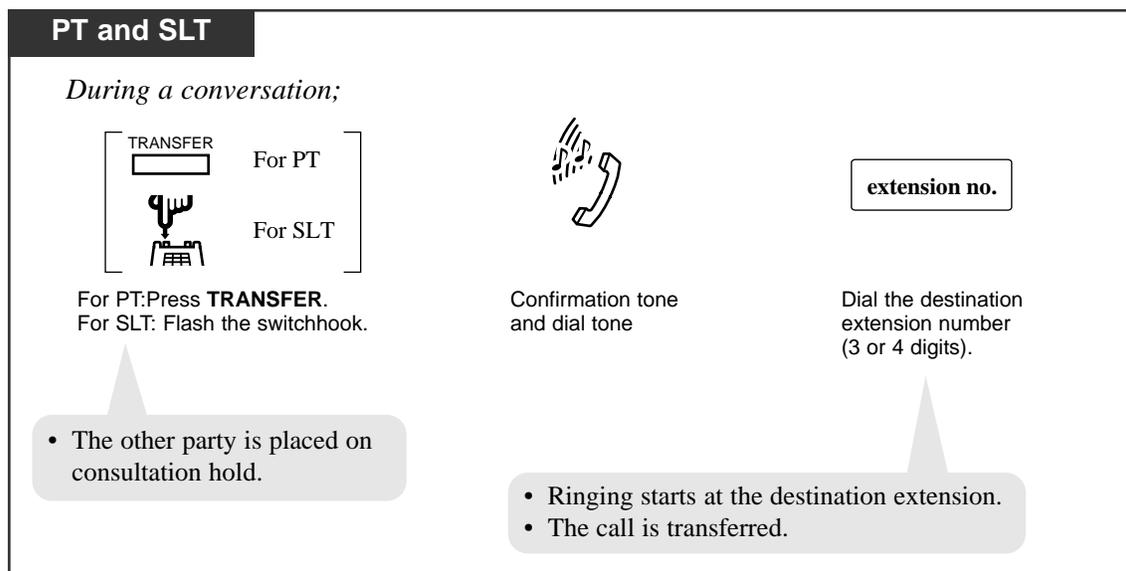
**Feature References**

None

### Released Link Operation

When Released Link Operation is enabled by System Programming, you will be automatically released from a call (extension, outside) after transferring it to the destination, if the destination extension is idle. This feature simplifies the transfer operation by eliminating the need for going on-hook or pressing the RELEASE button after transferring the call.

This feature is convenient for extension users, such as Operators, who handle a large volume of calls.



#### Conditions

- **Class of Service**  
Class of Service programming determines the extension that can perform this feature.
- Released Link Operation functions when transferring a call to the ordinary extensions or floating extensions (extension group, phantom extensions).
- If the destination party is busy, Camp-on Transfer is set by going on-hook.
- SLT • The SLT extension user cannot establish a conference call, if "Released Link Operation" is enabled by System Programming.

#### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.2.3 System - Class of Service  
— Released Link Operation

#### Feature References

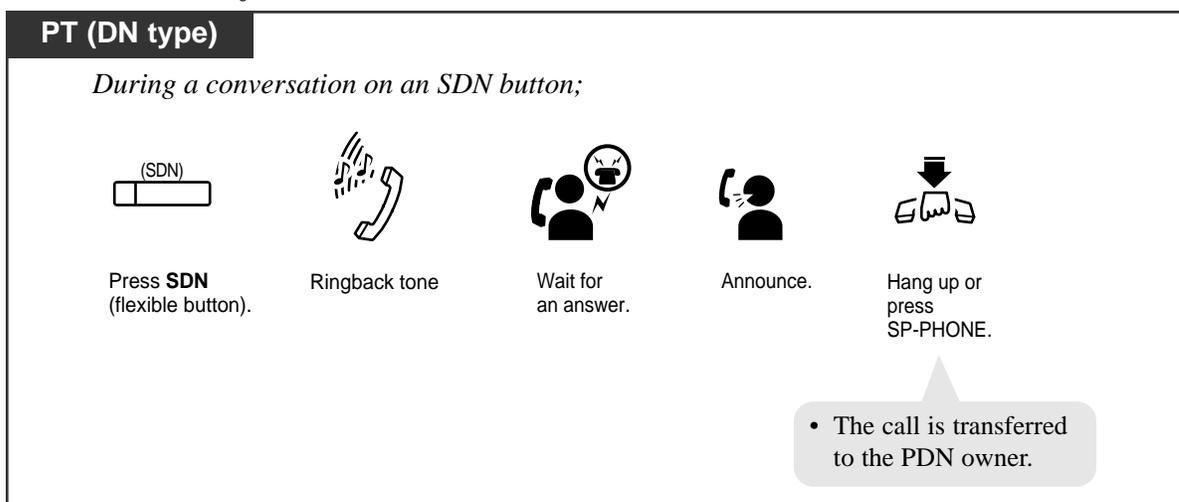
None

### Ringing Transfer

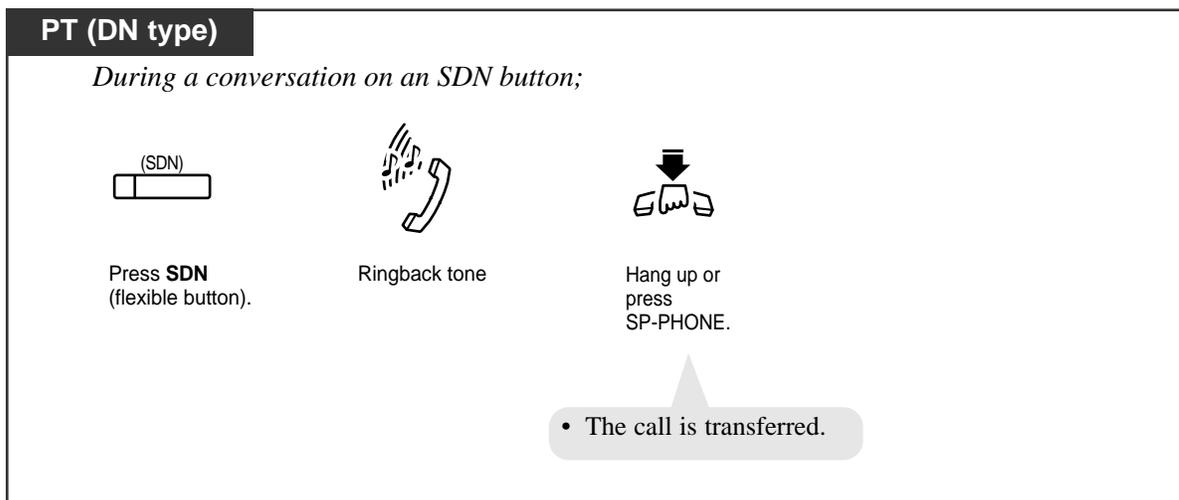
Allows a DN type PT user to transfer a call on the SDN button (flexible button) to the owner extension of the SDN which has the PDN button associated with it simply by pressing the SDN button.

Ringing transfer can be done either with or without announcement.

#### Screened Call Transfer



#### Unscreened Call Transfer



#### Conditions

- PT (DN)** • If the owner extension is in the Station Programming mode, Ringing Transfer does not function.
- PT (DN)** • A call made by this feature rings the destination PDN button immediately even if delayed ringing or no ring is set on that PDN button. Refer to “ PDN/SDN Button Delayed Ringing Assignment ” in Section 2.2 Station Programming.

### Secret Dialing

Allows you to conceal all or part(s) of a “System Speed Dialing” or “One-Touch Dialing” number assigned to a flexible button on your PT and DSS console which normally appears on the display. Additionally, KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 and KX-T7235 Model Telephones are capable of Secret Dialing for “Station Speed Dialing” numbers.

**PT**

When storing the phone number;

INTERCOM

Press **INTERCOM** before and after the part you wish to conceal.

**<PT Display Example>**

— “123” is not shown on the display when you dial.

#### Conditions

- PT** • The secret code, “[” or “]” (pressing the INTERCOM button), are counted as one digit.
- PT** • You can conceal one or more parts of a telephone number.
- PT** • If the phone number “9-1-[123]-456-7890” has been stored, the display shows the following when the call is made:

#### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Buttons Assignment — One-Touch Dialing Button
  - Station Speed Dialing Number / Name Assignment (KX-T7235 / KX-T7431/ KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 only)
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming – Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.5.1 Features - System Speed Dialing

#### Feature References

One-Touch Dialing  
Station Speed Dialing  
System Speed Dialing

**Station Program Clear**

Allows you to reset the following station features to the default settings.

(a) <b>Absent Message Capability</b> (The message set on your extension)
(b) <b>Automatic Callback Busy</b>
(c) <b>Background Music</b> that has been turned on
(d) <b>Call Forwarding, Do Not Disturb (DND)</b>
(e) <b>Call Log, Incoming</b>
(f) <b>Call Pickup Deny</b>
(g) <b>Call Waiting (BSS, OHCA, Whisper OHCA)</b>
(h) <b>Data Line Security mode</b>
(i) <b>Executive Busy Override Deny</b>
(j) <b>Log-out</b>
(k) <b>Message Waiting</b> (All messages that have been left on your extension by other extension users)
(l) <b>Paging Deny</b>
(m) <b>Paralleled Telephone enabled</b>
(n) <b>Pickup Dialing</b> (The stored telephone number (One-Touch dial on PF-12) will be removed)
(o) <b>Timed Reminder</b>
(p) <b>Walking Station</b>

**Clearing the current feature settings**

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7	9	0
---	---	---

Dial 790.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

<PT Display Example>

Ext Data Clear
----------------

## 4.3 *Station Features and Operation*

---

# S

### *Conditions*

- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming – Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan  
— (39) Station Program Clear

### *Feature References*

KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)  
KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

## Station Speed Dialing

Allows you to store up to 10 speed dial numbers at your extension. These numbers are available for your extension only.

### Storing the phone number

**Any Telephone**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.    Dial 30.    Enter the station speed dial number (0 through 9).    Enter the desired number.    Dial #.    Confirmation tone and dial SP-PHONE/MONITOR.    Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

### Dialing

**Any Telephone**

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.    Dial 3\*.    Enter the station speed dial number (0 through 9).

### Conditions

- You can store an extension number, a telephone number, or a feature number up to 16 digits. Valid digits are “0 through 9,” “\*” and PAUSE button. For SLT users, PAUSE (pausing time) can be stored by dialing \* \*.
- To store the telephone number of an outside party, the line access code (9 or 801 through 848) must be stored as the leading digit.
- “Station Speed Dialing” can be followed by manual dialing to supplement the dialed digits.

#### • One-Touch Dialing

**PT** A PT user may make a call with One-Touch Dialing button, instead of Station Speed Dialing.

- The SLT may be replaced with a PT temporarily to store One-Touch dialing into memory. The Function Buttons (F1 through F10) correspond to speed dial numbers as follows:

F1 — 0	F6 — 5
F2 — 1	F7 — 6
F3 — 2	F8 — 7
F4 — 3	F9 — 8
F5 — 4	F10 — 9

### *Programming References*

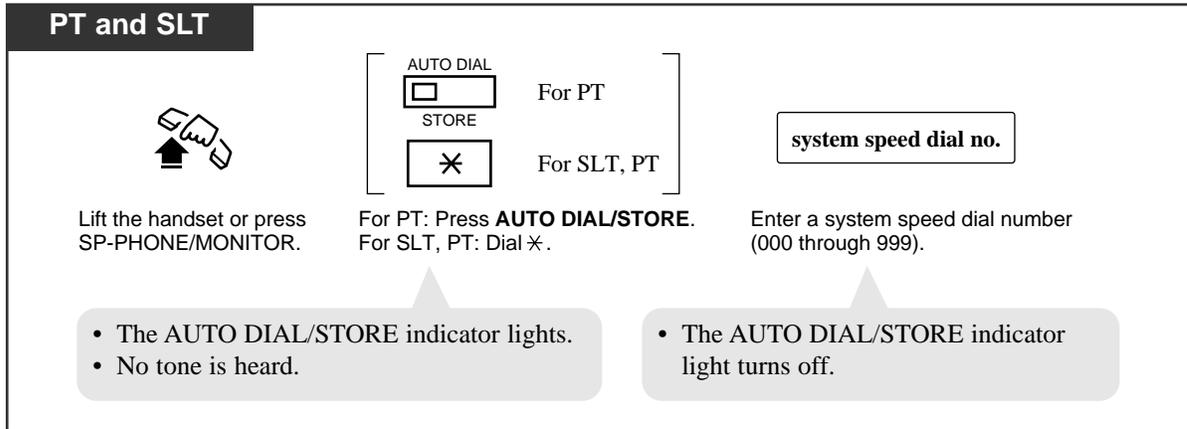
- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Buttons Assignment — One-Touch Dialing Button
  - Station Speed Dialing Number / Name Assignment (KX-T7235 / KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 only)
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (21) Speed Dialing-Station
    - (22) Speed Dialing-Station Programming
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment

### *Feature References*

One-Touch Dialing  
KX-T7235 Display Features – Call Directory – Station Speed Dialing  
(4.5/Special Display Features)  
KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – Call Directory – Station Speed Dialing  
(4.5/Special Display Features)

## System Speed Dialing

Allows you to make a call using speed dial numbers programmed previously. This system supports 2000 speed dial numbers which are available to all extension users.



### Conditions

- System Speed Dial numbers must be stored either by User or System Programming.
- Tenant Service**  
If “Tenant Service” is employed, up to 2000 Speed Dialing codes can be shared among each tenant under the condition of up to 1000 codes per tenant.
- Toll Restriction Override for System Speed Dialing**  
Overriding Toll Restriction for System Speed Dialing can be activated or deactivated per tenant by System Programming.

- PT** • Continuous use of a speed dial number is possible, if the number is divided when stored.

<Example>

If the number is divided and stored in System Speed Dial numbers 001 and 002;

Press: [AUTO DIAL/STORE] [0] [0] [1] [AUTO DIAL/STORE] [0] [0] [2]

- PT** • You may press a CO button to select a desired CO line before pressing the AUTO DIAL/STORE button.

- PT** • **Combination dialing**  
“Speed Dialing,” “One-Touch Dialing,” “Redial, Last Number/Saved Number” and manual dialing can be used in combination.

- display PT** • The dialed number appears on the display.  
• With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

- SLT** • If a stored feature number includes “✕” or “#,” rotary or pulse SLTs cannot use it.

### *Programming References*

- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [001] System Speed Dialing Number Set
  - [002] System Speed Dialing Name Set
- System Programming – Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - System Speed Dial TRS Level Override
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (20) Speed Dialing-System
  - 4.5.1 Features - System Speed Dialing
    - Name
    - Number

### *Feature References*

Toll Restriction Override for System Speed Dialing  
KX-T7235 Display Features – Call Directory – System Speed Dialing  
(4.5/Special Display Features)  
KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – Call Directory – System Speed Dialing  
(4.5/Special Display Features)

### Timed Reminder (Wake-Up Call)

Allows you to set your extension to sound an alarm once or daily at a preset time. Each telephone can be set to generate an alarm tone at a preset time as a reminder. When this feature is set, an alarm tone will ring for 30 seconds (default) at the programmed time.

#### Wake-up call

If a voice message is recorded beforehand, wake-up message is heard instead of an alarm tone when an extension user goes off-hook.

This feature can be activated only once or everyday at a specified time.

#### Setting

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7

6

1

1

Dial 7611.

hour

Enter the hour  
(01 through 12).

minute

Enter the minute  
(00 through 59).

0

or

1

For AM: Dial 0.  
For PM: Dial 1.

0

or

1

For a one time alarm\*<sup>1</sup>: Dial 0.  
For a daily alarm\*<sup>2</sup>: Dial 1.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

\*<sup>1</sup> An alarm will be heard at the preset time and then the setting is cleared.  
\*<sup>2</sup> An alarm will be heard daily at the preset time until the setting is changed or canceled.

## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# T

### Canceling

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7	6	1	0
---	---	---	---

Dial 7610.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**<PT Display Example>**

Alarm Cancelled
-----------------

### Checking the setting time

**Display PT**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

7	6	1	2
---	---	---	---

Dial 7612.



Dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

- If "10:10 AM" has been set:  
Alarm 10:10AM — one time  
or  
Alarm 10:10AM\* — daily

### Stopping the alarm

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset.

- Pressing any key also stops the alarm (PT only).

### Conditions

- **System Time**

The system clock must be set before the alarm is set.

- If an alarm time has not been set, the display shows the following:

Alarm Not Stored

- Timed Reminder message can be recorded by the Manager or an Operator. (“Outgoing Message (OGM)”). When the alarm is heard, you can hear the message by going off-hook, if it has been recorded. You hear an intermittent tone (dial tone 3) instead of the message in the following cases:

- a) A DISA Card is not equipped.
- b) All DISA ports are busy or OUS (Out-of-Service).
- c) The Timed Reminder message has not been stored.

- If other extension user calls your extension when the alarm is sounding, he or she will hear a busy tone.
- If you receive an incoming CO call during the alarm, the ringing starts after the alarm stops.
- If you are having a conversation at the time the alarm is set to sound, the alarm starts after the conversation.

- **Station Message Detail Recording (SMDR)**

SMDR automatically records the detailed Timed Reminder information (date, time, extension number, start/no answer). It is programmable by System Programming to print out when the Timed Reminder starts and the alarm is not answered.

- Setting a new time clears the preset time.

- **Timed Reminder Ringing Time**

The alarm continues for a specified period of time (default: 30 seconds).

This period of time can be changed by System Programming.

- **Hardware Requirements for a wake-up call**

To utilize a wake-up call, DISA card (KX-T96191) is required.

- **OGM Recording**

To utilize a wake-up call, set OGM Type of an OGM Group to “Wakeup.”

OGM Recording can be done only by the Manager or an Operator.

- **What if a wake-up message is not recorded?**

An alarm tone is heard instead of a wake-up message.

- The number of extension users who can set this feature is not limited. However, the number of extension users who can hear the wake-up message at a time is limited to a maximum of 56 per DISA card.

If the 57th or later extension user goes off-hook to hear the wake-up message, he or she will hear the alarm tone instead of the wake-up message.

- **Distinctive Dial Tone**

Distinctive Dial Tone is sent to the user on the extension with this feature when the extension user goes off-hook.

## 4.3 *Station Features and Operation*

---

# *T*

### *Programming References*

- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [000] Date and Time Set
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (49) Timed Reminder Confirm/ Set/ Cancel
  - 4.2.4 System - System Timer (2/2)
    - Timed Reminder Ringing Time (30-240 s)
  - 4.3.5 Group - OGM Group
    - OGM Type
  - 4.10.2 Maintenance - SMDR
    - Print out No Answer of Timed Reminder information
  - 4.10.5 Maintenance - System Time
    - System Time

### *Feature References*

Outgoing Message (OGM) Record / Playback (4.4/Operator / Manager Service Features)

### *Toll Restriction Override*

There are two types of toll restriction override:

- **Toll Restriction Override by Account Code Entry**
- **Toll Restriction Override for System Speed Dialing**

### *Toll Restriction Override by Account Code Entry*

Allows you to temporarily override toll restriction and make a toll call from a toll-restricted telephone. You can carry out this feature by entering an appropriate account code before dialing the telephone number. For operation procedure, refer to “Account Code Entry.”

#### *Conditions*

- This feature changes the toll restriction level of the extension to that of the account code entered. This can be used by extension users assigned to restriction levels 2 through 6. Level 1 cannot be changed.
- A “Class of Service” which is assigned to the “Account Code Entry — Verified - Toll Restriction Override” mode permits the class members to override their toll restrictions.
- Up to 1000 account codes can be programmed for the Verified mode.
- If you do not enter an account code or you enter an invalid account code, standard toll restriction is in effect.

#### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Account Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (36) Account Code
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - Account Code Mode
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS/PF Key Assignment
  - 4.5.5 Features - Account Code
    - Tenant No.
    - Code
    - TRS Level

#### *Feature References*

Account Code Entry  
Toll Restriction (→ see Features Guide)

---

### *Toll Restriction Override for System Speed Dialing*

Allows you to cancel toll restriction in “System Speed Dialing.” Normally, calls originated by “System Speed Dialing” are restricted depending on the extension’s toll restriction level. Once this option is set, it permits all extension users to make “System Speed Dialing” calls with no restrictions. You can override toll restriction for “System Speed Dialing” through System Programming.

#### ***Programming References***

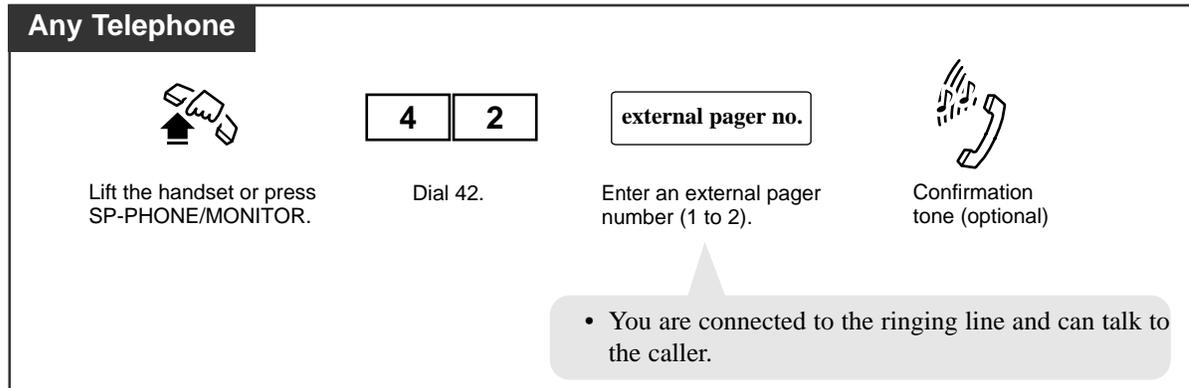
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - System Speed Dial TRS Level Override

#### ***Feature References***

System Speed Dialing  
Toll Restriction (→ see Features Guide)

**Trunk Answer From Any Station (TAFAS)**

Allows you to answer an incoming CO call, paged through an external pager, from any extension.

**Conditions**

- TAFAS can be used in the following cases:
  - a) The FDN\* of an external pager is assigned as the DIL 1:1 destination. In this case all incoming CO calls on the specified line will be signaled.
  - b) A DISA caller dials the FDN\* of an external pager.
  - c) The FDN\* of an external pager is assigned as the Intercept Routing destination. In this case incoming CO calls redirected to the destination will be signaled.
  - d) When a TIE call comes in
- **Confirmation Tone**  
A confirmation tone is sent to the extension user before being connected to the caller. Eliminating the tone is programmable.

**Programming References**

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (25) External Paging Answer/TAFAS Answer
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (9) Confirmation Tone for Call Pickup, Paging-Answer, TAFAS- Answer, Hold Retrieve and Call Park Retrieve
  - 4.4.1 Line - Trunk Line
    - Incoming Type
    - Destination, Day/Night
  - 4.4.5 Line - External Paging
    - Tenant No.

## 4.3 *Station Features and Operation*

---

# T

— FDN

### *Feature References*

Floating Station (→ see Features Guide)

\* A Floating Directory Number (FDN) is a virtual extension number which appears to be an extension. Refer to “Floating Station” in the Features Guide.

### Two-Way Recording into Voice Mail†

Allows you to record a conversation into your mailbox or the desired mailbox.

#### Recording into your mailbox

**PT**

*During a conversation;*

(Two-Way Rec)

Press **Two-Way Record**  
(flexible button).

- The Two-Way Record indicator light turns red.

#### Stopping recording

**PT**

(Two-Way Rec)

Press **Two-Way Record**  
(flexible button) again.

- The Two-Way Record indicator light turns off.

#### Recording into the mailbox of another extension

**PT**

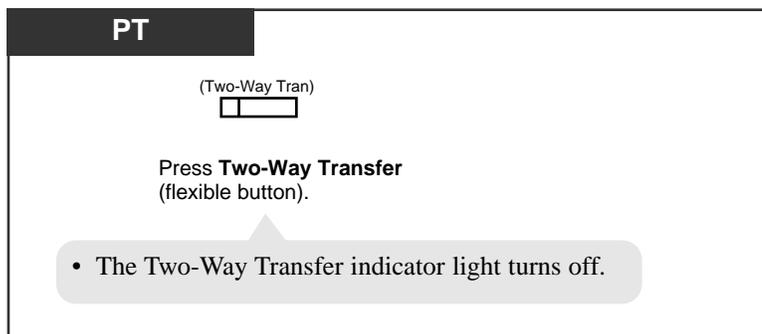
*During a conversation;*

(Two-Way Tran)       extension no.       or      (DSS)

Press **Two-Way Transfer**      Enter an extension      Press **DSS**  
(flexible button).      number.      (flexible button).

- The Two-Way Transfer indicator light turns red.

### Stopping recording



### Conditions

- PT** • A flexible CO and DSS button can be assigned as a Two-Way Record button or a Two-Way Transfer button.
- PT** • Pressing the Two-Way Record button sends an alarm tone, if no idle voice mail port exists.
- PT** • Pressing the Two-Way Transfer button followed by an extension number sends an alarm tone, if no idle voice mail port exists.
- PT** • When you record Two-Way telephone conversations, you should inform the other party that the conversation is being recorded.

### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Two-Way Record Button, Two-Way Transfer Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS Key Assignment

### Feature References

VPS Integration – DPT Integration

### ***UCD Login Monitor***

Allows an extension user (PT only) to see at a glance which UCD Group Members are logged in and which ones are logged out.

Write down the FDNs of the UCD Group Members that you want to monitor. Write them on the "TEL CARD" of your PT.

Using Station Programming (DSS Button Assignment, User Manual pg. 2-13) or System Programming (Flexible CO Key Assignment, Installation Manual pg. 4-87), assign each FDN to a DSS button on your PT.

Enable "LOGIN Monitor" (System Programming, 4.3.2 Group - Extension Group, Installation Manual pg. 4-66) for your UCD group.

When a UCD Group Member is logged out, the corresponding DSS button on your PT will flash red.

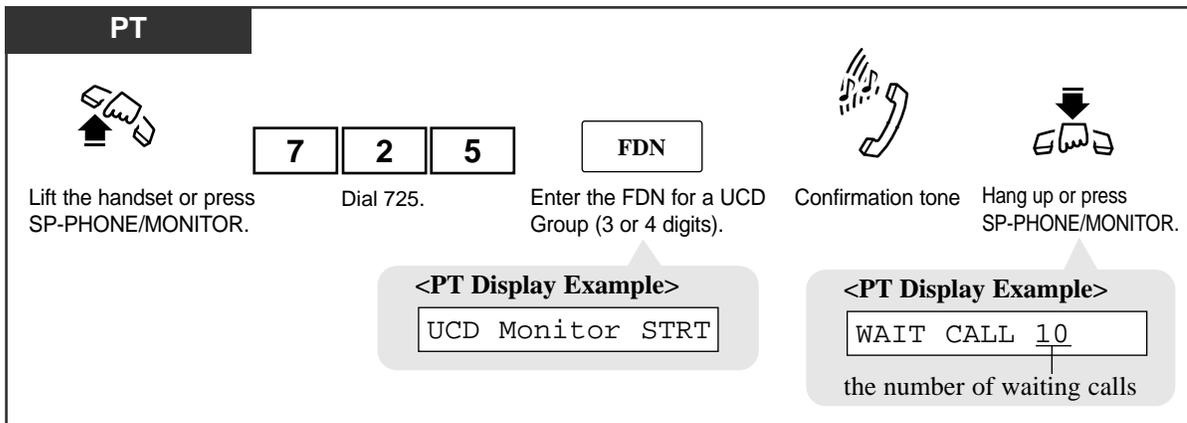
## 4.3 Station Features and Operation

# U

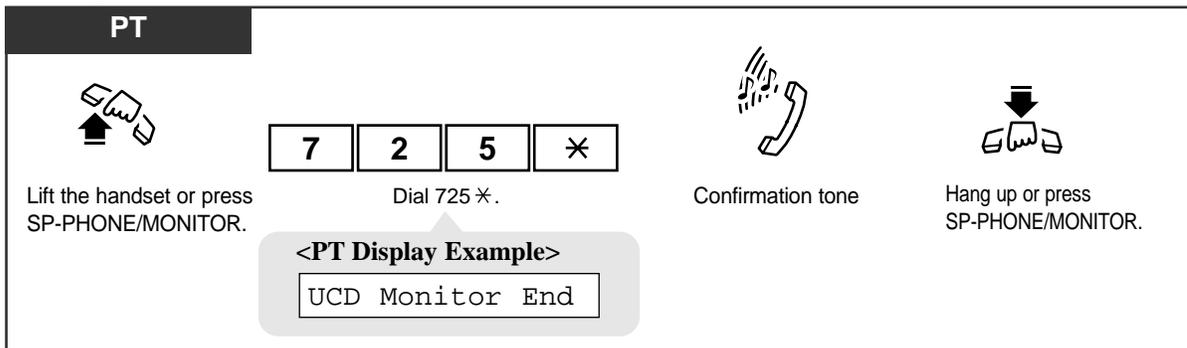
### UCD Monitor Mode

Allows the extension user specified as the Supervisor Extension to monitor the number of calls put in the waiting queue.

#### Setting



#### Canceling



#### Conditions

- Any extension user (whether a member of the UCD Group or not) can be specified as the Supervisor extension for a UCD Group by System Programming.
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

#### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (75) UCD Monitor Mode
  - 4.3.2 Group - Extension Group
    - Group Type
    - UCD Setting
    - Supervisor Extension

## Voice Mail Transfer

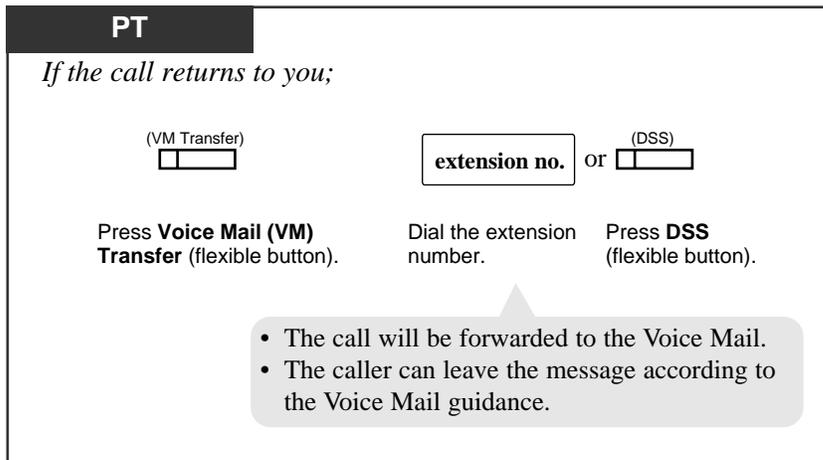
You can transfer the calls to the Voice Processing System so that callers can leave their messages in a desired extension mailbox. When you transfer the call to the designated extension;

— **If the extension has set the “Call Forwarding” function whose destination is Voice Mail;**

The call will be forwarded to Voice Mail.

— **If the extension has not set the “Call Forwarding” function;**

You can retrieve the call and then transfer the call to Voice Mail by One-Touch.



### Conditions

- PT • A flexible button can be assigned as the Voice Mail (VM) Transfer button.
- PT • A user’s Voice Mail Box number, password, etc. can be assigned as a Voice Mail Box ID.

### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — Voice Mail (VM) Transfer Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.3.2 Group - Extension Group
    - FDN
    - Group Type:VM
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS Key Assignment
  - 4.5.9 Features - VPS Integration 1/2
    - Voice Mail Command

### Feature References

VPS Integration

# 4.3 Station Features and Operation



## VPS Integration

Allows you to have your calls forwarded to your Voice Processing System mailbox.

### Setting Call Forwarding destination to Voice Mail

PT and SLT



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

FWD/DND

7

1

0

For PT : Press **FWD/DND**.  
For SLT,PT: Dial 710.

FWD no.

For PT : Press **FWD/DND**.  
For SLT,PT: Dial 710.

Dial the FWD number.

FWD-All Calls	: Dial 2.
FWD-Busy	: Dial 3.
FWD-No Answer	: Dial 4.
FWD-Busy No Answer	: Dial 5.

- You may press the flexible button assigned as the FWD/DND button instead.

Voice Mail extension no.

Dial Voice Mail extension number (3 or 4 digits).



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

<PT Display Example>

FWD(All) Extxxxxx

└── VM extension number

- Calls directed to your extension are automatically forwarded to your mailbox.
- Callers can leave messages in your mailbox, according to the Voice Mail guidance.

### Canceling

PT and SLT



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

FWD/DND

7

1

0

For PT: Press **FWD/DND**.  
For SLT,PT: Dial 710.

0

Dial 0.

For PT: Press **FWD/DND**.  
For SLT,PT: Dial 710.

Dial 0.

Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

- You may press the flexible button assigned as the FWD/DND button instead.

<PT Display Example>

FWD/DND Cancel

***Listening to a stored message***

You can listen to the messages stored in your mailbox easily. There are two operations to play back messages.

***Using the Message Waiting (MESSAGE) button***

**PT**

*If there is a message in the mailbox, the MESSAGE indicator light is on.*



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

Press **MESSAGE**.

- You can listen to the stored message.

***Manual dialing***

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**Voice Mail extension no.**

Enter the Voice Mail extension number (3 or 4 digits).

- You can listen to the stored message by following the Voice Mail guidance.

### Conditions

- Outside callers can leave their messages in your mailbox. When an incoming CO call arrives, the Operator answers the call and transfers it to your extension. And...
    - **If you set the “Call Forwarding” function whose destination is Voice Mail;**  
The call will be forwarded to Voice Mail automatically.
    - **If you do not set the “Call Forwarding” function;**  
The Operator will retrieve the call. Then the Operator transfers the call to Voice Mail with Voice Mail Transfer button.
  - Voice Mail can be assigned as the destination of the following features.
    - a) Call Forwarding — All Calls
    - b) Call Forwarding — Busy
    - c) Call Forwarding — No Answer
    - d) Call Forwarding — Busy/No Answer
    - e) Intercept Routing
- PT** • A flexible button can be assigned as the MESSAGE or FWD/DND button.

### Programming References

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment — FWD/DND Button/Message Waiting (MESSAGE) Button
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Flexible CO Key Assignment
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Flexible DSS Key Assignment

### Feature References

Call Forwarding — All Calls, Busy, Busy/No Answer, No Answer  
Intercept Routing (→ see Features Guide)  
Voice Mail Transfer

### Walking COS

Allows you to make a toll call at other lower level COS extensions (toll/outward restricted) by employing your own higher level COS temporarily.

#### Making a call

**Any Telephone**

*At another extension;*



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

4

7

Dial 47.

Walking COS password

extension no.



Enter the Walking COS password (4 through 7 digits).

Dial your extension number (3 or 4 digits).

Confirmation tone and dial tone

**<PT Display Example>**

Set COS of Exxxx

your extension number

phone no.

Dial the phone number.



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR

- You must dial a line access code (9 or 801 through 848) or press the CO button.

- The COS level of the extension returns to the original level.

### *Conditions*

- Class of Service (COS) programming is used to define the features which are allowed for a group of extensions. A COS level (1-96) is assigned to each extension by System Programming.  
Walking COS applies to the following COS items.
  - TRS (Toll Restriction) Level, Day/Night
  - Time Limit of Outside Calls
  - Transfer to CO
  - Digits Restriction in CO Talk Mode
  - Account Code Mode
  - Trunk Group Setting, Day/Night
- With the KX-T7431, KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (60) Walking COS
  - 4.2.3 System - Class of Service
    - TRS Level, Day/Night
    - Time Limit of Outside Calls
    - Transfer to CO
    - Digits Restriction in CO Talk Mode
    - Account Code Mode
    - Trunk Group Setting, Day/Night
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - COS No.
  - 4.10.4 Maintenance - System Parameters
    - Password
    - Walking COS

### *Feature References*

- Class of Service (COS) (→ see Features Guide)
- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)

### Walking Station

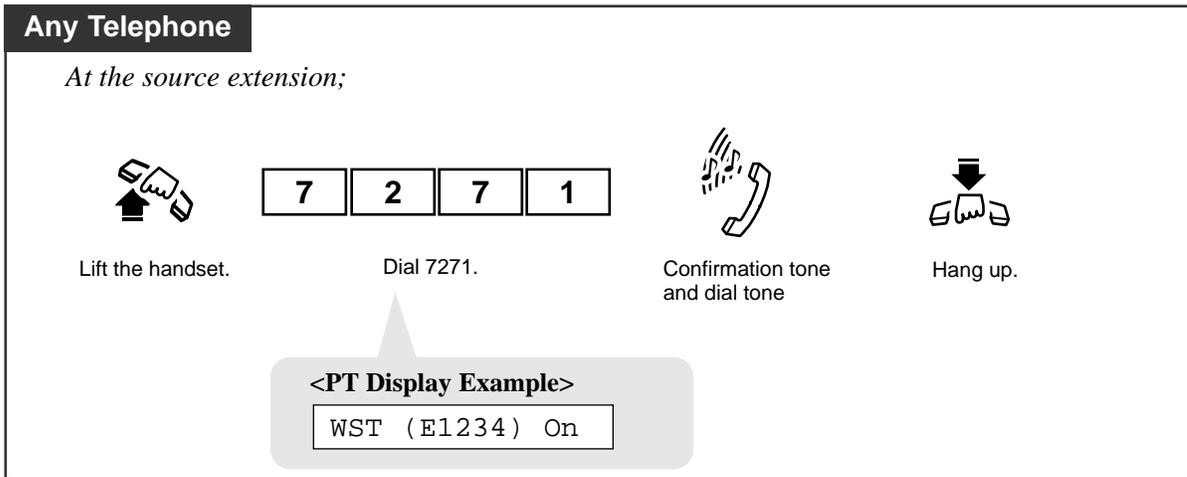
Used to move an extension to a new location without re-programming. Extension data such as extension number, One-Touch dialing memory remain the same after the re-location of the extension.

This feature is convenient if you don't want to change the current extension setting (extension number, etc.) after your desk is moved to another location in the office.

#### Start

**Any Telephone**

*At the source extension;*



Lift the handset.

Dial 7271.

Confirmation tone and dial tone

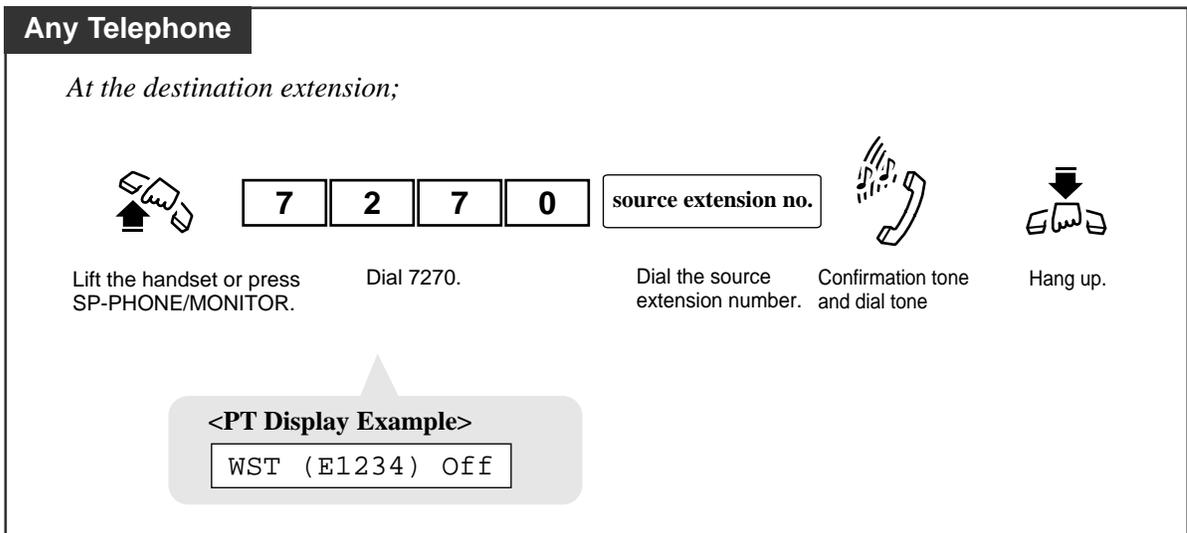
Hang up.

**<PT Display Example>**  
WST (E1234) On

#### End

**Any Telephone**

*At the destination extension;*



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

Dial 7270.

Dial the source extension number.

Confirmation tone and dial tone

Hang up.

**<PT Display Example>**  
WST (E1234) Off

## 4.3 *Station Features and Operation*

---

# W

### *Conditions*

- The telephone type (PT, SLT, OPX) must be the same at the source and destination.
- Walking Station is not available for the extensions connected to an HLC or DHLC card.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (95) Walking Station

### *Feature References*

None

# ***B*** 4.4 ***Operator / Manager Service Features***

---

An extension assigned as the Manager or an Operator by System Programming has the ability to perform the following special features:

- 1) Background Music (BGM) — External
- 2) Control of Call Log Incoming, Log Lock
- 3) Live Call Screening Password Control†
- 4) Local Alarm Indication [**Manager only**]
- 5) Outgoing Message (OGM) Record/Playback
- 6) Remote DND (Do Not Disturb) Control
- 7) Remote FWD (Call Forwarding) Cancel - Once
- 8) Remote Station Lock Control
- 9) Timed Reminder, Remote (Wake-Up Call)
- 10) Trunk Busy-out Setting
- 11) Trunk Route Control

## ***Programming References***

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - Manager Extension DN
  - 4.3.2 Group - Extension Group
    - FDN
    - Group Type:Operator

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features **B**

## Background Music (BGM) — External

Allows the Manager and the Operators to broadcast background music (BGM) in the office through the external pagers.

### Setting / Canceling

7235 / 7436

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Press **Features**.

Rotate **Jog Dial** or press **NEXT** until the following is displayed.

Press **Extrn BGM On/Off**.

Confirmation tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- Pressing this button alternates between “On” and “Off” modes.
- The display shows either one of the following depending on whether the BGM is on or off

**<PT Display Example>**

External BGM On — BGM is on

or

External BGM Off — BGM is off

# B 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Setting / Canceling

7431



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **MODE** until "Feature Access" is displayed.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "Ext-BGM On/Off" is displayed.



Press **SELECT**.



Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- Pressing this button alternates between "On" and "Off" modes.
- The display shows either one of the following depending on whether the BGM is on or off

**<PT Display Example>**

External BGM On — BGM is on

or

External BGM Off — BGM is off

## Setting / Canceling

7433



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **SHIFT** until "FEAT" is displayed.



Press **FEAT**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "Ext-BGM On/Off" is displayed.



Press **SEL**.



Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- Pressing this button alternates between "On" and "Off" modes.
- The display shows either one of the following depending on whether the BGM is on or off

**<PT Display Example>**

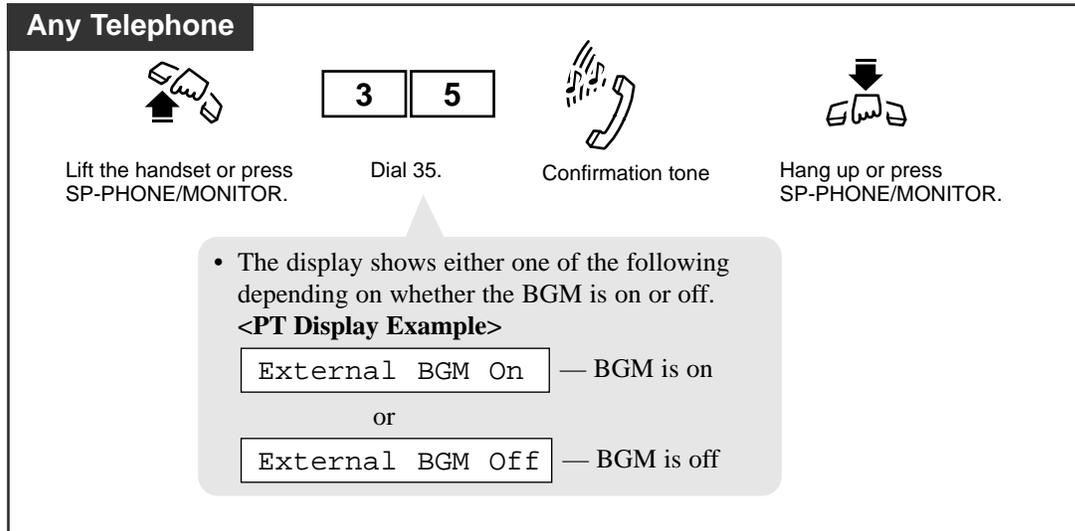
External BGM On — BGM is on

or

External BGM Off — BGM is off

## 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features B

### Setting / Canceling



### Conditions

- **Hardware Requirements**  
It is required to connect a user-supplied external pager. Up to two pagers and up to two external music sources can be installed in the system.
- To make BGM-External possible, you must enable BGM and select a music source in “4.4.5 External Paging” (System Programming).
- **External Pager Priority**  
Priority of access to external pager is: (1) TAFAS; (2) Paging; (3) BGM  
Higher priorities will override the BGM.
- The default is “External BGM Off.”

### Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - BGM Source
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (53) External BGM On/Off
  - 4.4.5 Line - External Paging
    - BGM
    - BGM Source

### Feature References

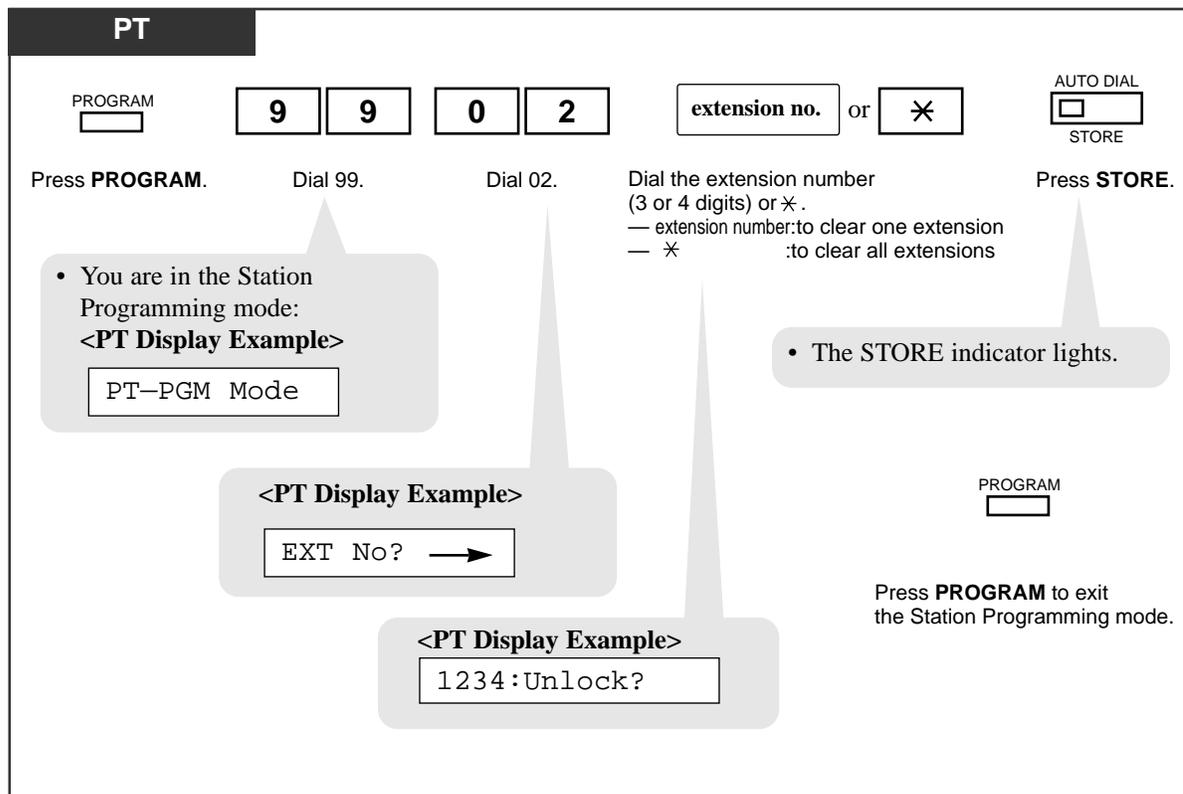
Background Music (BGM)

# C 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Control of Call Log Incoming, Log Lock

The Manager and the Operators can cancel the “Call Log Incoming, Log Lock” feature set at any other extension.

### Programming



### Conditions

- If the extension user forgets their pre-set password, they can ask the Manager or an Operator to clear the password.

### Feature References

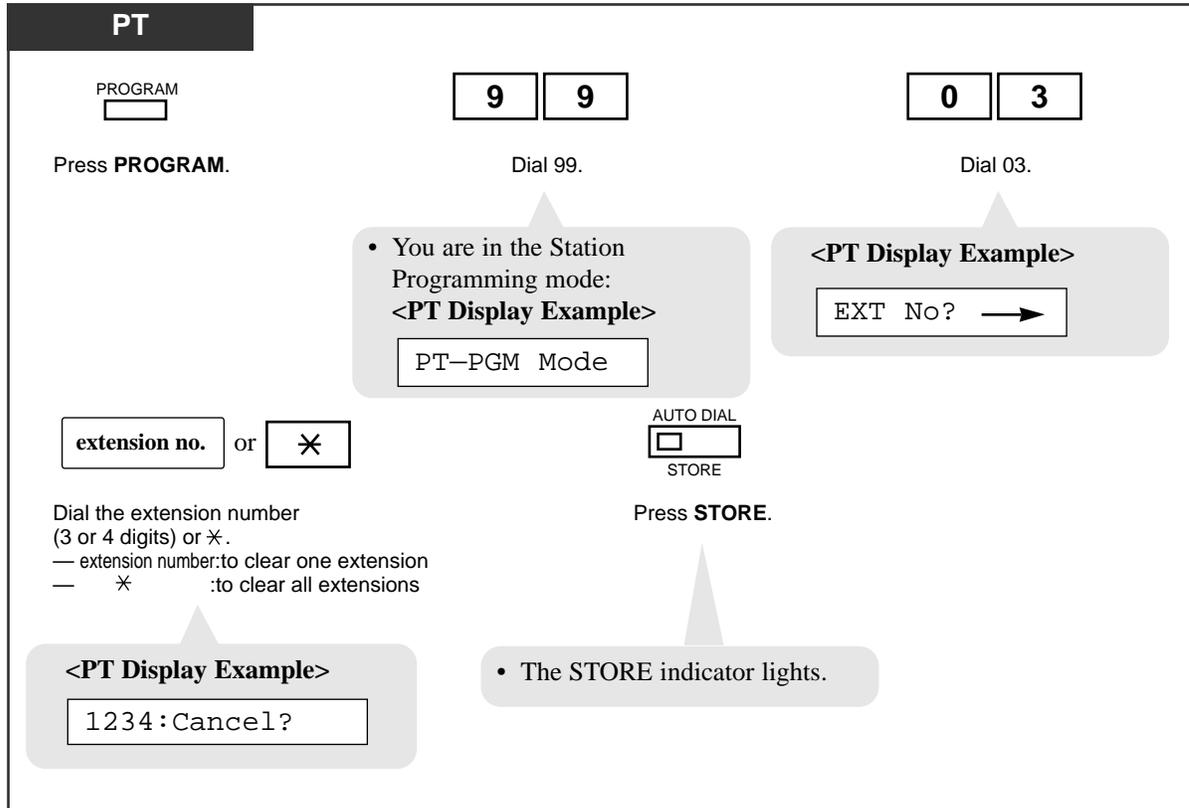
Call Log Incoming, Log Lock (4.5 / Special Display Features)

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features **L**

## Live Call Screening Password Control†

The Manager and the Operators can clear the Live Call Screening password of any extension.

### Programming



### Conditions

- If the extension user forgets their pre-set password, they can ask the Manager or an Operator to clear the password.

### Feature References

Live Call Screening (LCS)

†: Available when the Digital Super Hybrid System is connected to a Digital Proprietary Telephone capable Panasonic Voice Processing System (one that supports digital proprietary telephone integration; e.g. KX-TVS100).

# ***L*** 4.4 ***Operator / Manager Service Features***

---

## ***Local Alarm Indication***

If a system error is detected during on-line communication mode, the system alerts the Manager extension by turning on the Alarm button indicator on it. The Alarm button lights in red. The Manager can confirm the error indication by pressing the red lit Alarm button.

If a major error occurs, minor errors will be neglected and only the first major error message will be displayed. The second error will be neglected, if the error priority is the same as the first one. Please refer to "Section 7 Troubleshooting" in the Installation Manual for further information on error messages.

### **Error Indications List (Priority order)**

<b>Indications</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Priority</b>	<b>Alarm LED</b>
ERR CLCK IC	Calendar IC failure	1	A
ERR DC DOWN	DC power down	1	A
B/S FAN FLT!	Basic shelf fan alarm	1	B
E/S1 FAN FLT!	Expansion shelf 1 fan alarm	1	B
E/S2 FAN FLT!	Expansion shelf 2 fan alarm	1	B
B/S OVER HEAT!	Basic shelf heat alarm	1	B
E/S1 OVER HEAT!	Expansion shelf 1 heat alarm	1	B
E/S2 OVER HEAT!	Expansion shelf 2 heat alarm	1	B
ERR TSW DWN	TSW clock down	1	A
ERR BAT ALM	CPU RAM battery alarm	1	A
ERR AC DOWN	AC power down	2	A
ERR xyy CRD ERR	Option Card failure	2	B
ERR xyy DISCNCT	Card disconnect	2	A
ERR xyy DTR AIS	Digital trunk AIS reception	2	C
ERR xyy DTR FRM	Digital trunk frame failure	2	C
ERR xyy DTR RAI	Digital trunk RAI reception	2	C
ERR xyy DTR SYC	Digital trunk out of synchronization	2	C
ERR xyy LPR RAM	Option Card RAM failure	2	B
ERR xyy LPR ROM	Option Card ROM failure	2	B
ERR xyye MODEM	Modem failure	2	B
ERR xyy OGM LOS	DISA OGM is lost	2	C
ERR xyy OPX POW	OPX power failure	2	C
ERR SMDR	Printer is not connected	2	A

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features **L**

## [Legend]

### Indications

- x : Shelf Number ( 1-3)
- yy : Slot Number (01-14)
- e : Error Number

### Priority

- 1 : Major Error
- 2 : Minor Error

### Alarm LED

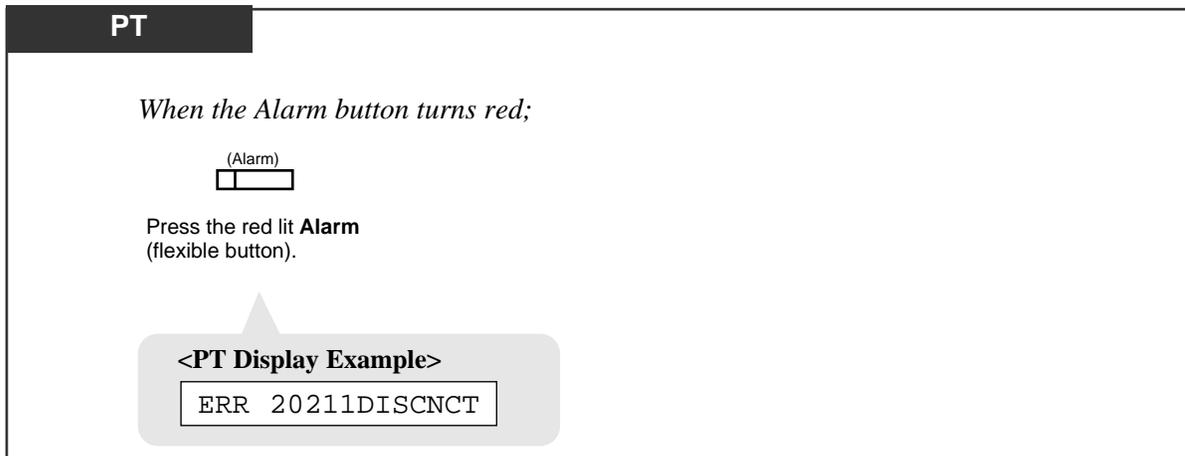
(When a problem occurs)

- A : LED on PT/Top Shelf -----OFF / ON  
The corresponding error indication will be displayed on the LCD by pressing the red lit Alarm button.
- B : LED on PT/Top Shelf/Card -----OFF / ON  
The corresponding error indication will be displayed on the LCD automatically.
- C : LED on PT/Top Shelf -----OFF (no change)  
The contents of the error will be printed out by SMDR.

(When the problem is solved)

- A : LED on PT-----ON (no change)  
LED on Top Shelf/Card -----ON / OFF
- B : LED on PT/Top Shelf -----ON / OFF

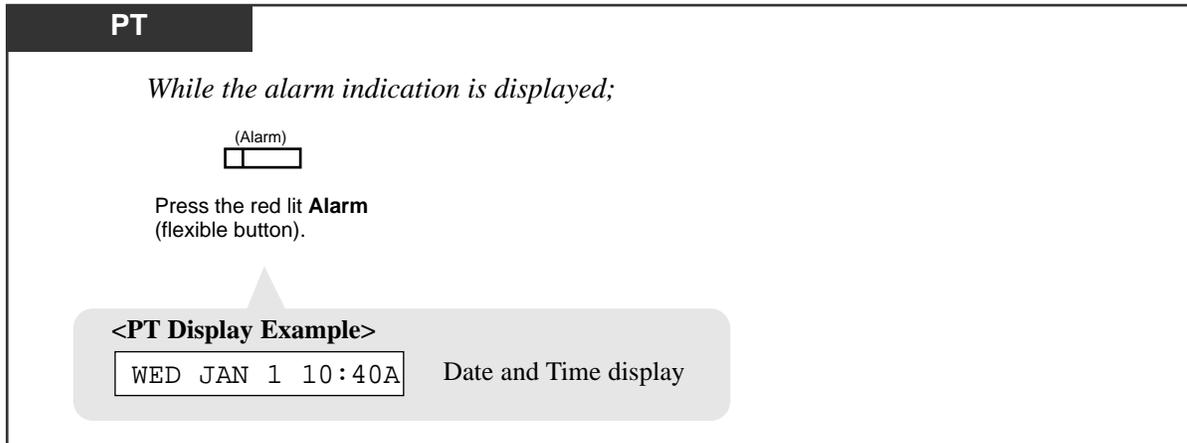
### *Displaying an alarm indication*



# L 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

---

## Clearing the alarm indication



## Conditions

- **Alarm button assignment**  
Alarm button can be assigned to a flexible CO button on PT by Station, User or System Programming.
- **Alarm LED indication**  
Major alarm (Priority 1) – Red moderate flash  
Minor alarm (Priority 2) – Red On
- If multiple errors occur at a time, only the error with highest priority will be displayed by pressing the red lit Alarm button.

## Programming References

- System Programming (Section 2)  
Flexible button assignment — Alarm button
- User Programming (Section 3)  
[005] Flexible CO Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4  
4.4.2 Line - Extension Line  
— Flexible CO Key Assignment

## Feature References

None

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features O

## Outgoing Message (OGM) Record/Playback

The Manager and the Operators can record and play back outgoing voice messages.

### Recording a message

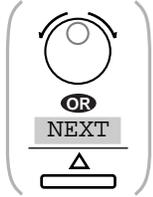
7235 / 7436



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **Features**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** or press **NEXT** until the following is displayed.



Press **OGM Recording (->1-8)**.

OGM Group no.

Enter OGM Group number (1 through 8).



Confirmation tone



Record a message (up to 30 seconds).

AUTO DIAL  
 STORE

Press **STORE** or wait until a maximum recording time (30 seconds) has elapsed.

**<PT Display Example>**

OGM 2
Rec.: 00

Time counter (seconds)

OGM group number selected (1 through 8)

- The STORE indicator light flashes red slowly. Recording starts after the confirmation tone.

**<PT Display Example>**

OGM 2
Play: 28

- The recording is stopped and STORE indicator light turns steady red.
- The recorded message will be played back automatically.



Confirmation tone

AUTO DIAL  
 STORE

Press **STORE** or wait until playback is finished.



Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- The STORE indicator light turns off.

Station Features and Operation 4-213

# O 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Recording a message

7431



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **MODE** until “Feature Access” is displayed.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until “OGM Record” is displayed.



Press **SELECT**.



Enter OGM Group number (1 through 8).



Confirmation tone



Record a message (up to 30 seconds).



Press **STORE** or wait until a maximum recording time (30 seconds) has elapsed.

**<PT Display Example>**

OGM 2
Rec. : 00

Time counter (seconds)

OGM group number selected (1 through 8)

- The STORE indicator light flashes red slowly. Recording starts after the confirmation tone.

- The recording is stopped and STORE indicator light turns steady red.
- The recorded message will be played back automatically.

**<PT Display Example>**

OGM 2
Play : 28



Confirmation tone



Press **STORE** or wait until playback is finished.



Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- The STORE indicator light turns off.

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features 0

## Recording a message

7433



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **SHIFT** until "FEAT" is displayed.



Press **FEAT**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "OGM Record" is at the arrow.



Press **SEL**.

OGM Group no.

Enter OGM Group number (1 through 8).



Confirmation tone



Record a message (up to 30 seconds).



Press **STORE** or wait until a maximum recording time (30 seconds) has elapsed.

**<PT Display Example>**

OGM 2
Rec. : 00

Time counter (seconds)

OGM group number selected (1 through 8)

- The STORE indicator light flashes red slowly. Recording starts after the confirmation tone.

**<PT Display Example>**

OGM 2
Play: 28

- The recording is stopped and STORE indicator light turns steady red.
- The recorded message will be played back automatically.



Confirmation tone



Press **STORE** or wait until playback is finished.



Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

- The STORE indicator light turns off.

### Recording a message

Any Telephone



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

3	6	1
---	---	---

Dial 361.

OGM Group no.
---------------

Enter OGM Group number (1 through 8).



Confirmation tone



Record a message (up to 30 seconds).

**<PT Display Example>**

OGM 2	Rec. : 00
-------	-----------

Time counter (seconds)

OGM group number selected (1 through 8)

- The STORE indicator light flashes red slowly. Recording starts after the confirmation tone.

AUTO DIAL
<div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 10px; margin: 0 auto;"></div>
STORE

Press **STORE** or wait until a maximum recording time (30 seconds) has elapsed.



Confirmation tone

**<PT Display Example>**

OGM 2	Play: 28
-------	----------

- The recording is stopped and STORE indicator light turns steady red.
- The recorded message will be played back automatically.

AUTO DIAL
<div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 10px; margin: 0 auto;"></div>
STORE

Press **STORE** or wait until playback is finished



Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

- The STORE indicator light turns off.

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features O

## Playing back a message

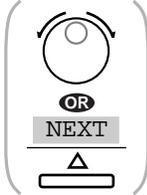
7235 / 7436



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **Features**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** or press **NEXT** until the following is displayed.



Press **OGM Playback** (→1-8)

OGM Group no.

Enter OGM Group number (1 through 8).



Confirmation tone



Press **STORE** or wait until playback is finished.



Confirmation tone

- The STORE indicator light turns off.

**<PT Display Example>**

OGM 1      Play:28

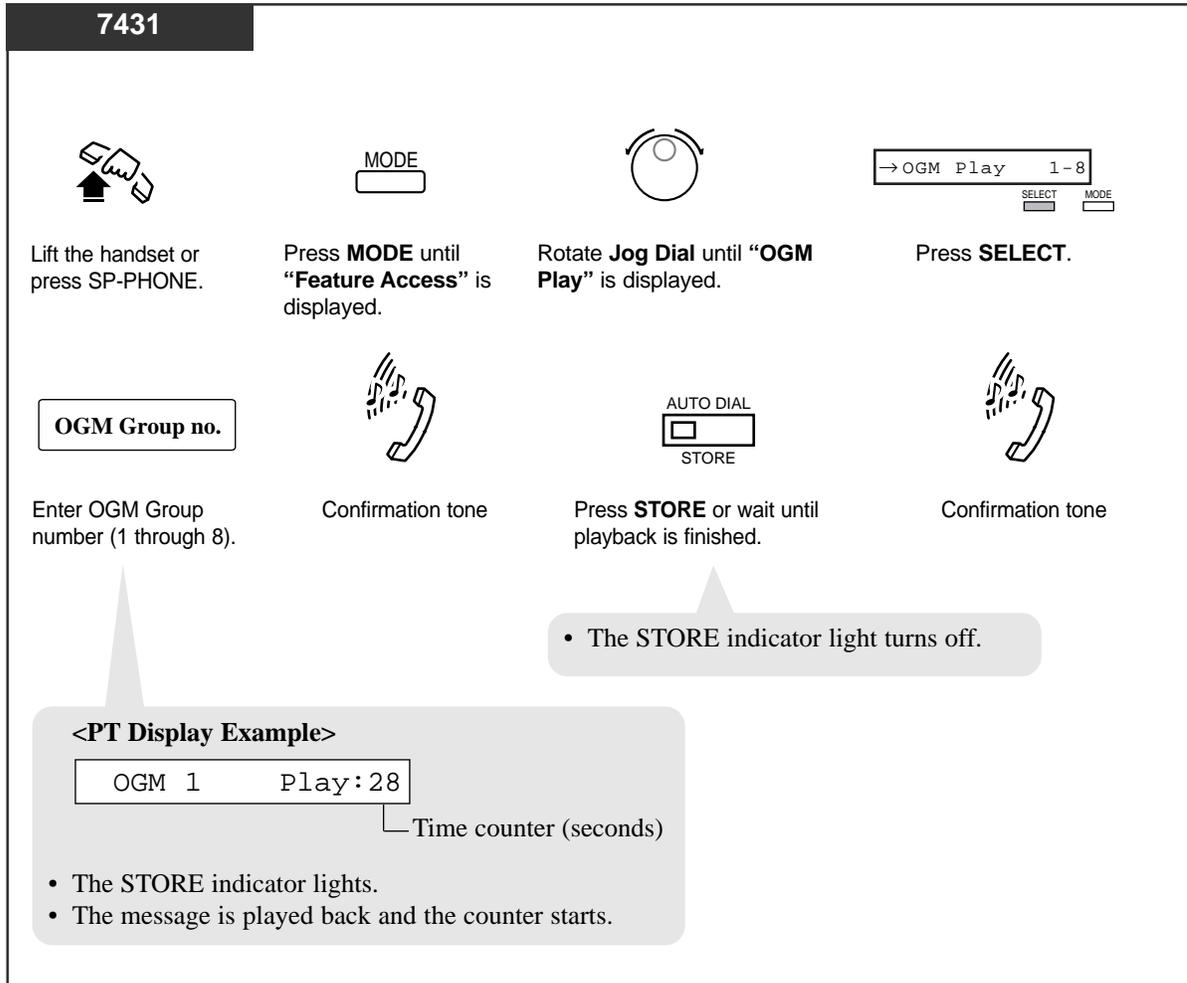
└─ Time counter (seconds)

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The message is played back and the counter starts.

# O 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Playing back a message

**7431**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Press **MODE** until “**Feature Access**” is displayed.

Rotate **Jog Dial** until “**OGM Play**” is displayed.

Press **SELECT**.

Enter OGM Group number (1 through 8).

Confirmation tone

Press **STORE** or wait until playback is finished.

Confirmation tone

- The STORE indicator light turns off.

**<PT Display Example>**

OGM 1      Play: 28

Time counter (seconds)

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The message is played back and the counter starts.

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features O

## Playing back a message

7433



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **SHIFT** until “FEAT” is displayed.



Press **FEAT**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until “OGM Play” is at the arrow.



Press **SEL**.



Enter OGM Group number (1 through 8).



Confirmation tone



Press **STORE** or wait until playback is finished.



Confirmation tone

• The STORE indicator light turns off.

**<PT Display Example>**

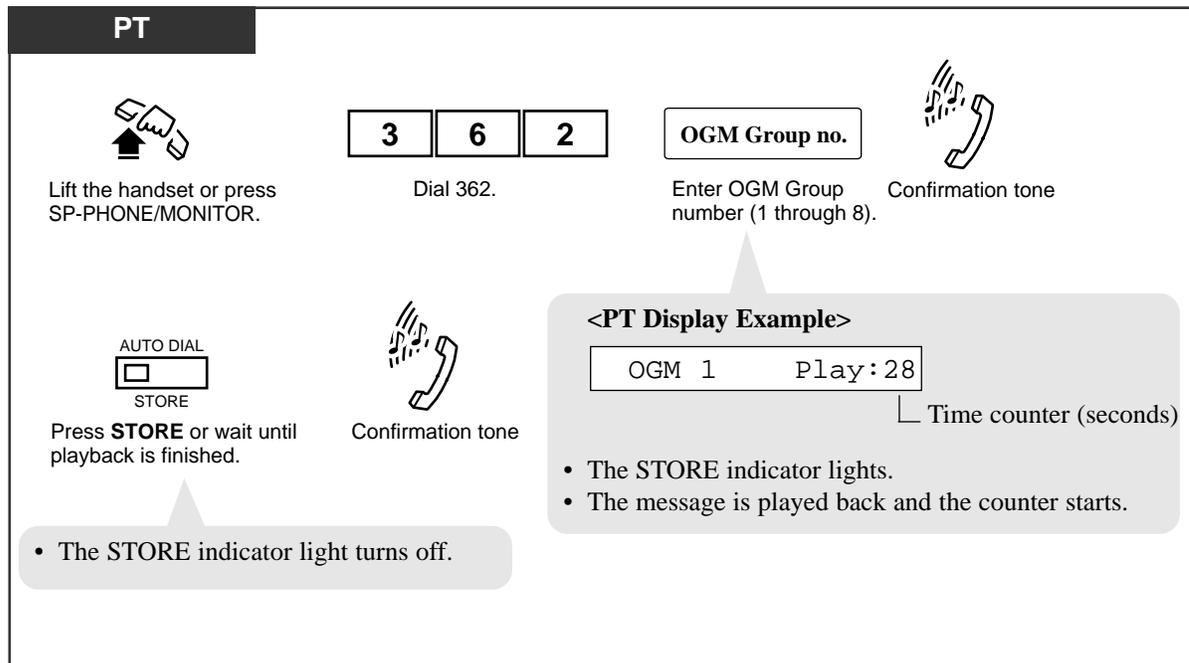
OGM 1      Play: 28

└─ Time counter (seconds)

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The message is played back and the counter starts.

# O 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Playing back a message



## Conditions

- The following three types of outgoing messages can be recorded.
  - DISA message:**  
This message is played when an outside caller accesses the system via DISA line.
  - Timed Reminder (wake-up) message:**  
This message is used in Timed Reminder. When answering the Timed Reminder alarm (often used as a wake-up call), the extension user will hear this message.
  - UCD (Uniform Call Distribution) message:**  
This message is played to the outside callers in conjunction with UCD feature.
- **OGM Type**  
OGM Type is decided on an OGM Group basis by System Programming.
- A maximum recording time for each OGM is 30 seconds.
- **Hardware Requirements**  
A DISA card (KX-T96191) is required to record an OGM.  
Up to eight DISA cards can be installed in the system.
- **OGM Group**  
Recording of OGM is performed per OGM Group (1-8) which consists of one or more DISA cards. Up to eight OGM Groups are available in the system.  
Before recording your OGM, you must assign its OGM Group No. to a physical card (DISA Port Assignment).
- **Tenant Service**  
If Tenant Service is employed, the affiliation of OGM Group should be decided by System Programming.

## 4.4 *Operator / Manager Service Features* **O**

---

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.1 System - Tenant
    - Manager Extension DN
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (41) OGM Playback/Record
  - 4.3.5 Group - OGM Group
    - FDN
    - Tenant No.
    - OGM Type

### *Feature References*

Direct Inward System Access (DISA)  
OGM Group (→ see Features Guide)  
Timed Reminder (Wake-Up Call)  
Extension Group – Uniform Call Distribution (UCD) Group (→ see Features Guide)

# R 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Remote DND (Do Not Disturb) Control

The Manager and the Operators can set/cancel the DND feature to other extensions.

### Setting/Canceling

7235 / 7436

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Press **Features**.

Rotate **Jog Dial** or press **NEXT** until the following is displayed.

Press **Remote DND (→ext)**.

Press **Remote DND**.

destination extension no.

Dial the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits).

Confirmation tone

Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

<PT Display Example>

DND Set : EXXXX (When setting)

or

DND Cancel : EXXXX (When canceling)

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features R

## Setting/Canceling

7431



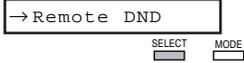
Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **MODE** until "Feature Access" is displayed.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "Remote DND" is displayed.



Press **SELECT**.

desired extension no.

Dial desired extension number (3 or 4 digits).



Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

DND Set : EXXXX

(When setting)

or

DND Cancel : EXXXX

(When canceling)

# R 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Setting/Canceling

**7433**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



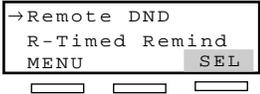
Press **SHIFT** until “FEAT” is displayed.



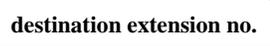
Press **FEAT**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until “Remote DND” is at the arrow.



Press **SEL**.



Dial the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits).

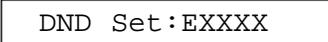


Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**



(When setting)

or



(When canceling)

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.



Dial 722.



Dial the destination extension number (3 or 4 digits).

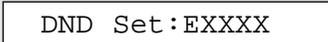


Confirmation tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**<PT Display Example>**



(When setting)

or



(When canceling)

## 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features **R**

### Remote FWD (Call Forwarding) Cancel – Once

The Manager and the Operators can ring an extension that has set Call Forwarding.

#### Canceling FWD temporarily

7235 / 7436

Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Press **Features**.

Rotate **Jog Dial** or press **NEXT** until the following is displayed.

Press **FWD Cancel Once**.

**desired extension no.**

Dial desired extension number (3 or 4 digits).

Ringback tone

- Ringing starts at the destination extension.

# R 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Canceling FWD temporarily

**7431**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **MODE** until "Feature Access" is displayed.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "FWD Cancel Once" is displayed.



Press **SELECT**.



Ringback tone

**desired extension no.**

Dial desired extension number (3 or 4 digits).

- Ringing starts at the destination extension.

**7433**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



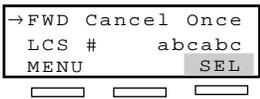
Press **SHIFT** until "FEAT" is displayed.



Press **FEAT**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "FWD Cancel Once" is at the arrow.



Press **SEL**.



Ringback tone

**desired extension no.**

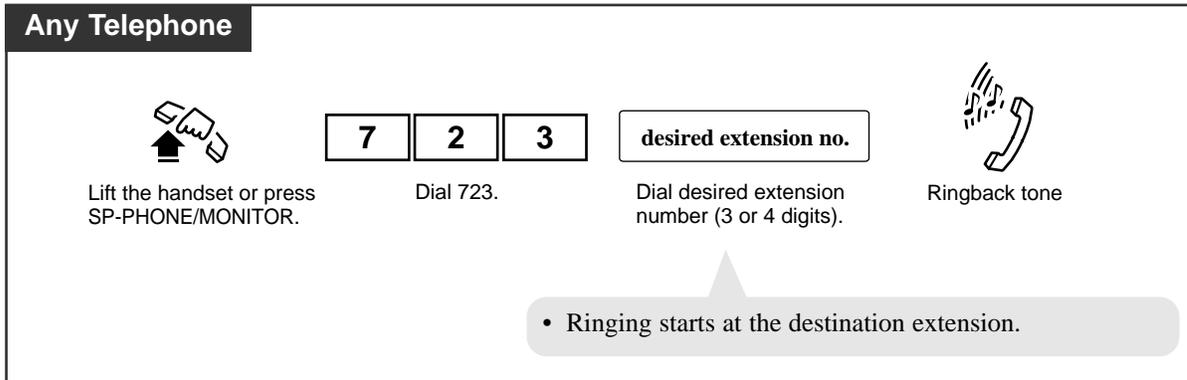
Dial desired extension number (3 or 4 digits).

- Ringing starts at the destination extension.

## 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features **R**

### Canceling FWD temporarily

**Any Telephone**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

Dial 723.

Dial desired extension number (3 or 4 digits).

Ringback tone

- Ringing starts at the destination extension.

# R 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Remote Station Lock Control

The Manager and the Operators can remotely lock or unlock any extension. To lock an extension, you can select to lock outside calls or intercom calls.

### Programming

The diagram illustrates the programming steps for Remote Station Lock Control. It is titled "PT" in a black box at the top left. The steps are as follows:

- Step 1:** Press **PROGRAM**. Dial 99. Dial 01. Dial the extension number (3 or 4 digits) or \*.
  - extension no. or \*

Press **PROGRAM**. Dial 99. Dial 01. Dial the extension number (3 or 4 digits) or \*.

  - extension number: to clear one extension
  - \* : to clear all extensions

**<PT Display Example>**  
PT-PGM Mode

**<PT Display Example>**  
EXT NO? →
- Step 2:** Dial 1 or 2 or 3. Press **STORE**. Press **PROGRAM** to exit the Station Programming mode.
  - 1 or 2 or 3
  - AUTO DIAL STORE
  - Press **PROGRAM** to exit the Station Programming mode.

Dial 1 or 2 or 3.

  - 1 : to unlock
  - 2 : to lock outside calls
  - 3 : to lock intercom calls (except operator calls)

**<PT Display Example>**  
1234:CO Lock

**<PT Display Example>**  
• The STORE indicator lights.

### Conditions

- This feature supersedes the “Electronic Station Lockout” feature. If “Electronic Station Lockout” has already been set by the extension user and this feature is set, the extension user cannot cancel the lock. Only the Manager and the Operators can cancel the lock.
- “Operator Call” is always available from any extension whether it is locked or not.

### Feature References

Electronic Station Lockout

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features T

## Timed Reminder, Remote (Wake-Up Call)

The Manager and the Operators can remotely set or cancel the Timed Reminder to the desired extension.

### Setting

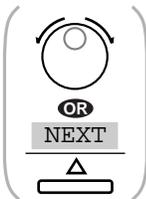
7235 / 7436



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **Features**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** or press **NEXT** until the following is displayed.



Press **Remote Timed Reminder**.

<PT Display Example>

Extension #:

extension no. or (DSS)

Dial the desired extension number (3 or 4 digits) or press **DSS** (flexible button).

S1 S2 S3 NEXT

Press **NEXT (S3)**.

hour 0 or 1 minute 0 or 1

Enter the hour (01 through 12). Enter the minute (00 through 59). For AM: Dial 0. For PM: Dial 1.

<PT Display Example>

Extension #:xxxx — (xxxx: extension number)

Time(hh:mm) : :

AM/PM(0/1) :

Daily Y/N(1/0):0

0 or 1

For one time alarm\*<sup>1</sup>: Dial 0. For daily alarm\*<sup>2</sup>: Dial 1.

S1 S2 S3 PRG

Press **PRG (S3)**.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

\*<sup>1</sup> You hear an alarm ringing at the preset time and then the setting is cleared.

\*<sup>2</sup> You hear an alarm ringing daily at the preset time until the setting is changed or canceled.

# T 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Setting

7431



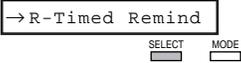
Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **MODE** until "Feature Access" is displayed.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "R-Timed Remind" is displayed.



Press **SELECT**.

1

Dial 1.

extension no.

 or (DSS)  

Dial the desired extension number (3 or 4 digits) or press **DSS** (flexible button).

hour

Enter the hour (01 through 12).

minute

Enter the minute (00 through 59).

0

 or 

1

For AM: Dial 0.  
For PM: Dial 1.

0

 or 

1

For one time alarm\*<sup>1</sup>: Dial 0.  
For daily alarm\*<sup>2</sup>: Dial 1.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

\*<sup>1</sup> You hear an alarm ringing at the preset time and then the setting is cleared.  
 \*<sup>2</sup> You hear an alarm ringing daily at the preset time until the setting is changed or canceled.

**<PT Display Example>**

Alarm    01:00AM\*

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features T

## Setting

7433



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



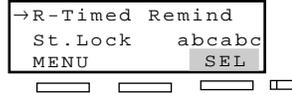
Press **SHIFT** until "FEAT" is displayed.



Press **FEAT**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "R-Timed Remind" is at the arrow.



Press **SEL**.

1

Dial 1.

extension no.

 or 

(DSS)

Dial the desired extension number (3 or 4 digits) or press **DSS** (flexible button).

hour

Enter the hour (01 through 12).

minute

Enter the minute (00 through 59).

0

 or 

1

For AM: Dial 0.  
For PM: Dial 1.

0

 or 

1

For one time alarm\*<sup>1</sup>: Dial 0.  
For daily alarm\*<sup>2</sup>: Dial 1.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

\*<sup>1</sup> You hear an alarm ringing at the preset time and then the setting is cleared.  
\*<sup>2</sup> You hear an alarm ringing daily at the preset time until the setting is changed or canceled.

<PT Display Example>

Alarm    01:00AM\*

# T 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Setting

Any Telephone



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7

\*

1

Dial 7\*1.

extension no.

 or 

(DSS)

hour

Enter the hour (01 through 12).

minute

Enter the minute (00 through 59).

0

 or 

1

For AM: Dial 0.  
For PM: Dial 1.

0

 or 

1

For a one time alarm\*<sup>1</sup>: Dial 0.  
For a daily alarm\*<sup>2</sup>: Dial 1.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

\*<sup>1</sup> You hear an alarm ringing at the preset time and then the setting is cleared.  
\*<sup>2</sup> You hear an alarm ringing daily at the preset time until the setting is changed or canceled.

<PT Display Example>

Alarm 01:00AM\*

## Canceling

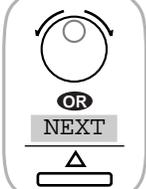
7235 / 7436



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Features

Press **Features**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** or press **NEXT** until the following is displayed.

Remote Timed Reminder

Press **Remote Timed Reminder**.

<PT Display Example>

Extension #:

extension no.

 or 

(DSS)

NEXT

Press **NEXT (S3)**.

CLR

Press **CLR (S2)**.



Confirmation tone

<PT Display Example>

Extension #:1234  
 Time(hh:mm):07:00  
 AM/PM(0/1) :0  
 Daily Y/N(1/0):0

Hang up or press the SP-PHONE.

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features T

## Canceling

7431



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

MODE



Rotate **Jog Dial** until “**R-Timed Remind**” is displayed.

→ R-Timed Remind

SELECT  MODE

Press **SELECT**.

0

Dial 0.

extension no. or  (DSS)

Dial the desired extension number (3 or 4 digits) or press **DSS** on which you have set the Timed Reminder.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press the SP-PHONE.

<PT Display Example>

Alarm Cancelled

# T 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Canceling

7433



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



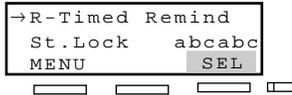
Press **SHIFT** until “FEAT” is displayed.



Press **FEAT**.



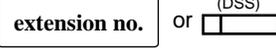
Rotate **Jog Dial** until “R-Timed Remind” is at the arrow.



Press **SEL**.



Dial 0.



Dial the desired extension number (3 or 4 digits) or press **DSS** on which you have set the Timed Reminder.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press the SP-PHONE.

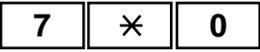
<PT Display Example>



Any Telephone



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.



Dial 7\*0.



Dial the desired extension number (3 or 4 digits) or press **DSS** on which you have set the Timed Reminder.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

<PT Display Example>



## 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features T

### Checking the time setting

#### Display PT



Lift the handset or press  
SP-PHONE.

7	*	2
---	---	---

Dial 7\*2.

extension no.
---------------

 or 

(DSS)
-------



Hang up or press  
SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

- If “10:10” has been set, the display shows;

Alarm 10:10AM	—— only one time
---------------	------------------

**or**

Alarm 10:10AM*	—— daily
----------------	----------

**<PT Display Example>**

- If time setting is not stored:

Alarm Not Stored
------------------

### Conditions

- The system clock must be set correctly beforehand.
- There is no limit to the number of the extensions who can set the Timed Reminder at the same time.
- Only the latest time setting is valid at the extension whether it was set by the extension user (Timed Reminder) or by the Manager extension or an Operator (Timed Reminder, Remote).
- **Station Message Detail Recording (SMDR)**  
SMDR automatically records the detailed Timed Reminder information (date, time, extension number, start/no answer). It is programmable to be printed out when the Timed Reminder starts and the alarm is not answered. Refer to “Station Message Detail Recording (SMDR)” in the Features Guide for further information.

### Programming References

- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [005] Date and Time Set
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (57) Timed Reminder, Remote
  - 4.10.2 Maintenance - SMDR
    - Print out No Answer of Timed Reminder information
  - 4.10.5 Maintenance - System Time
    - System Time

### Feature References

Timed Reminder (Wake-Up Call)

# T 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Trunk Busy-out Setting

Allows the Manager and the Operators to busy out a trunk.

### Setting / Canceling

**7235 / 7436**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **Features**.

To set:  **BSY Out Set (→PHY)**

Press **BSY Out Set**.

To cancel:  **BSY Out Cancel (→PHY)**

Press **BSY Out Cancel**.

**trunk port physical no.**

Enter the trunk port physical number.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:  

B.Out 10201
- When canceling:  

B.Out Cancelled

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features T

## Setting / Canceling

7431



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **MODE** until "Feature Access" is displayed.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until the following is displayed.

To set: →BSY Out Set

SELECT    MODE

Press **SELECT**.

To cancel: →BSY Out Cancel

SELECT    MODE

Press **SELECT**.

trunk port physical no.

Enter the trunk port physical number.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:

B.Out
10201

- When canceling:

B.Out
Cancelled

# T 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Setting / Canceling

7433



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **SHIFT** until "FEAT" is displayed.



Press **FEAT**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until the following is displayed.

To set:

→BSY Out Set  
 BSY Ovr DNY 1/0  
 MENU SEL

Press **SEL**.

trunk port physical no.

Enter the trunk port physical number.

To cancel:

→BSY Out Cancel  
 BSY Out Confirm  
 MENU SEL

Press **SEL**.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:  

B.Out 10201
- When canceling:  

B.Out Cancelled

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features T

## Setting / Canceling

Any Telephone



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7	2	6	1	To set.
7	2	6	0	

To set: Dial 7261.  
To cancel: Dial 7260.

trunk port physical no.

Enter the trunk port physical number.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:  

B.Out      10201
- When canceling:  

B.Out Cancelled

## Confirming

7235 / 7436



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.

Features

Press **Features**.

BSY Out Confirm (→PHY)

Press **BSY Out Confirm**.

trunk port physical no.

Enter the trunk port physical number



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:  

B.Out      10201
- When no setting:  

B.Out      None

# T 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Confirming

7431



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **MODE** until “**Feature Access**” is displayed.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until “**BSY Out Confirm**” is displayed.



Press **SELECT**.

trunk port physical no.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

Enter the trunk port physical number

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:

B. Out
10201

- When no setting:

B. Out
None

## Confirming

7433



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



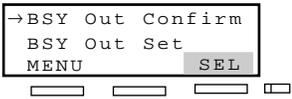
Press **SHIFT** until “**FEAT**” is displayed.



Press **FEAT**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until “**BSY Out Confirm**” is at the arrow.



Press **SEL**.

trunk port physical no.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE.

Enter the trunk port physical number

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:

B. Out
10201

- When no setting:

B. Out
None

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features **T**

## Confirming

### Display PT



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7	2	6	2
---	---	---	---

Dial 7262.

trunk port physical no.

Enter the trunk port physical number.



Confirmation tone and dial tone



Hang up or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

**<PT Display Example>**

- When setting:  

B.Out	10201
-------	-------
- When no setting:  

B.Out	None
-------	------

## Programming References

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (94) Trunk Busy-out
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (34) ELCOT/LCOT Busy-out Loop Relay
    - (35) GCOT Busy-out Loop Relay

## Feature References

None

# T 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features

## Trunk Route Control

Allows the Manager and the Operators to make a call using a specific trunk.  
They can verify the status of the specified trunk.

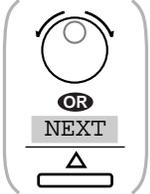
**7235 / 7436**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **Features**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** or press **NEXT** until the following is displayed.



Press **TRK Route CTL**.

**trunk port physical no.**



Dial tone

Enter the trunk port physical number.

**7431**



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **MODE** until "**Feature Access**" is displayed.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until "**TRK Route CTL**" is displayed.



Press **SELECT**.

**trunk port physical no.**



Dial tone

Enter the trunk port physical number.

# 4.4 Operator / Manager Service Features T

7433



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE.



Press **SHIFT** until “FEAT” is displayed.



Press **FEAT**.



Rotate **Jog Dial** until “TRK Route CTL” is at the arrow.



→TRK Route CTL  
UCD Monitor End  
MENU SEL

trunk port physical no.

Enter the trunk port physical number.



Dial tone

Press **SEL**.

Any Telephone



Lift the handset or press SP-PHONE/MONITOR.

7

2

4

Dial 724.

trunk port physical no.

Enter the trunk port physical number.



Dial tone

### Conditions

- This feature does not override Toll Restriction by COS or the Tenant Service.
- Redial does not work if a call has been made using this feature.

### Programming References

No programming required.

### Feature References

None

## 4.5

# Special Display Features

With the display telephone, KX-T7230, KX-T7235, KX-T7431, KX-T7433 or KX-T7436, you can easily access several features.

The display telephones have the ability to perform the following features.

Feature	KX-T7230	KX-T7235	KX-T7431	KX-T7433	KX-T7436
Call Forwarding / Do Not Disturb		✓			✓
Call Information Display	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Call Log, Incoming	✓	✓		✓	✓
Call Log Incoming, Log Lock	✓	✓		✓	✓
Call Log, Outgoing		✓			✓
Call Directory					
Extension Dialing		✓	✓	✓	✓
Station Speed Dialing		✓	✓	✓	✓
System Speed Dialing		✓	✓	✓	✓
System Feature Access Menu		✓	✓	✓	✓

“✓” indicates the feature is available.

### *Helpful Information about Display Operation*

Press **CONT** (S1) to adjust the display contrast.

Press **RING** (S2) to adjust the ringer volume.

Press **BGM** (S3) to turn on/off the BGM.

Press **MENU** (S1) to return to the initial display.

Press **PREV** (S2) to return to the previous display.

Press **NEXT** (S3) to advance to the next display.

Press **ACCNT** (S3) to enter an account code.

Press **CALL** (S3) to call the desired party.

Press **SELECT** (S3) to select the desired feature.

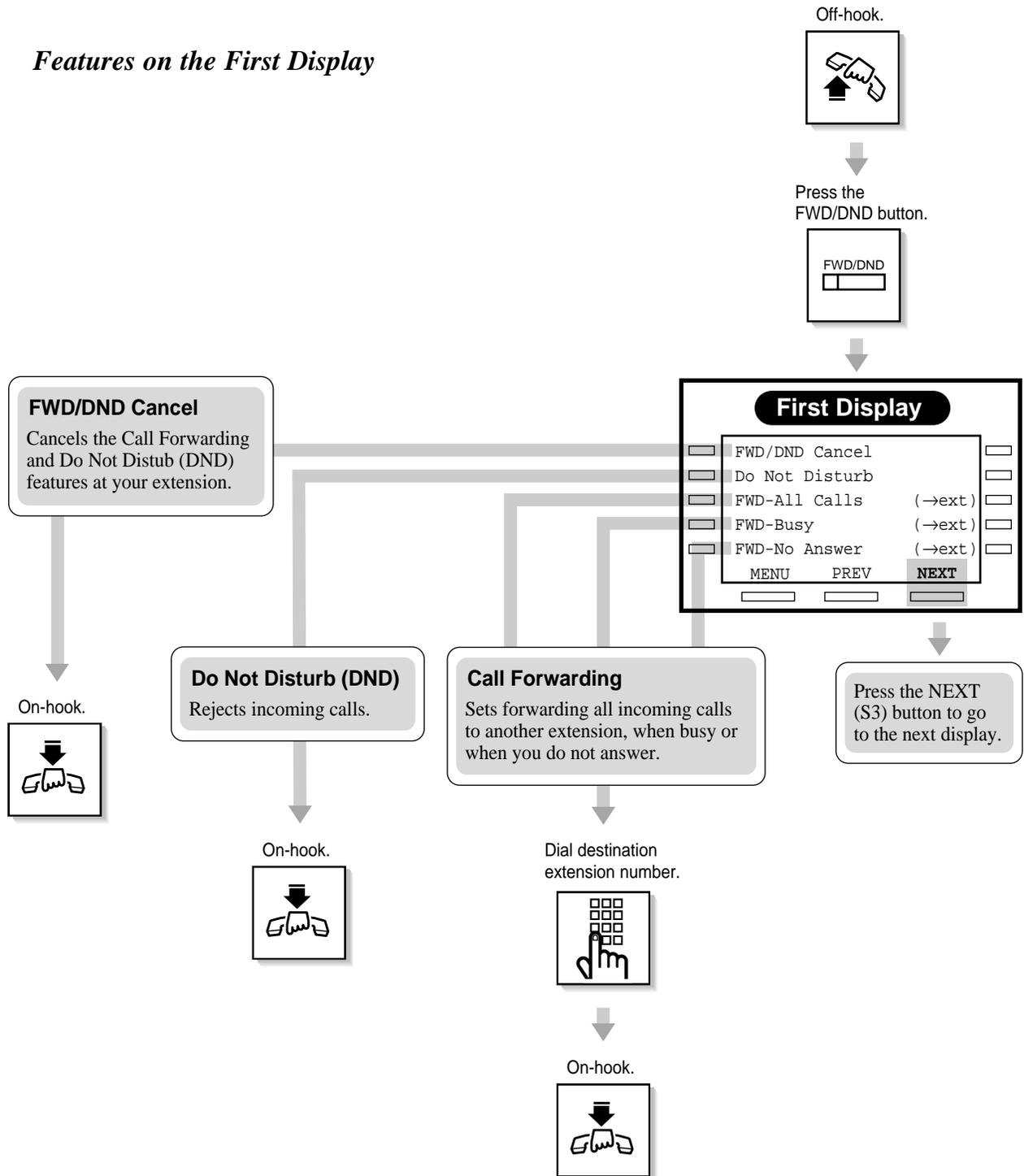
# 4.5

## Special Display Features

### Call Forwarding / Do Not Disturb (KX-T7436 / KX-T7235 only)

You can set or cancel the Call Forwarding and Do Not Disturb features using the display.

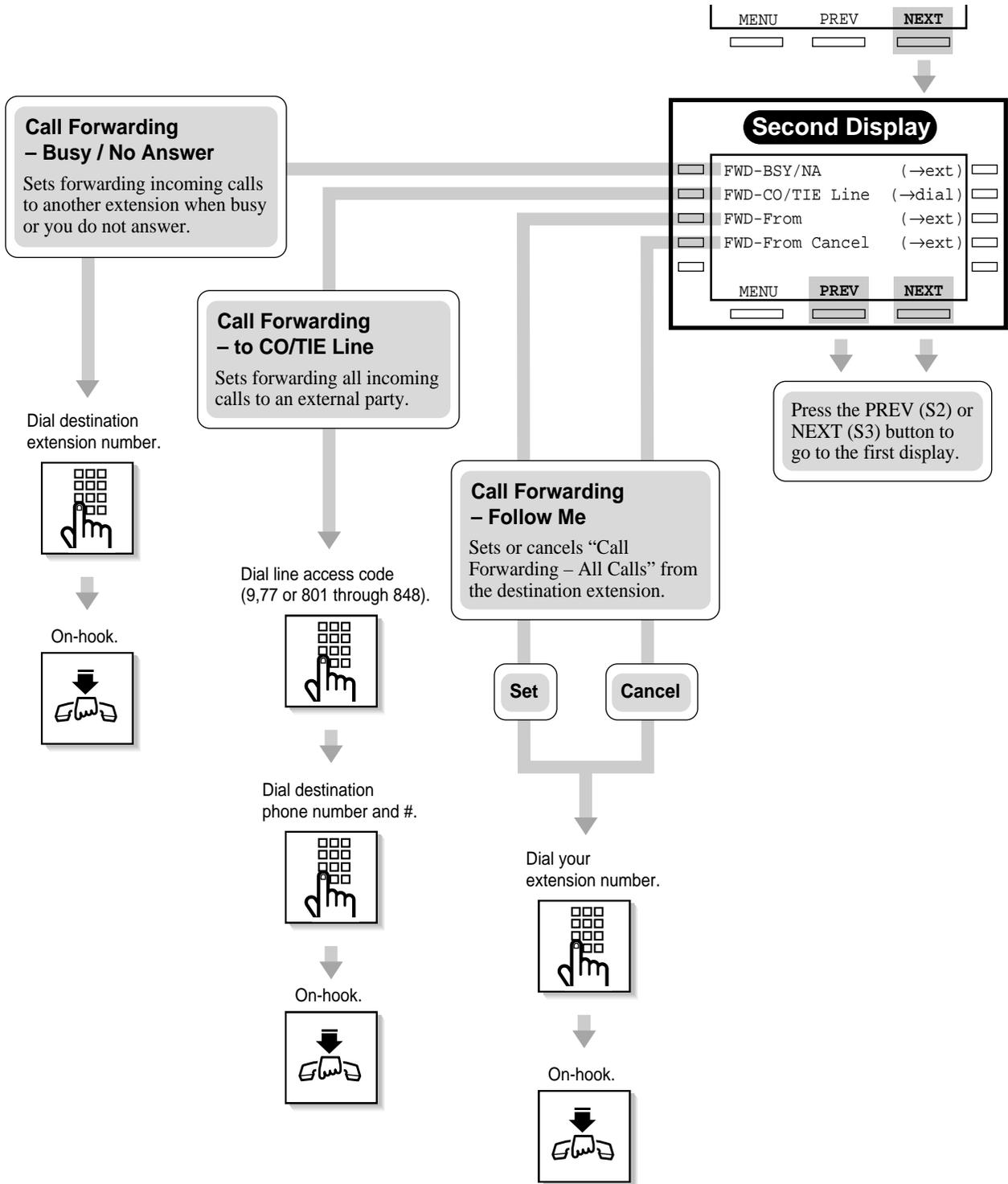
#### Features on the First Display



# 4.5

# Special Display Features

## Features on the Second Display

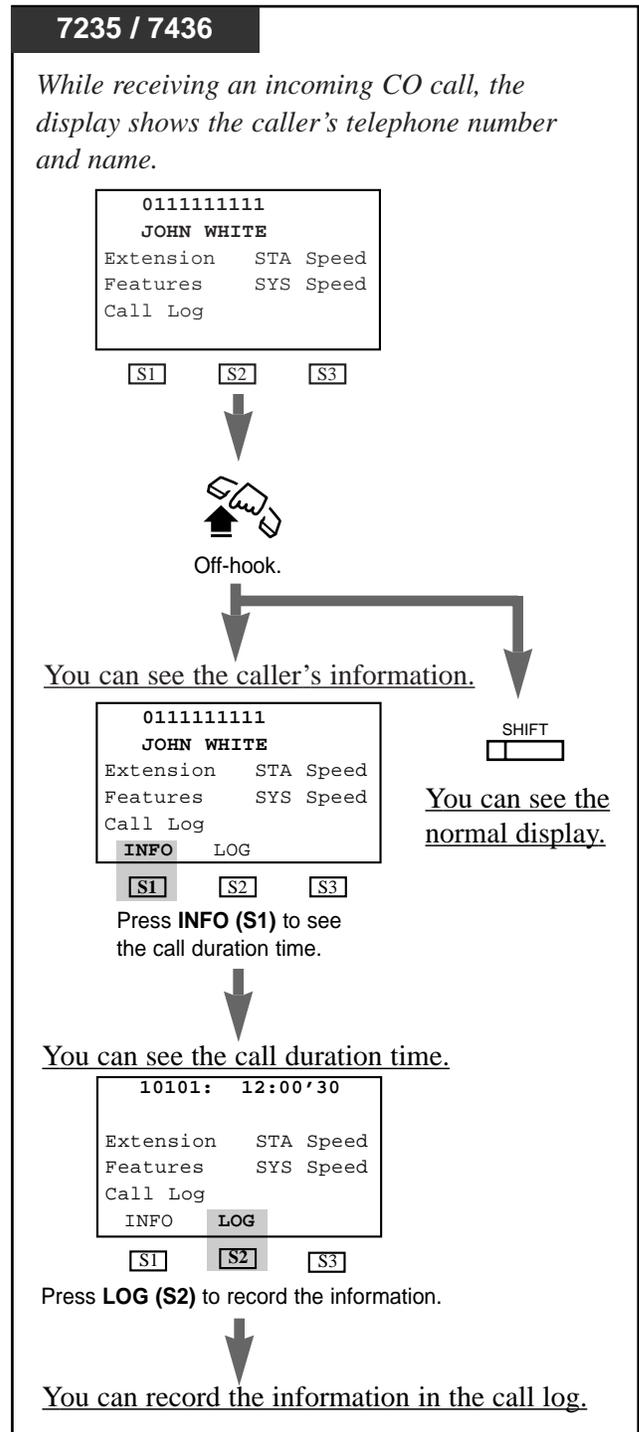
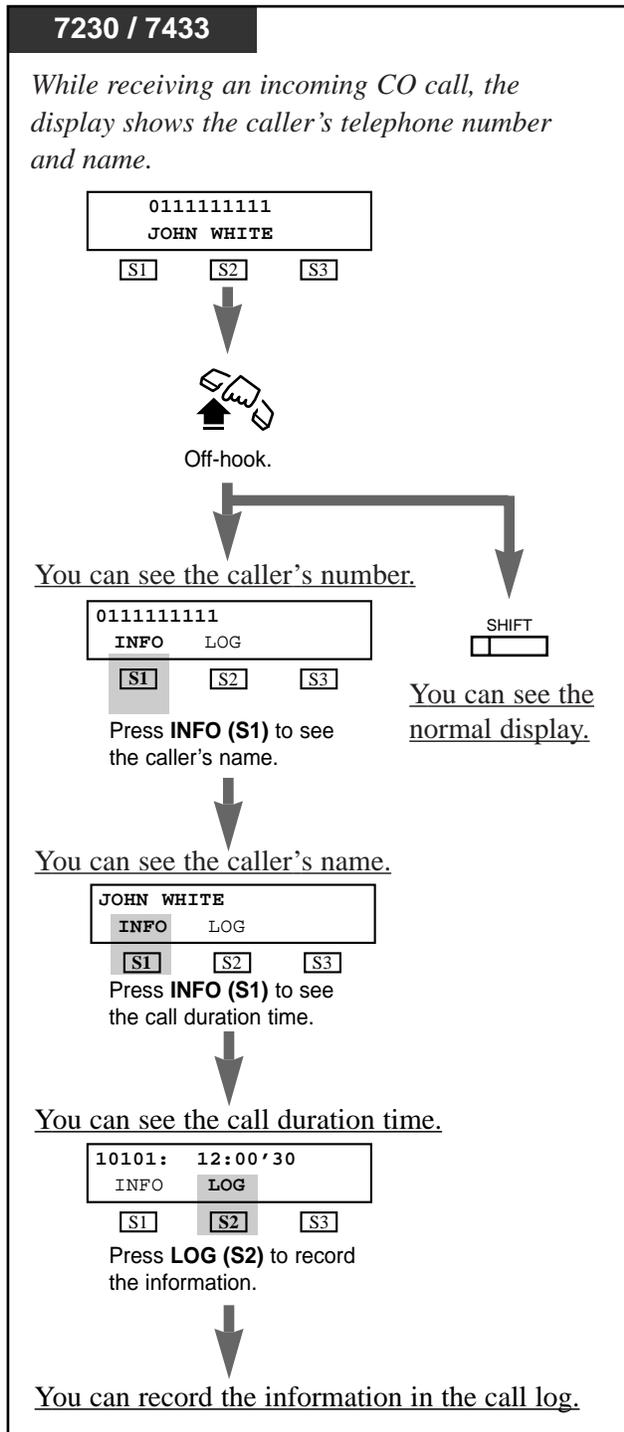


# 4.5

# Special Display Features

## Call Information Display (KX-T7436 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7235 / KX-T7230 only)

When receiving a call from the CO line assigned to receive Caller ID service\* calls, the caller's telephone number and name are displayed simultaneously. You can also record the information in the call log.



**Conditions**

- This feature is available for KX-T7230, KX-T7235, KX-T7433 and KX-T7436 only.
- The SHIFT indicator light may turn on when receiving a call. Pressing this button provides you with more information about the caller.
- If a CO line name is assigned, you can select either the initial display, Caller ID, or CO line name.
- You can modify the logged numbers for callback purpose. Refer to “Call Log, Incoming” feature.
- **Caller ID or Call Duration**  
You can specify the initial display, Caller ID or Call Duration, which is shown on the display PT when you answer a CO call.
- Call Information Display feature is also available for KX-T7431. However, the operation of KX-T7431 is different from that of KX-T7230, KX-T7235, KX-T7433 and KX-T7436. The KX-T7431 user can switch the display by pressing “\*” while receiving the Caller ID information.

**Programming References**

- Station Programming (Section 2.2)  
Initial Display Selection
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (37) LCD Display Mode while CO talking
  - 4.4.1 Line - Trunk Line
    - Name
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Initial Display Selection
  - 4.5.11 Features - Caller ID Registration
    - Name
    - Number

**Feature References**

- Call Log, Incoming (4.5/Special Display Features)
- Call Log Incoming, Log Lock (4.5/Special Display Features)

\* The Caller ID service provides you with a caller’s information, such as his/her name and telephone number, on the CO line assigned to receive Caller ID service calls. Refer to “Caller ID Service” in the Features Guide for further information.

# 4.5

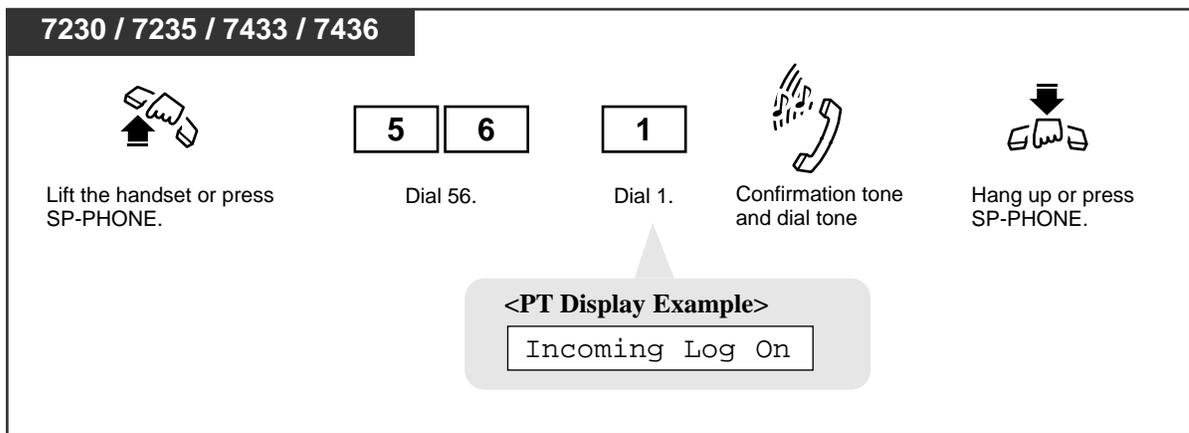
## Special Display Features

### Call Log, Incoming *(KX-T7436 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7235 / KX-T7230 only)*

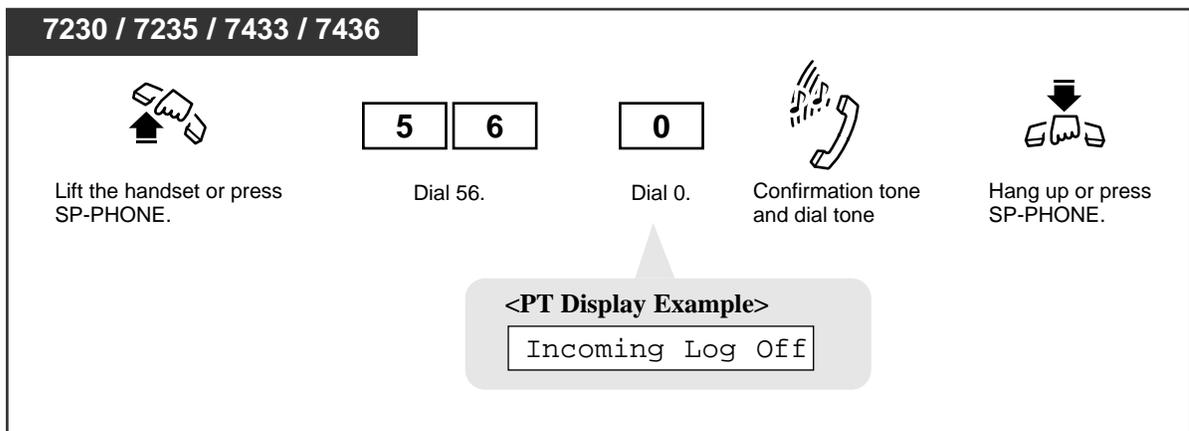
If you do not answer an incoming CO call, your extension automatically records the call information from the Caller ID service,\* and the SHIFT button indicator lights. Up to 30 calls can be logged per extension. When the call log is full (30 calls are stored), you can select how the 31st call is treated. Either a new call can be disregarded or the new call overwrites the oldest call. (Default:Record the new call.)

You can also modify the logged numbers for callback purpose.

#### Setting overwriting the call log



#### Canceling overwriting the call log (Disregarding the 31st call)



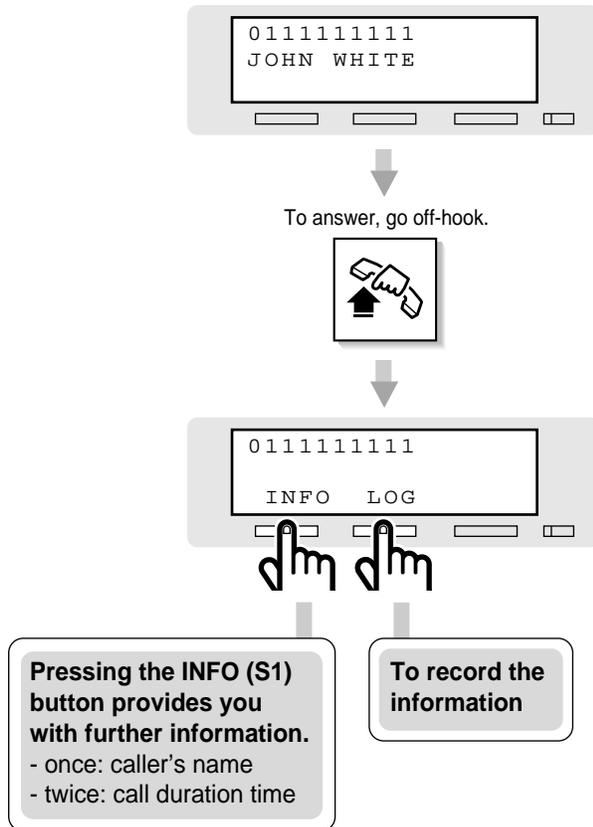
## 4.5

# Special Display Features

### Logging a call information while talking

#### ■ KX-T7433 / KX-T7230

While receiving an incoming CO call, the display shows the caller's telephone number and name.

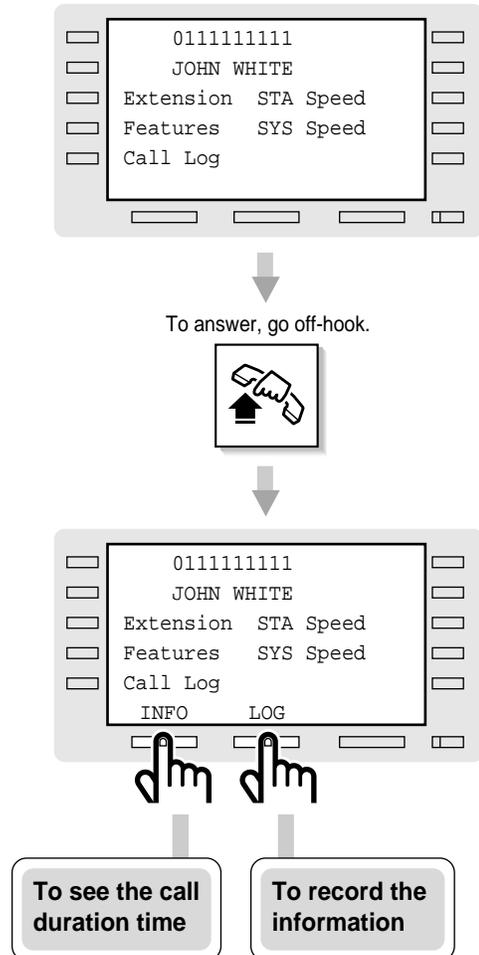


#### Operating sequence

1. To answer the call, **go off-hook**.
2. Press the **LOG** (S2) button to log the information. Or press the **INFO** (S1) button repeatedly to see the information in detail.

#### ■ KX-T7436 / KX-T7235

While receiving an incoming CO call, the display shows the caller's telephone number and name.



#### Notes

- Pressing the SHIFT button before answering a call provides you with more information about the caller, CO line number and/or name.
- You can select either the initial display, Caller ID or CO line name, by Station Programming.
- After going off-hook, you can press the SHIFT button to change the bottom line on the display as follows:

CONT EFA ACCNT

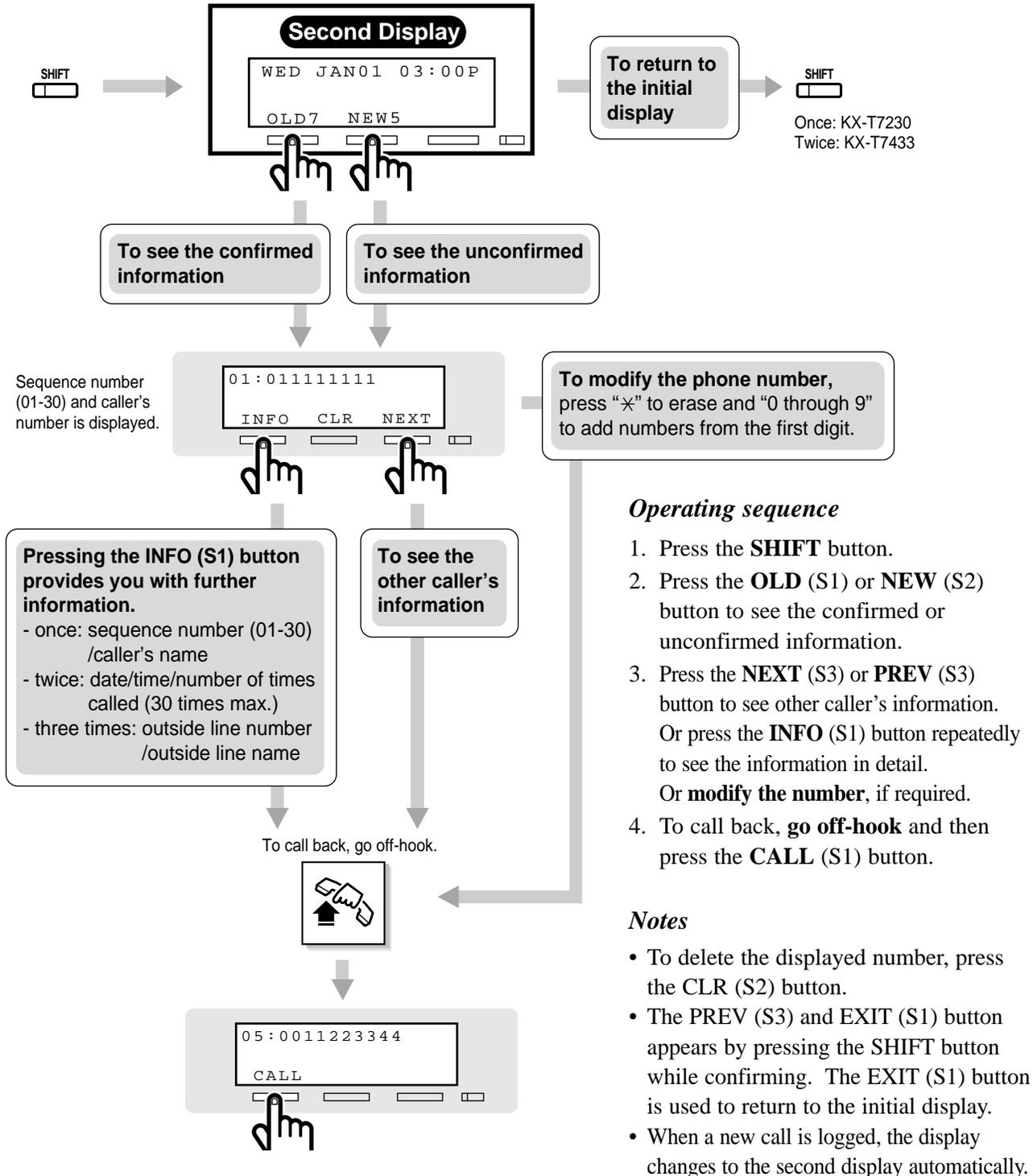
# 4.5

## Special Display Features

### Confirming and calling back

When the SHIFT indicator is red, there are calls logged.

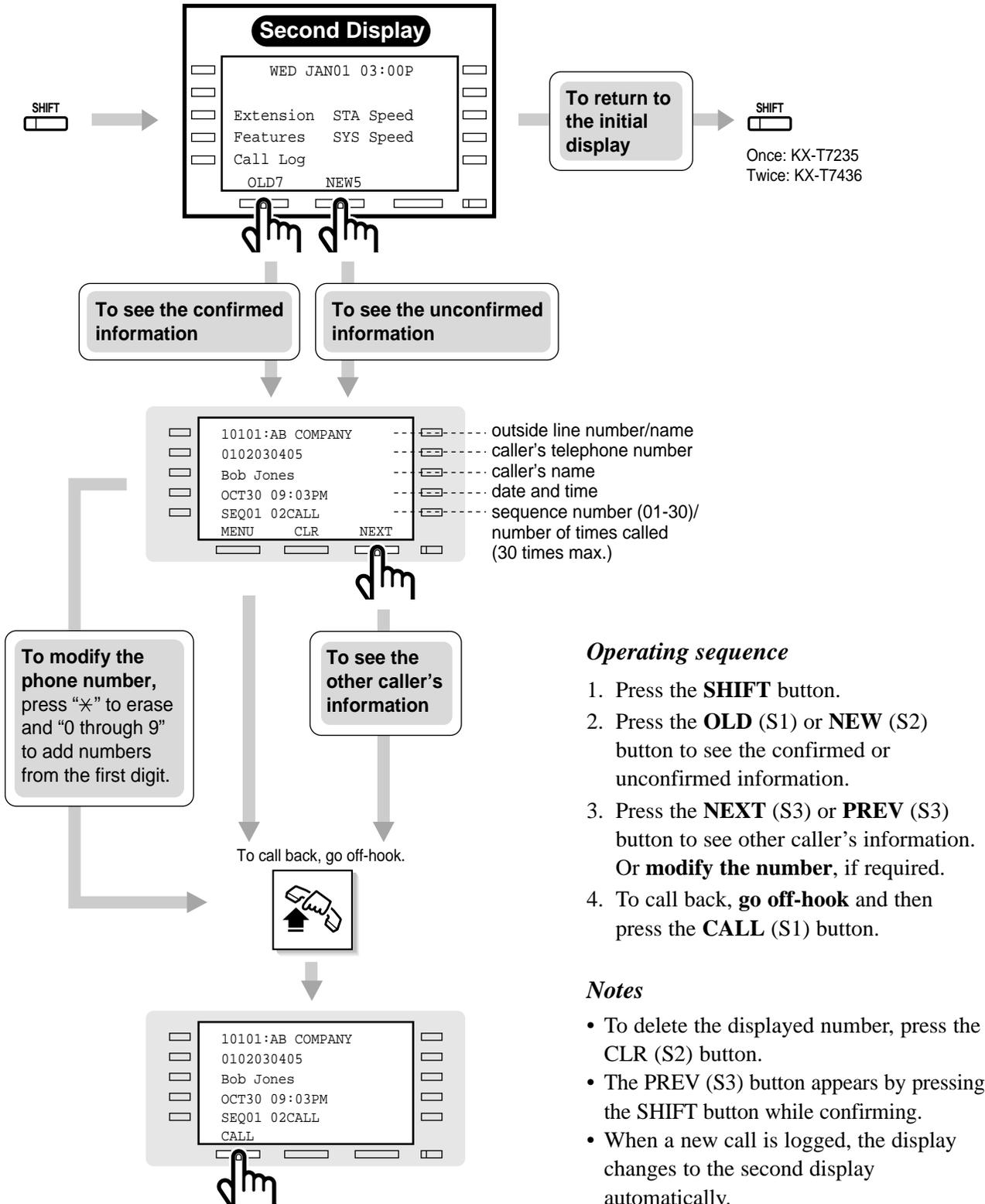
#### ■ KX-T7433 / KX-T7230



# 4.5

# Special Display Features

## ■ KX-T7436 / KX-T7235



## 4.5

# *Special Display Features*

---

### *Conditions*

- This feature is available for KX-T7230, KX-T7235, KX-T7433 and KX-T7436 only.
- If a Direct In Lines (DIL) 1 : 1 call is forwarded by Call Forwarding, the data will be logged at both the forwarding and forwarded extension.
- You can lock the display so that incoming call information is not shown on the display.
- If you modify the displayed telephone number, the new number will be memorized.
- With the KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can set or cancel overwriting the call log using the System Feature Access Menu (on the Fifth Display).

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2.2)
  - Initial Display Selection
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (55) Call Log Incoming, Overwrite Mode
  - 4.4.1 Line - Trunk Line
    - Name
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Display Mode of Incoming Call
  - 4.5.11 Features - Caller ID Registration
    - Name
    - Number

### *Feature References*

Call Log Incoming, Log Lock (4.5/Special Display Features)  
KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (4.5/Special Display Features)  
KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu  
(4.5/Special Display Features)

\* The Caller ID service provides you with a caller's information, such as his/her name and telephone number, on the CO line assigned to receive Caller ID service calls. Refer to "Caller ID Service" in the Features Guide for further information.

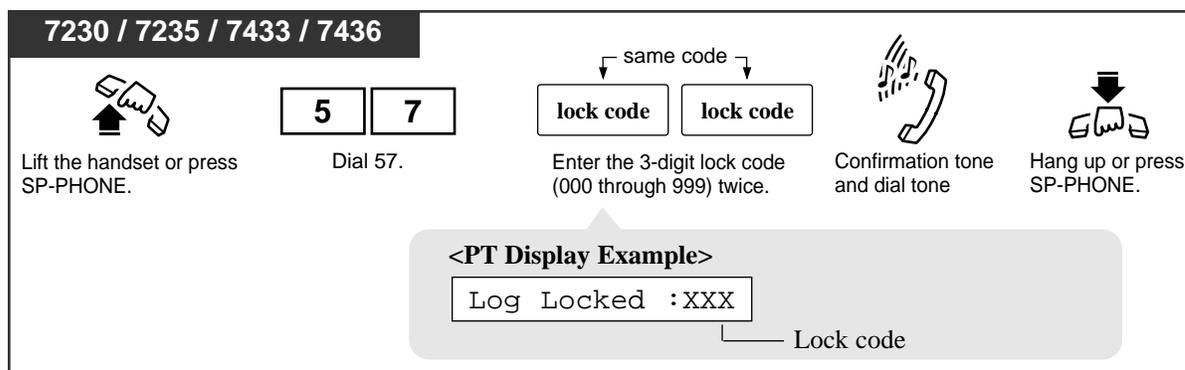
## 4.5

# Special Display Features

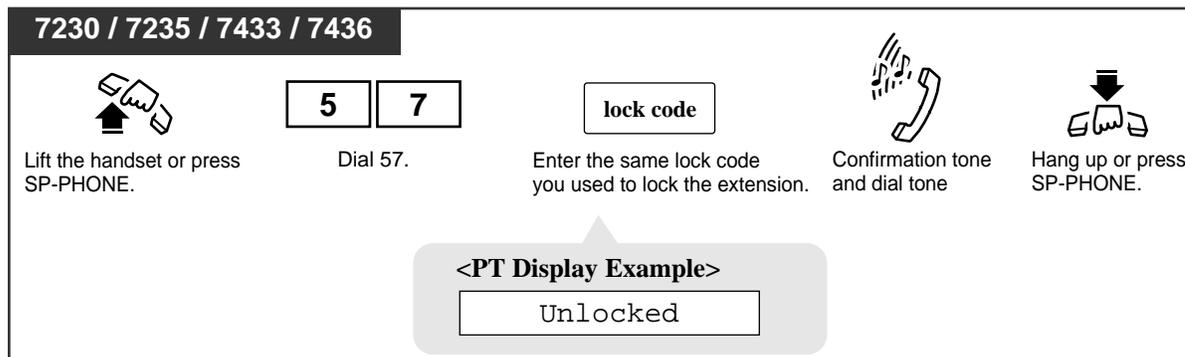
### Call Log Incoming, Log Lock (KX-T7436 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7235 / KX-T7230 only)

Allows you to lock the display of your extension so that the “Call Log, Incoming” feature is not shown on the display, if you do not want others to see the information.

#### Locking



#### Unlocking



## 4.5

# *Special Display Features*

---

### *Conditions*

- This feature is available for KX-T7230, KX-T7235, KX-T7433 and KX-T7436 only.
- **Call Log Lock Control, Incoming**  
The Manager or an Operator can unlock the call log display for any extension, if you forget your lock code (Call Log Lock Control, Incoming).
- With the KX-T7433, KX-T7436 or KX-T7235, you can execute this feature using the display operation.

### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.2 System - Numbering Plan
    - (56) Log Lock
  - 4.4.1 Line - Trunk Line
    - Name
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Display Mode of Incoming Call
    - Call Log Incoming
    - Overwrite Mode
    - Lock Password

### *Feature References*

- Call Log, Incoming (4.5/Special Display Features)
- Control of Call Log Incoming, Log Lock (4.4/Operator / Manager Service Features)
- KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu-Call Log Incoming, Log Lock (4.5/Special Display Features)
- KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu – Call Log Incoming, Log Lock (4.5/Special Display Features)

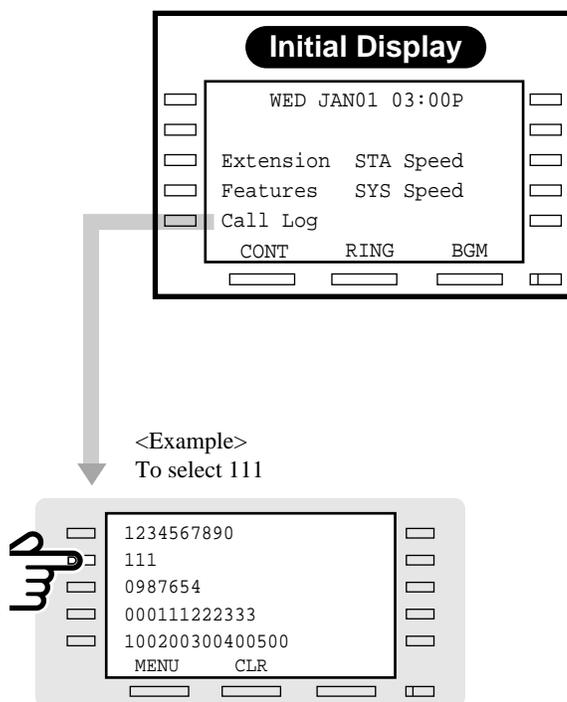
## 4.5

# Special Display Features

---

### Call Log, Outgoing (KX-T7436 / KX-T7235 only)

Last five CO calls you made are automatically logged. You can make a call using the call log.



#### Making a call using a call log

1. Press the **Call Log** (F5) button.
2. Press the **Function** button which is next to the desired number.

#### Notes

- To delete all numbers, press the CLR (S2) button.
- To return to the initial display, press the MENU (S1) button.

***KX-T7235 Display Features***

The KX-T7235 telephone allows you to make a call or operate the features using the display message with the Function buttons.

***1) Call Directory***

- Extension Dialing
- Station Speed Dialing
- System Speed Dialing

***2) System Feature Access Menu***

The System Feature Access Menu provides a display of the system features which appear in alphabetical order. The available features are as follows:

Absent Message Capability	Message Waiting
Automatic Callback Busy (Camp-On), Cancel	Night Service On / Off
Background Music (BGM) — External	Outgoing Message (OGM)
Call Log, Incoming	Paging — External
Call Log Incoming, Log Lock	Paging — Group
Call Park	Paging — ANSWER
Call Pickup, CO Line	Paging — DENY
Call Pickup, Directed	Paralleled Telephone Connection
Call Pickup, Group	Pickup Dialing (Hot Line)
Call Pickup Deny	Remote DND (Do Not Disturb)
Call Waiting	Remote FWD Cancel – Once
Data Line Security	Station Program Clear
Door Opener	Timed Reminder
Doorphone Call	Timed Reminder, Remote (Wake-Up Call)
Electronic Station Lockout	Trunk Busy-out Setting
Executive Busy Override Deny	Trunk Route Control
External Modem Control	UCD Monitor Mode
Live Call Screening (LCS), Password Set	Walking COS
Log-In / Log-Out	

## 4.5

# *Special Display Features*

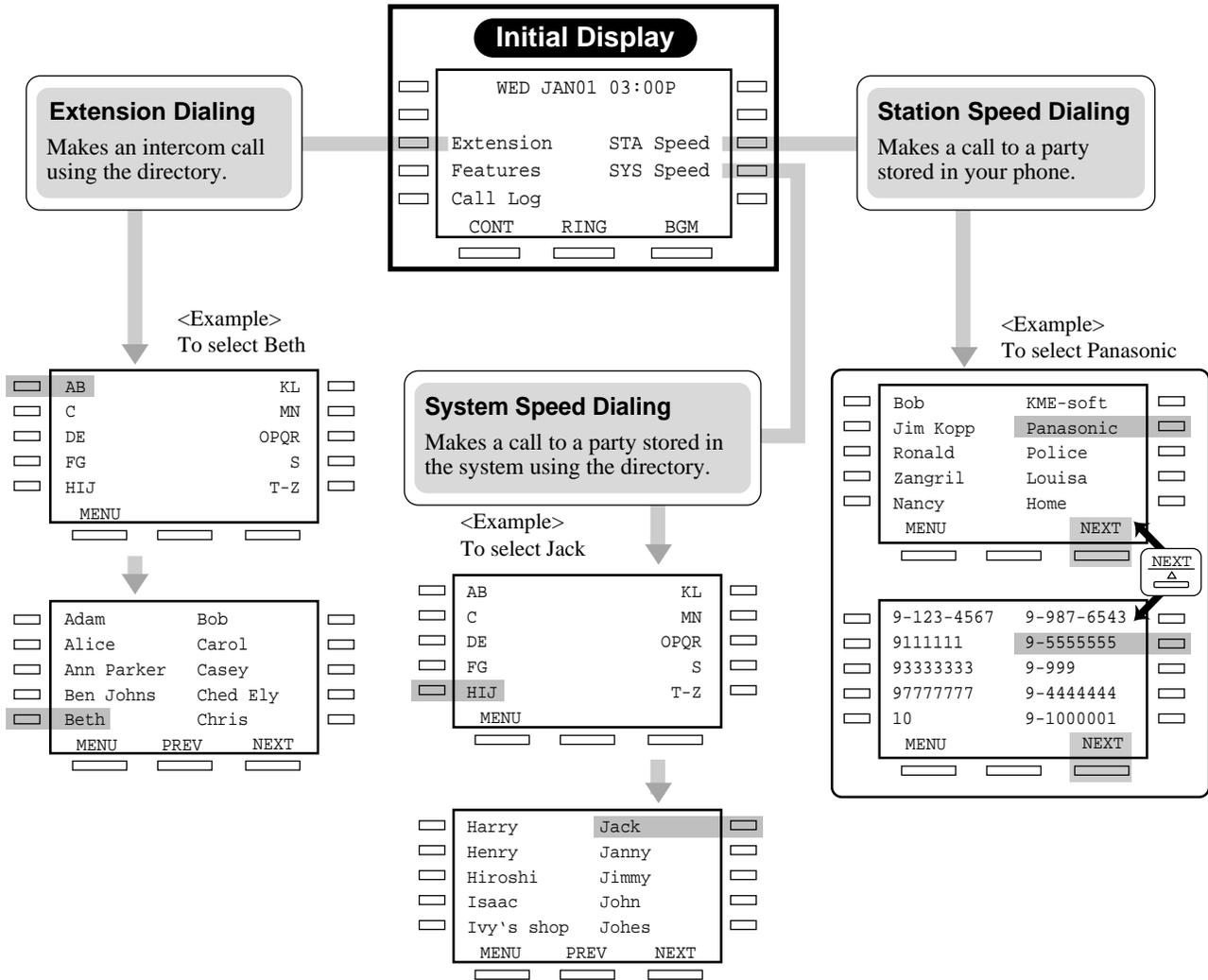
---

### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Station Speed Dialing Number/Name Assignment  
(KX-T7235 / KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 only)
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [001] System Speed Dialing Number Set
  - [002] System Speed Dialing Name Set
  - [004] Extension Name Set
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.1.3 Configuration – Extension Port Assignment
    - DN
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Name

### Call Directory

You can make a call using the call directory by pressing the desired button which is corresponding to the display message. The example operations are shown below.



#### Extension Dialing / System Speed Dialing

1. Press the **Extension (F3)** or **SYS Speed (F9)** button.
2. Press the **Function** button which is next to the desired alphabet.
3. Press the **Function** button which is next to the desired name.

#### Station Speed Dialing

1. Press the **STA Speed (F8)** button.
2. Press the **Function** button which is next to the desired name or number.  
To alternate the display between name and number, press the **NEXT (S3)** button.

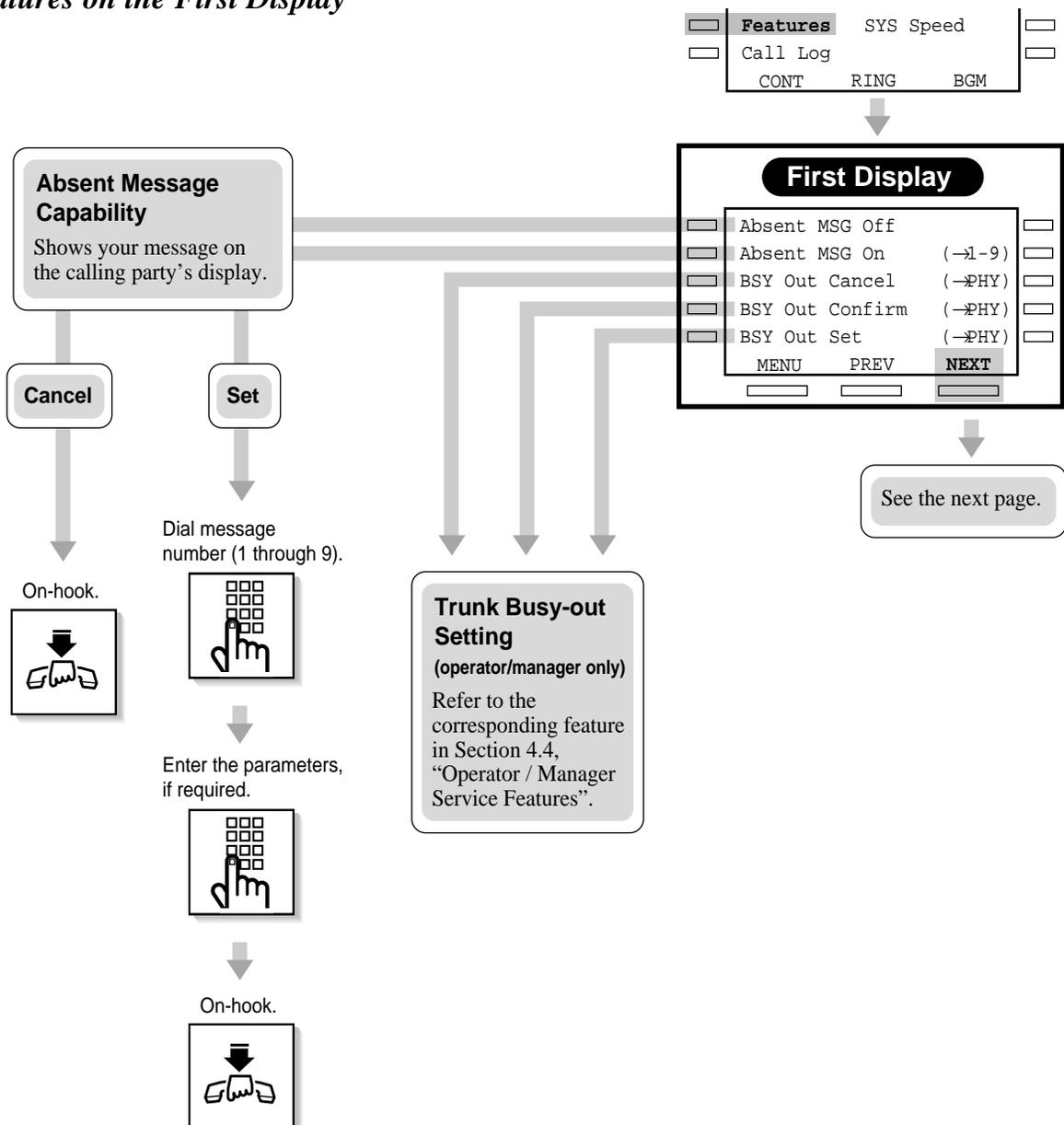
*System Feature Access Menu*

You can access various features using the messages which are displayed in alphabetical order.

To access the features, press the Feature (F4) button on the initial display first, search for the desired feature message by pressing the NEXT (S3) button. Then press the Function button which is next to the message. Additional parameters may be required.

To access the features while receiving a call (e.g. ringing), press the INTERCOM/DN button first. Then follow the procedures on the following pages.

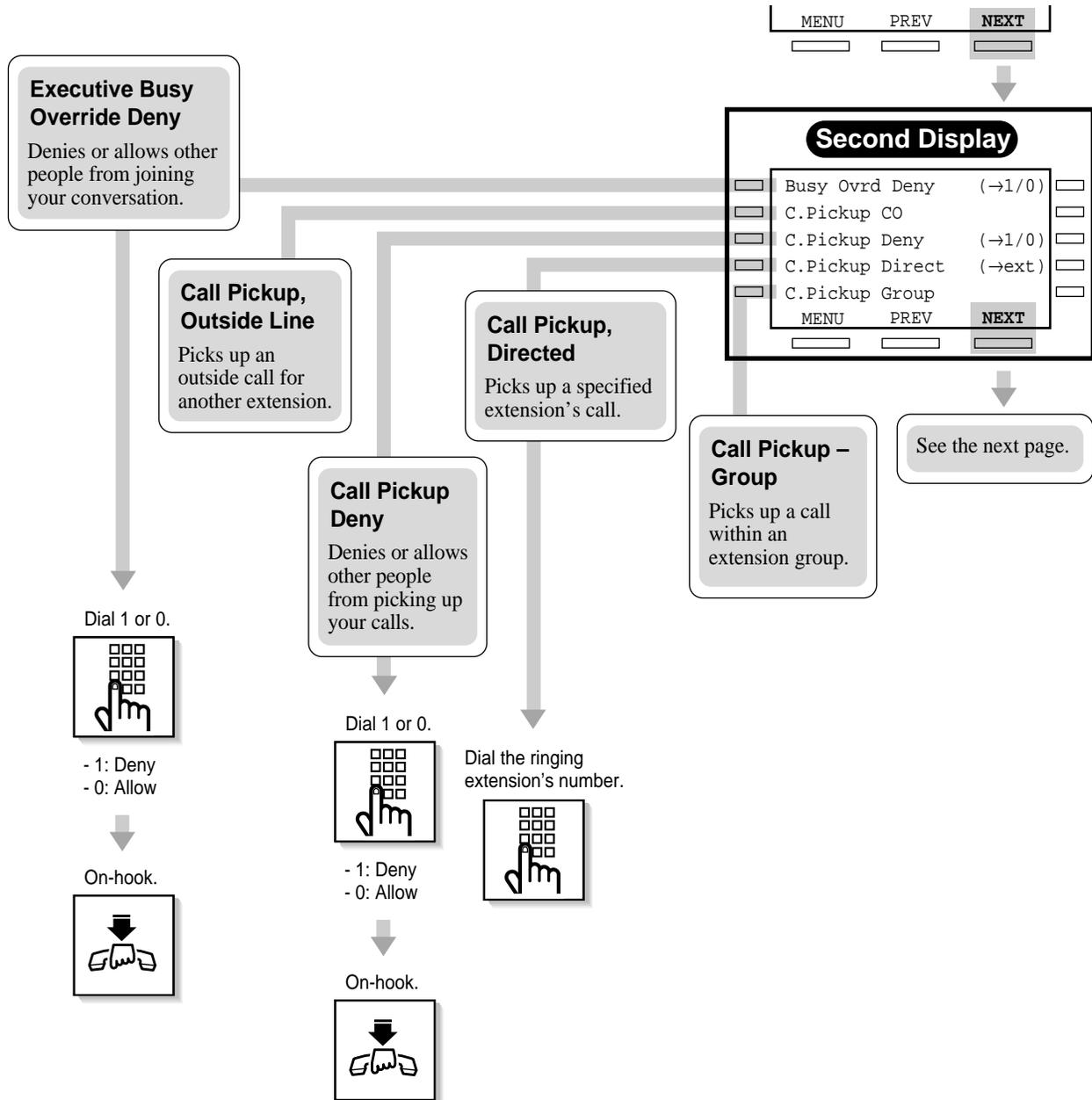
*Features on the First Display*



# 4.5

## Special Display Features

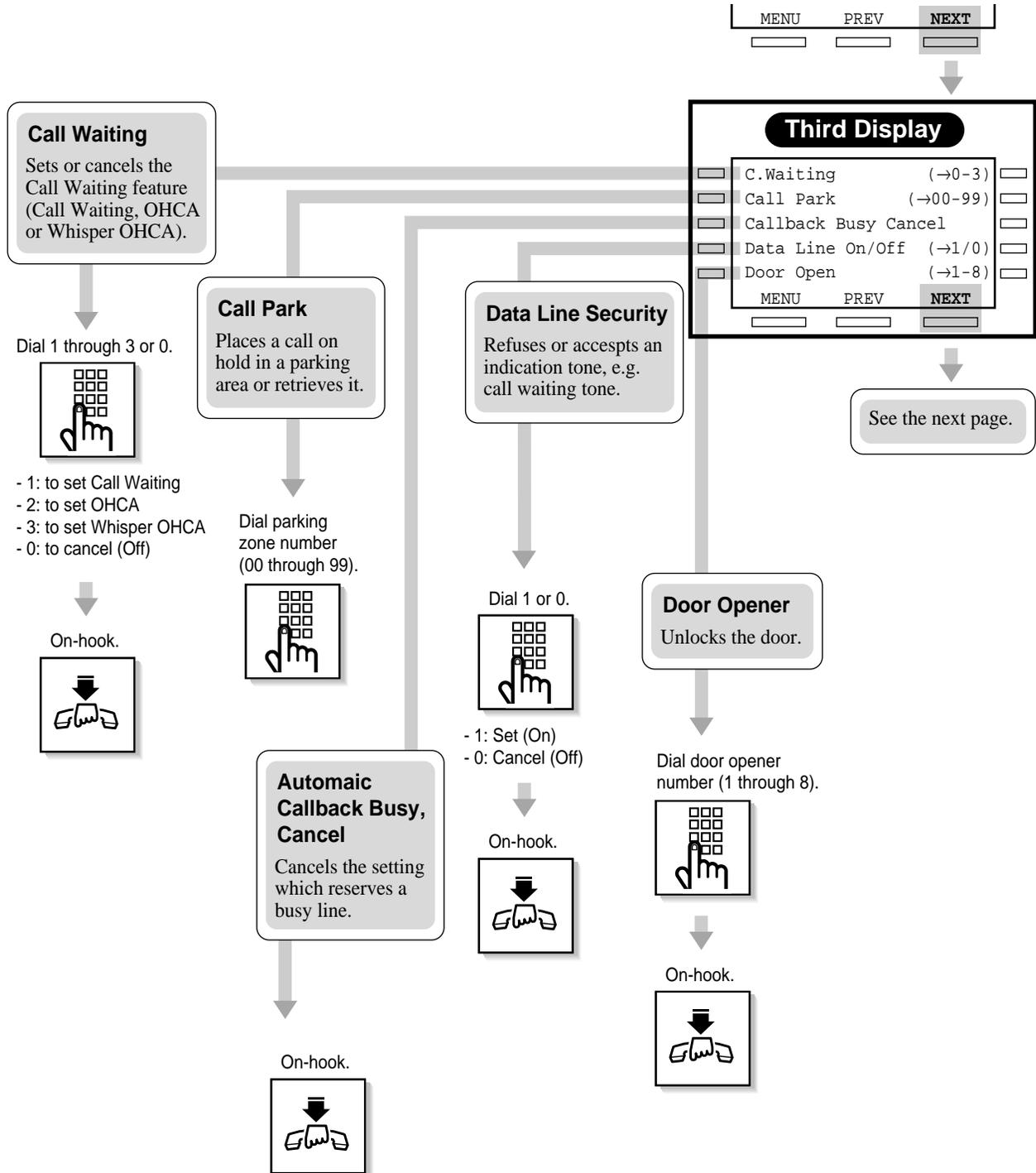
### Features on the Second Display



# 4.5

# Special Display Features

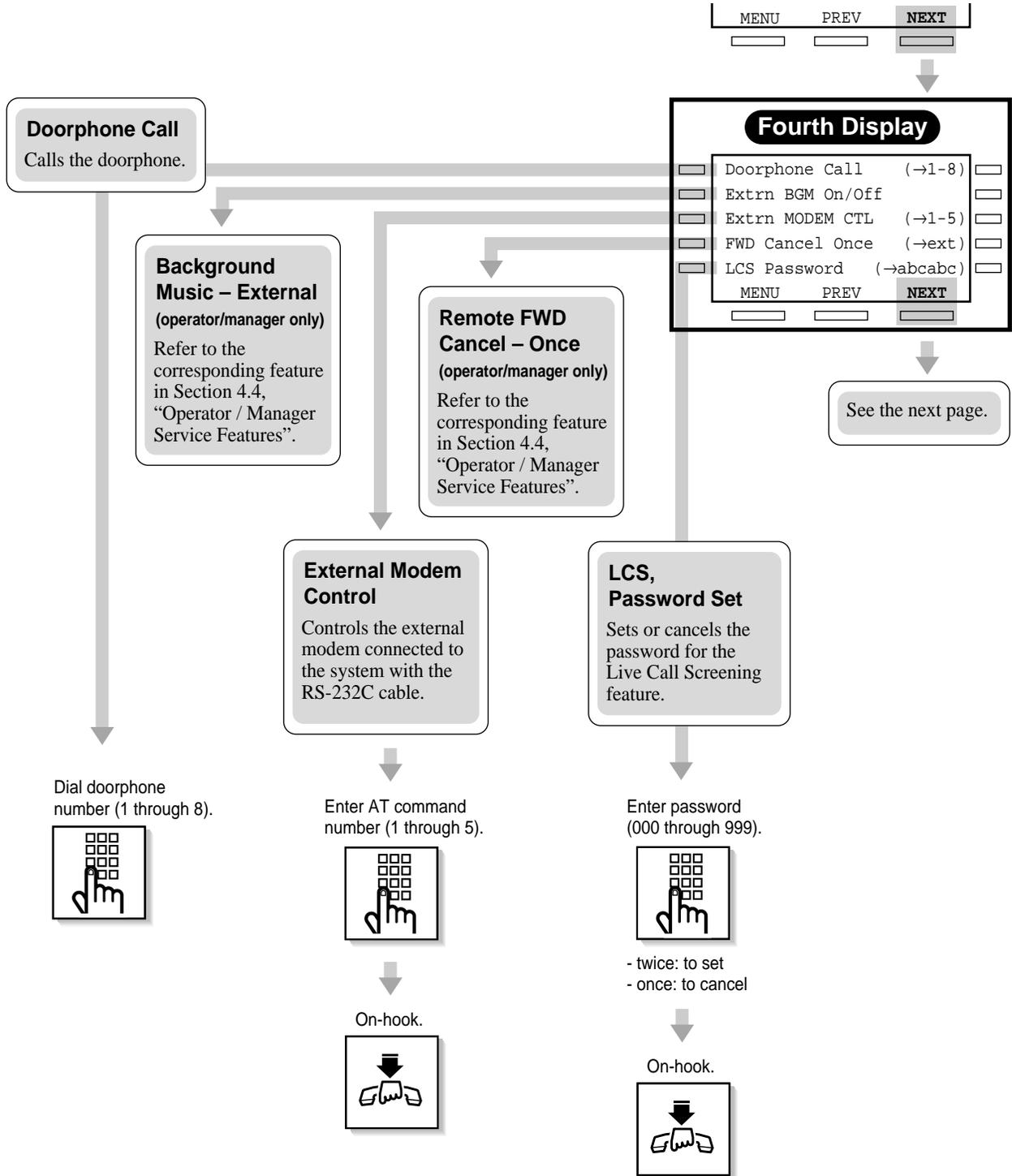
## Features on the Third Display



# 4.5

## Special Display Features

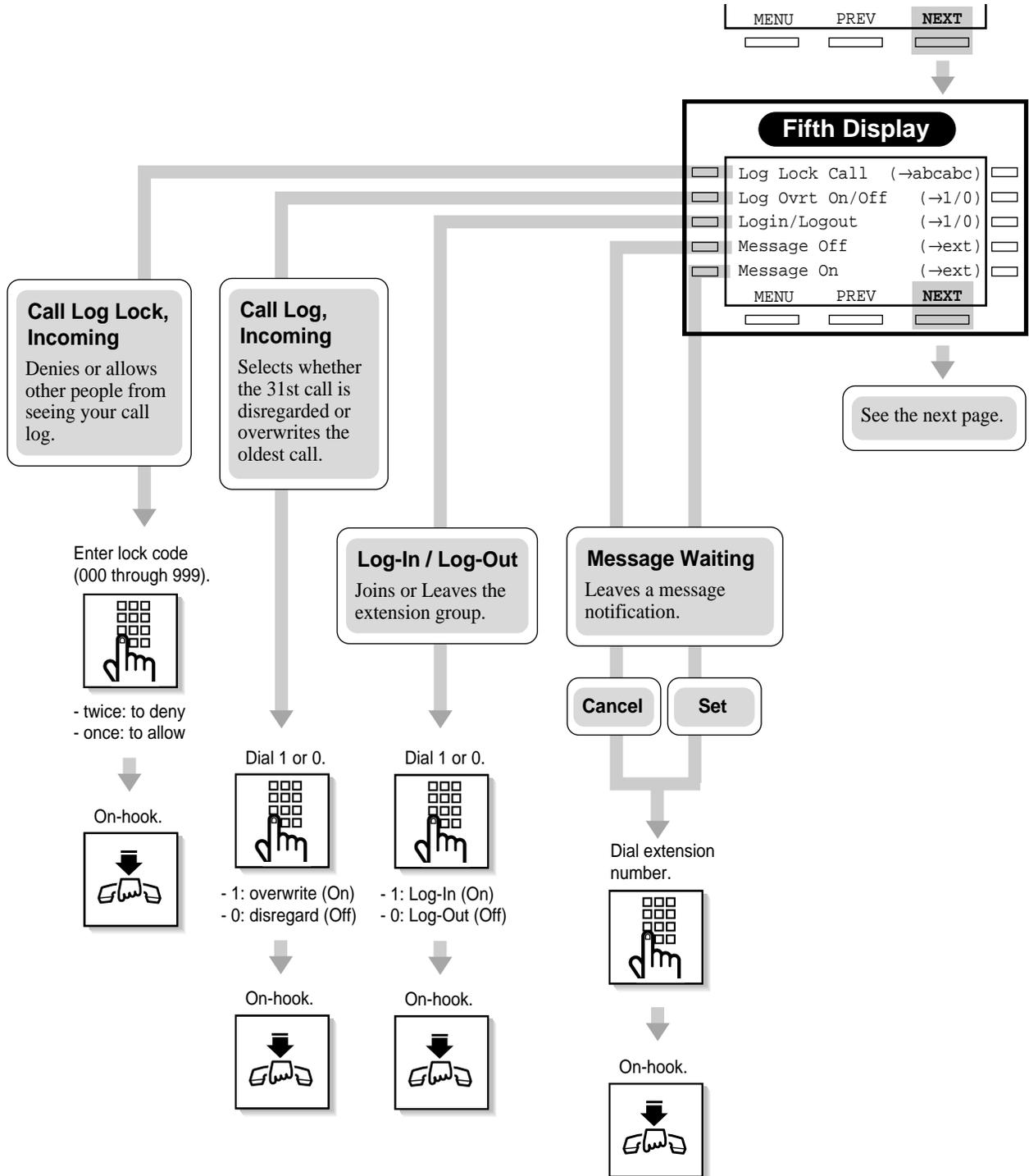
### Features on the Fourth Display



# 4.5

# Special Display Features

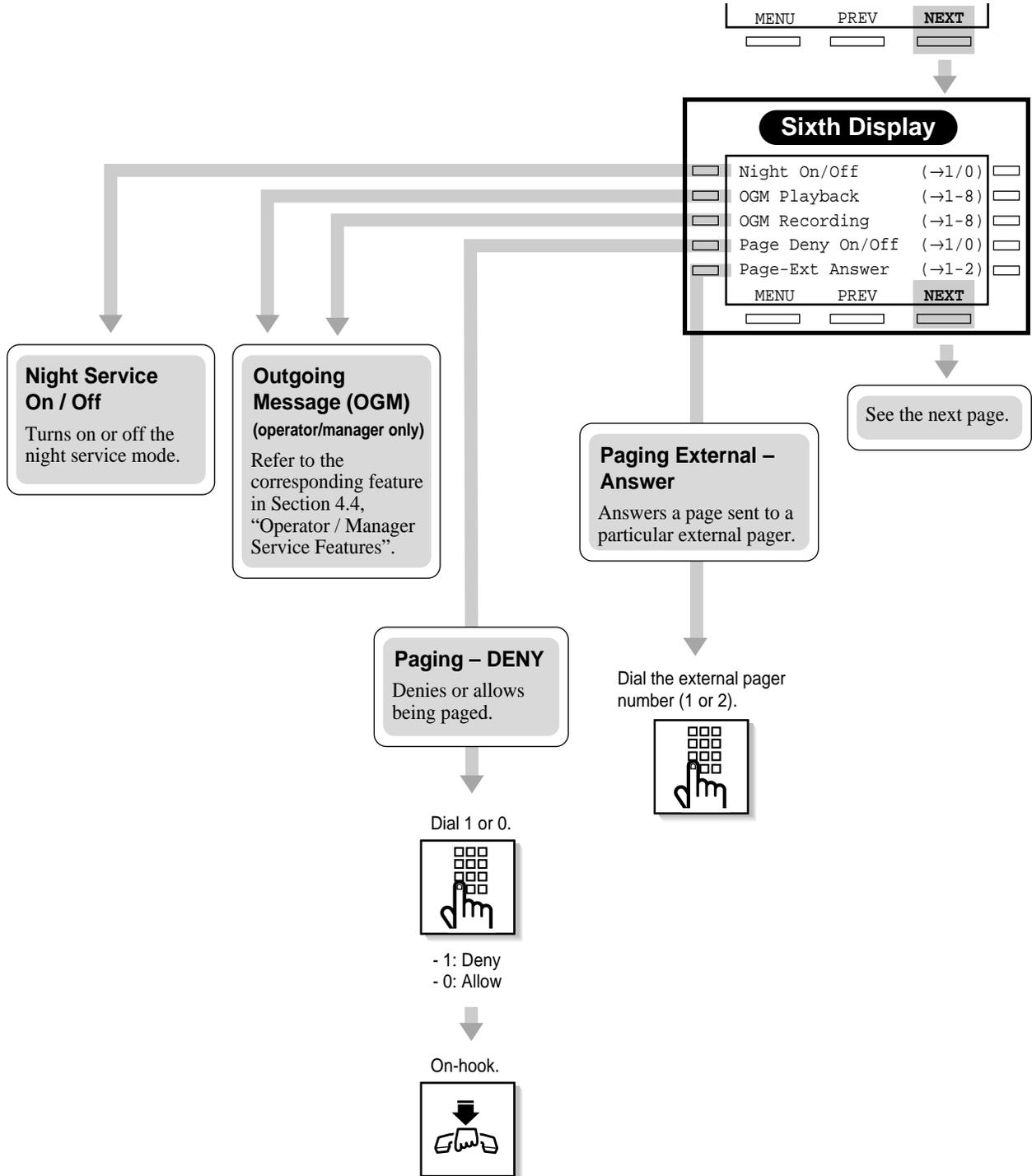
## Features on the Fifth Display



# 4.5

## Special Display Features

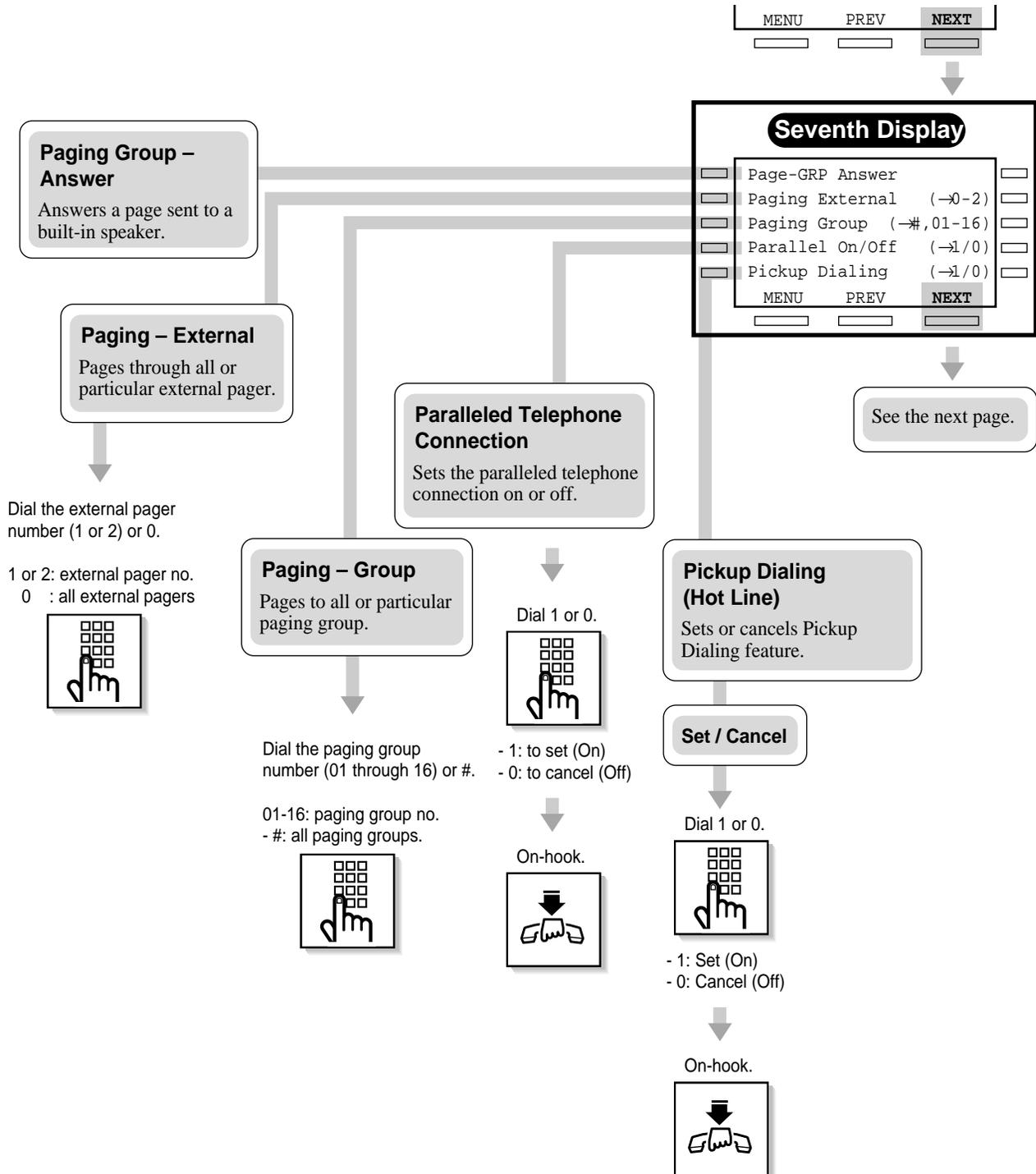
### Features on the Sixth Display



# 4.5

# Special Display Features

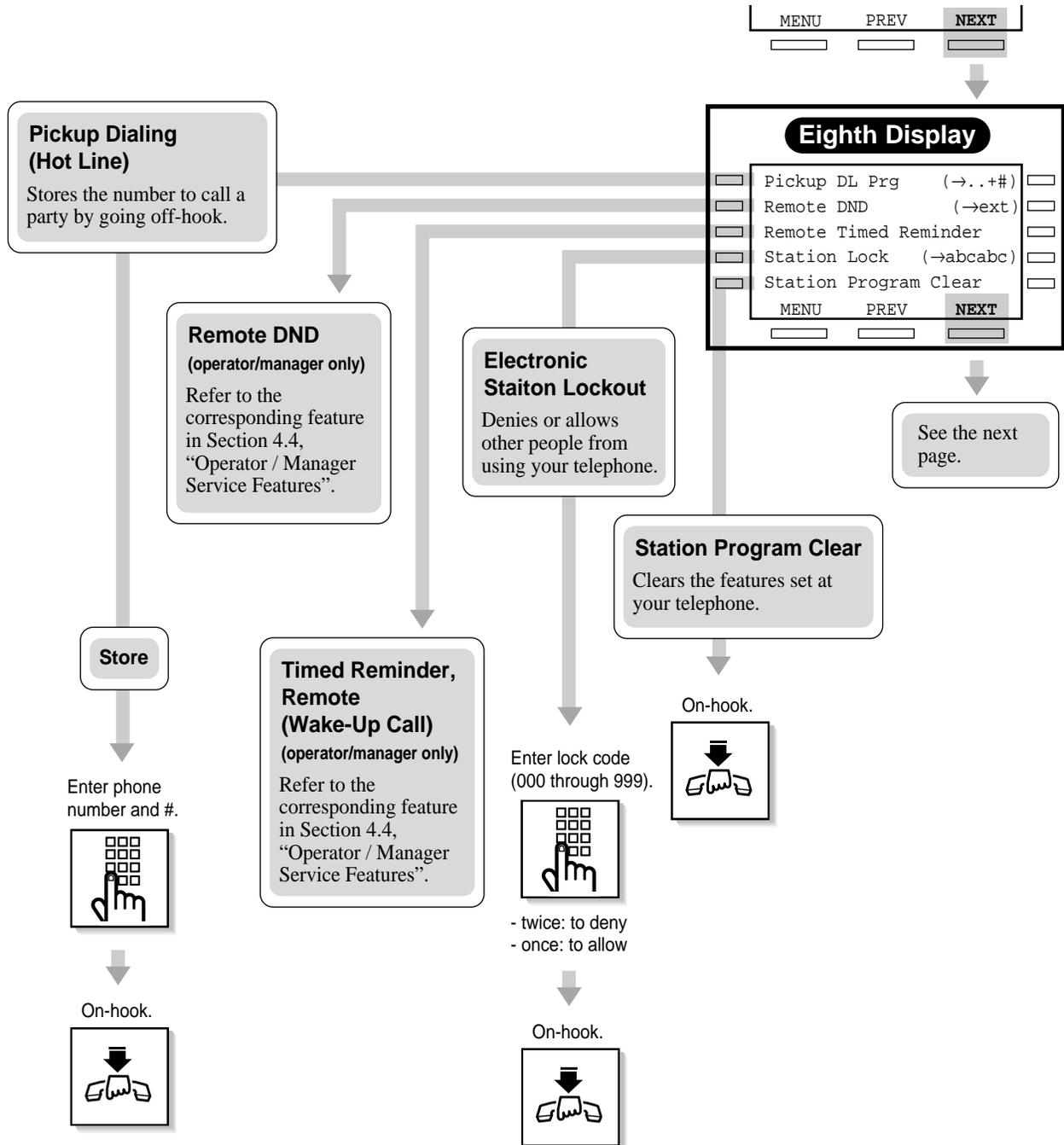
## Features on the Seventh Display



# 4.5

# Special Display Features

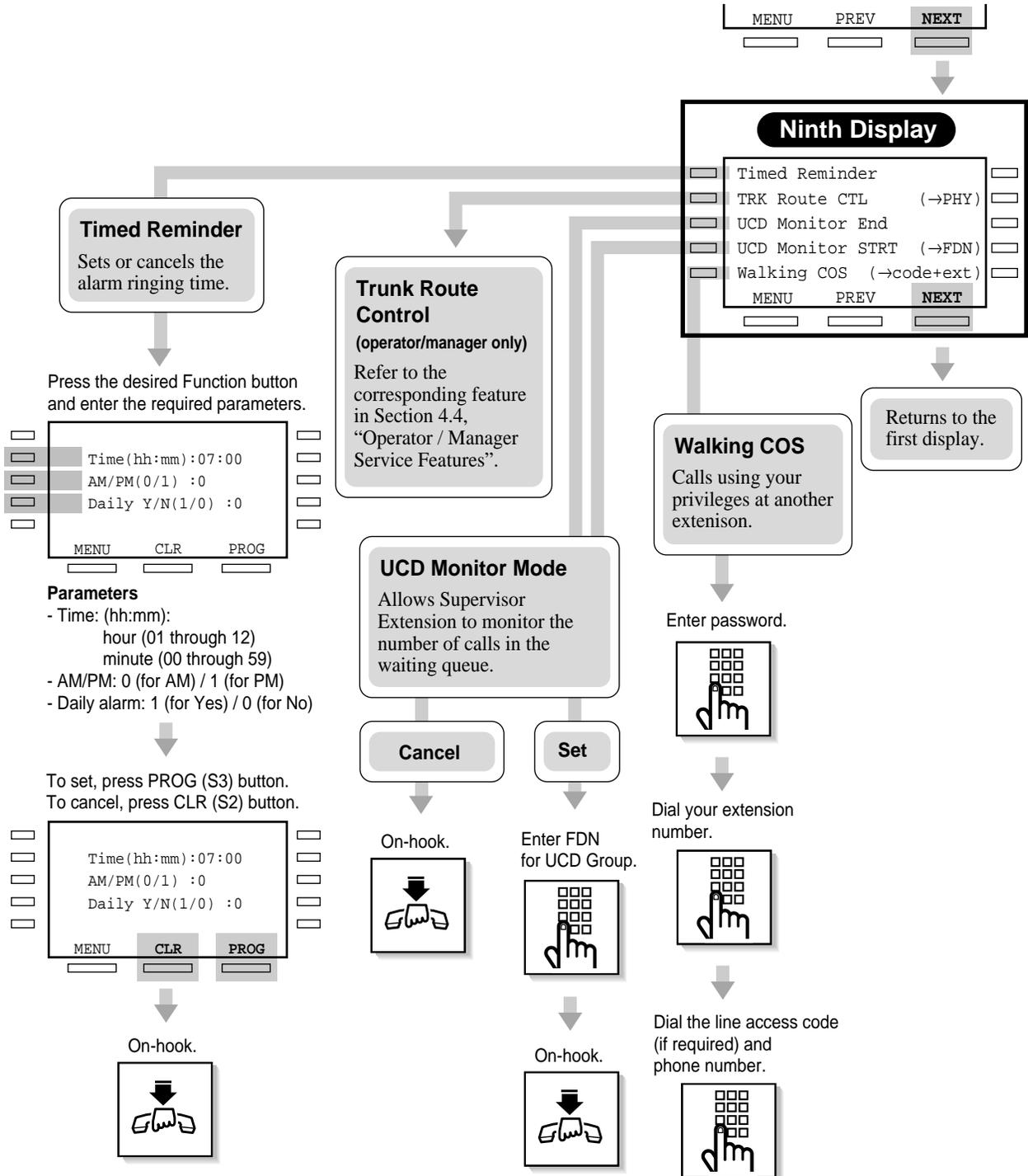
## Features on the Eighth Display



# 4.5

# Special Display Features

## Features on the Ninth Display



***KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 Display Features***

The KX-T7431, KX-T7433 and KX-T7436 telephones allow you to make a call or operate the features using the display message.

***1) Call Directory***

- Extension Dialing
- Station Speed Dialing
- System Speed Dialing

***2) System Feature Access Menu***

The System Feature Access Menu provides a display of the system features which appear in alphabetical order. The available features are as follows:

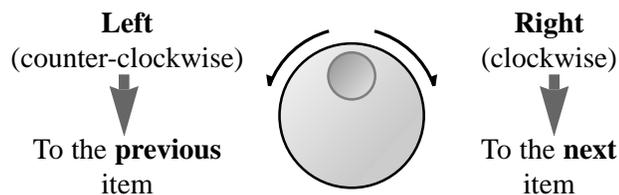
Absent Message Capability	Message Waiting
Automatic Callback Busy (Camp-On), Cancel	Night Service On / Off
Background Music (BGM) — External	Outgoing Message (OGM)
Call Log, Incoming	Paging — External
Call Log Incoming, Log Lock	Paging — Group
Call Park	Paging — ANSWER
Call Pickup, CO Line	Paging — DENY
Call Pickup, Directed	Paralleled Telephone Connection
Call Pickup, Group	Pickup Dialing (Hot Line)
Call Pickup Deny	Remote DND (Do Not Disturb)
Call Waiting	Remote FWD Cancel – Once
Data Line Security	Station Program Clear
Door Opener	Timed Reminder
Doorphone Call	Timed Reminder, Remote (Wake-Up Call)
Electronic Station Lockout	Trunk Busy-out Setting
Executive Busy Override Deny	Trunk Route Control
External Modem Control	UCD Monitor Mode
Live Call Screening (LCS), Password Set	Walking COS
Log-In / Log-Out	

## 4.5

# Special Display Features

### Jog Dial Operation

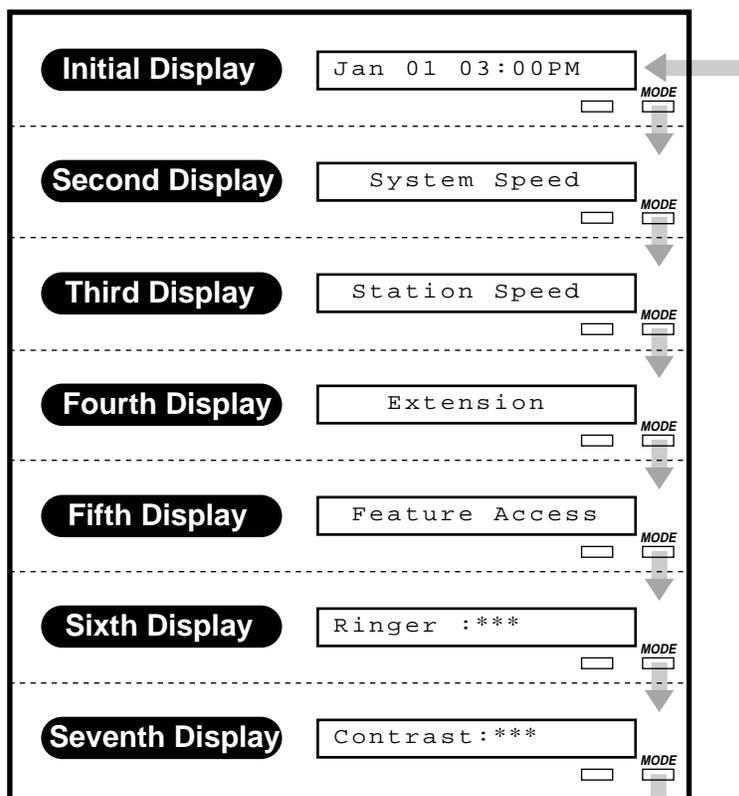
You can search for desired items on the corresponding display menu by using the Jog Dial. Rotate the Jog Dial in either direction as desired. The items will be displayed as follows.



### Jog Dial Operation Display

– KX-T7431

While idle, the display changes as follows by pressing the MODE button. The Jog Dial operation is available in the second through seventh displays.

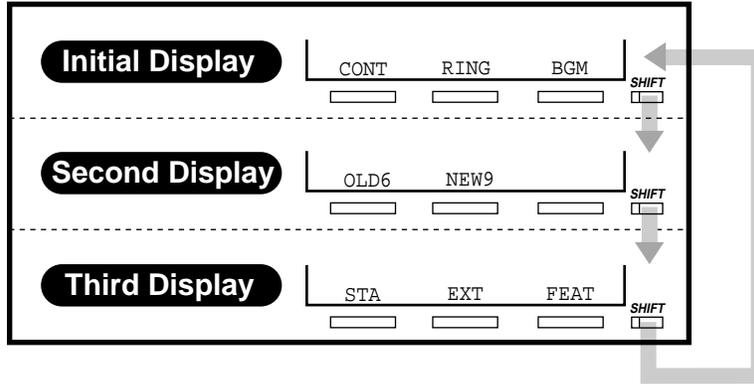


# 4.5

## Special Display Features

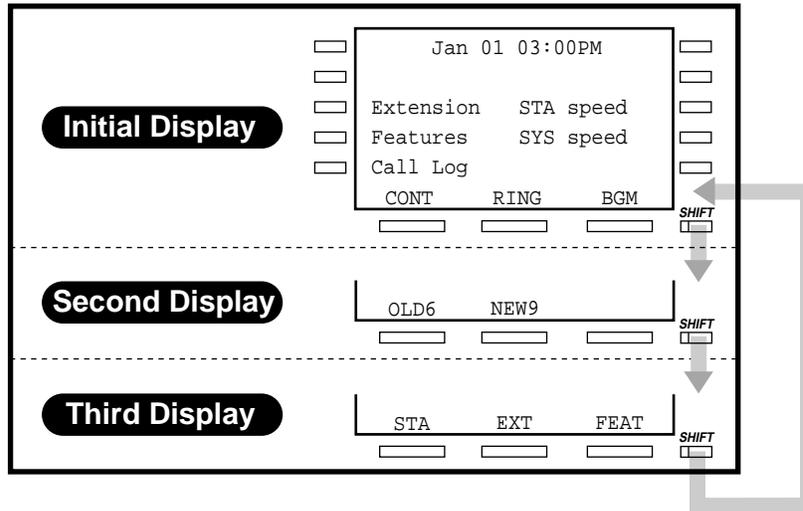
### - KX-T7433

The Jog Dial operation is available in the third display. While idle, the bottom line of the display changes by pressing the SHIFT button as follows.



### - KX-T7436

The Jog Dial operation is available in the initial and third display. While idle, the bottom line of the display changes by pressing the SHIFT button as follows.



### Conditions

- The sixth and seventh displays of the KX-T7431 are used for the ringer volume and display contrast adjustments. For details, refer to the “Initial Setting for KX-T7400 Series” (Section 1.1/Configuration) in this manual.

## 4.5

# *Special Display Features*

---

## *Call Directory*

There are three Call Directory features as follows.

<b>FEATURE</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>CONDITION</b>
<b>Extension Dialing</b>	You can make an intercom call using the directory.	Only items which have a name assigned are displayed in alphabetical order.
<b>System Speed Dialing</b>	You can make a call to a party stored in the system using the directory.	
<b>Station Speed Dialing</b>	You can make a call to a party stored in your phone.	Items which have a name assigned are displayed by priority in stored order. If a name is not assigned, the number is displayed. The displaying mode, name or number, can be assigned in System Programming.

To use the Call Directory, you may shift the display to the Jog Dial Operation display by pressing the SHIFT button first. Then follow the procedures on the following pages.

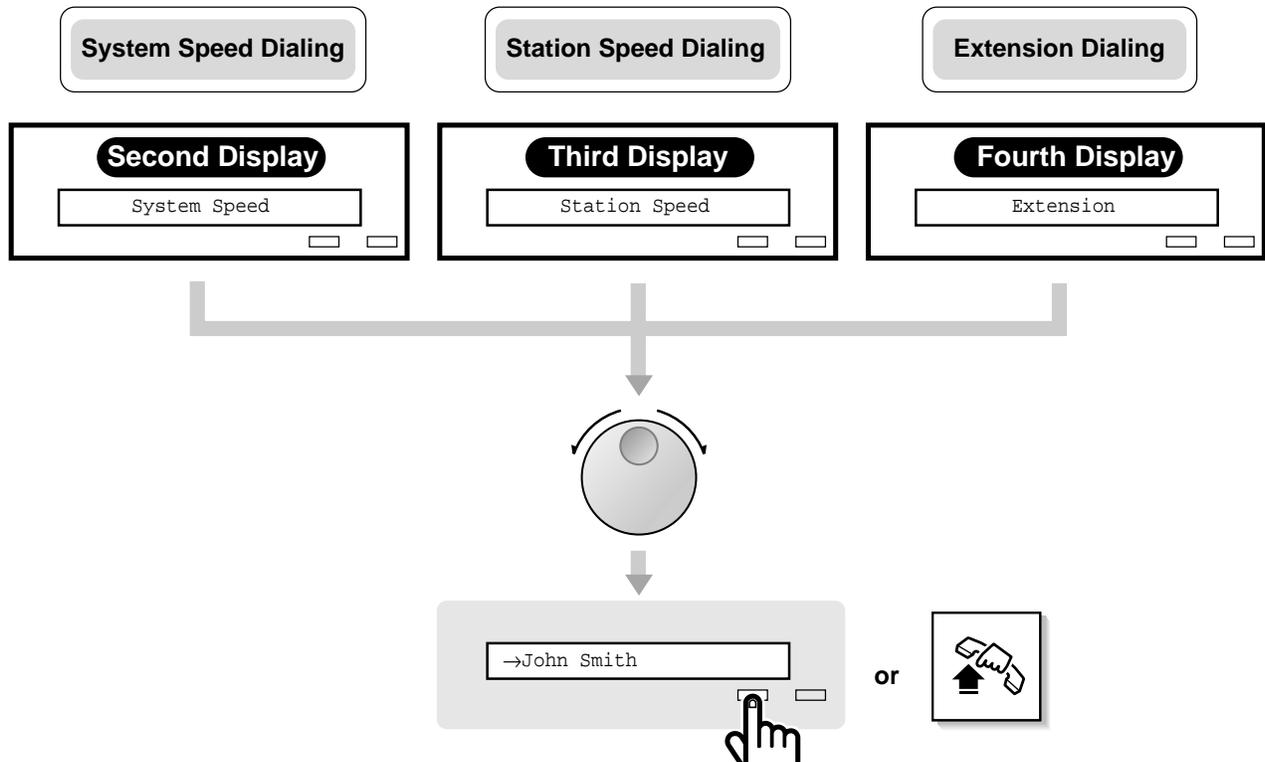
### *Programming References*

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Station Speed Dialing Number/Name Assignment  
(KX-T7235 / KX-T7431 / KX-T7433 / KX-T7436 only)
- User Programming (Section 3)
  - [001] System Speed Dialing Number Set
  - [002] System Speed Dialing Name Set
  - [004] Extension Name Set
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.1.3 Configuration – Extension Port Assignment
    - DN
  - 4.4.2 Line - Extension Line
    - Name

## 4.5

# Special Display Features

### ■ KX-T7431



#### *System Speed Dialing / Station Speed Dialing / Extension Dialing*

1. **Rotate the Jog Dial** until the desired item is displayed.
2. Press the **SELECT** button or **go off-hook**.

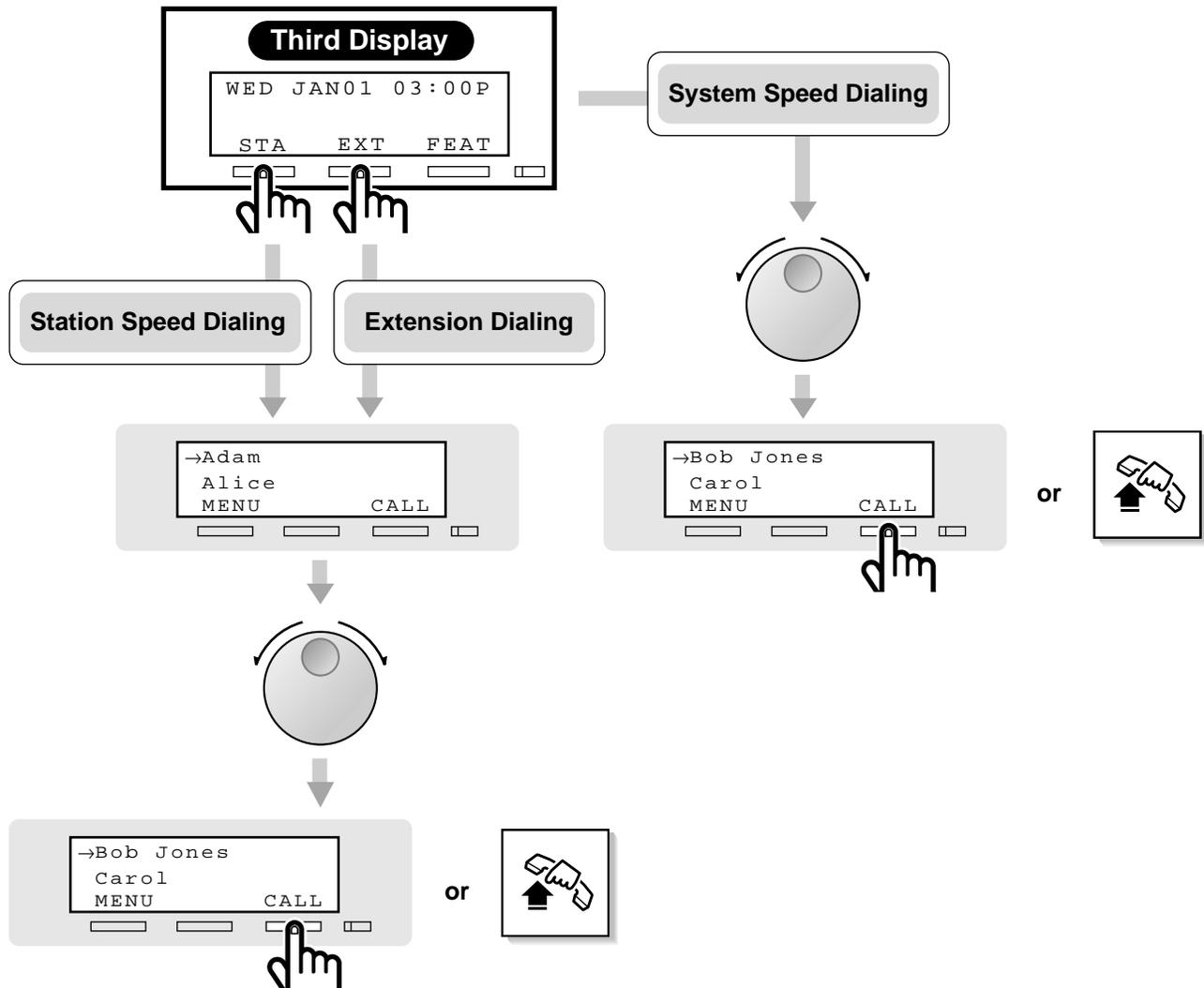
#### *Notes*

- You can lift the handset or press the SP-PHONE button instead of the SELECT button.
- Press the MODE button to return to the initial display.
- For System Speed Dialing and Extension Dialing, before rotating the Jog Dial, you can press the corresponding alphabet key to select the desired letter.  
<Example> Press 2 twice to display “B” items.

## 4.5

# Special Display Features

### ■ KX-T7433



#### *System Speed Dialing*

1. **Rotate the Jog Dial** until the desired item is at the arrow.
2. Press the **CALL (S3)** button or **go off-hook**.

#### *Station Speed Dialing / Extension Dialing*

1. Press the **STA (S1)** or **EXT (S2)** button.
2. **Rotate the Jog Dial** until the desired item is at the arrow.
3. Press the **CALL (S3)** button or **go off-hook**.

#### *Notes*

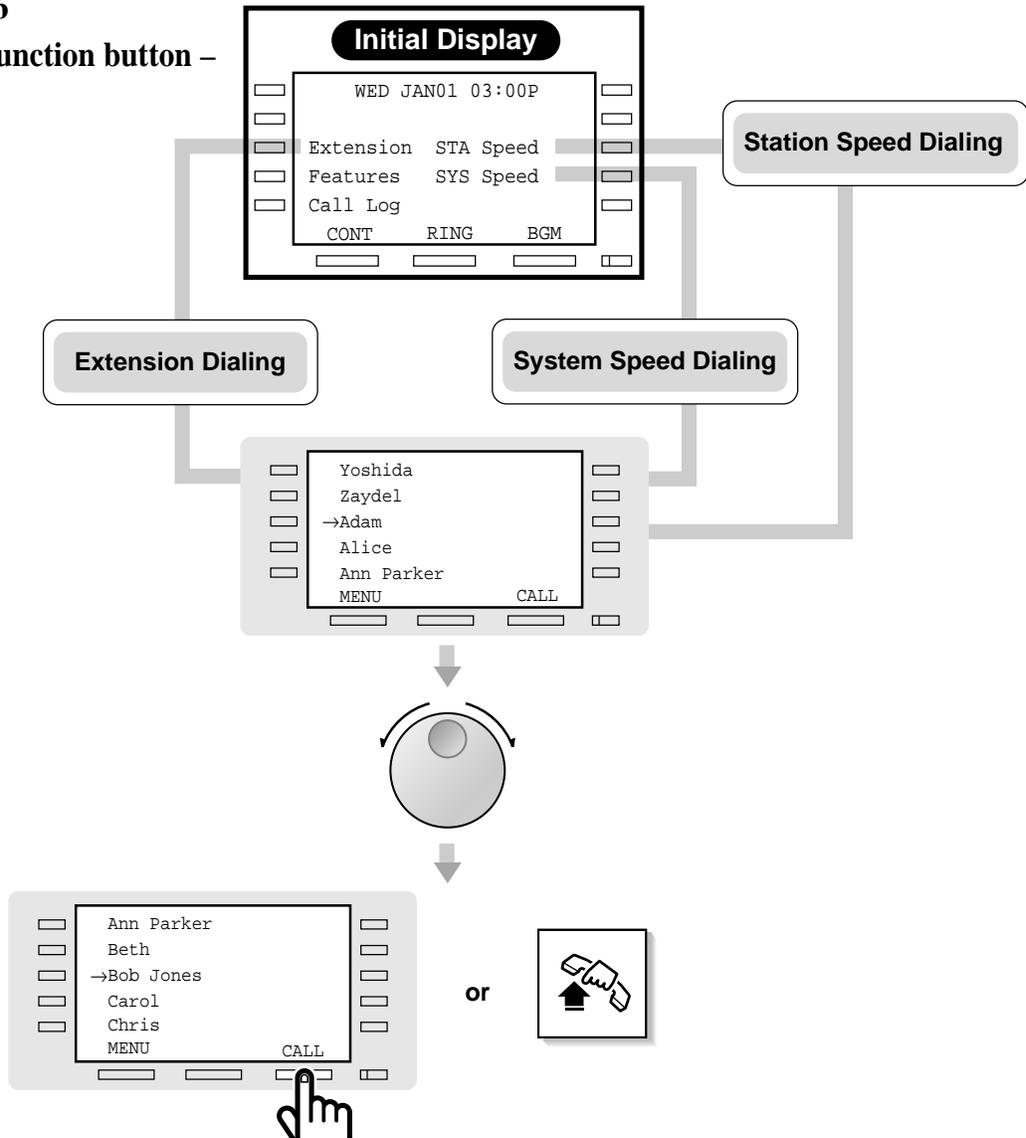
- For System Speed Dialing and Extension Dialing, before rotating the Jog Dial, you can press the corresponding alphabet key to select the desired letter.  
<Example> Press 2 twice to display “B” items.

# 4.5

## Special Display Features

### ■ KX-T7436

– Using the Function button –



### *Extension Dialing / Station Speed Dialing / System Speed Dialing*

1. Press the **Extension** (F3), **STA Speed** (F8) or **SYS Speed** (F9) button.
2. **Rotate the Jog Dial** until the desired item is at the arrow.
3. Press the **CALL** (S3) button or **go off-hook**.

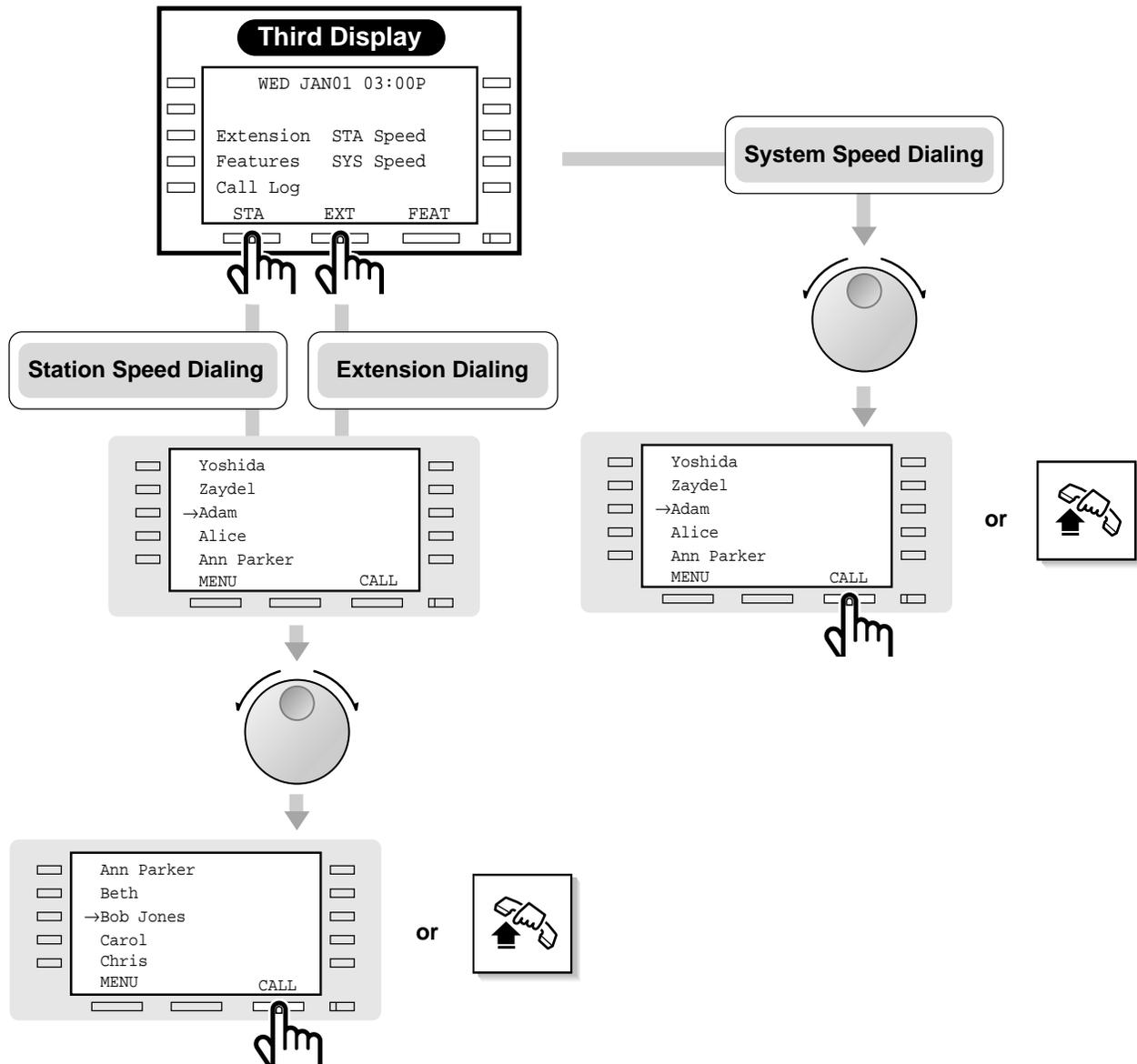
### *Notes*

- You can press the Function button (F1 through F10) on the same line of the desired item instead of the CALL (S3) button.
- For System Speed Dialing and Extension Dialing, before rotating the Jog Dial, you can press the corresponding alphabet key to select the desired letter.  
<Example> Press 2 twice to display “B” items.

## 4.5

# Special Display Features

– Using the Soft button or rotating Jog Dial directly –



### System Speed Dialing

1. **Rotate the Jog Dial** until the desired item is at the arrow.
2. Press the **CALL (S3)** button or **go off-hook**.

### Station Speed Dialing / Extension Dialing

1. Press the **STA (S1)** or **EXT (S2)** button.
2. **Rotate the Jog Dial** until the desired item is at the arrow.
3. Press the **CALL (S3)** button or **go off-hook**.

### Notes

- You can press the Function button (F1 through F10) on the same line of the desired item instead of the CALL (S3) button.
- For System Speed Dialing and Extension Dialing, before rotating the Jog Dial, you can press the corresponding alphabet key to select the desired letter.  
<Example> Press 2 twice to display "B" items.

# 4.5

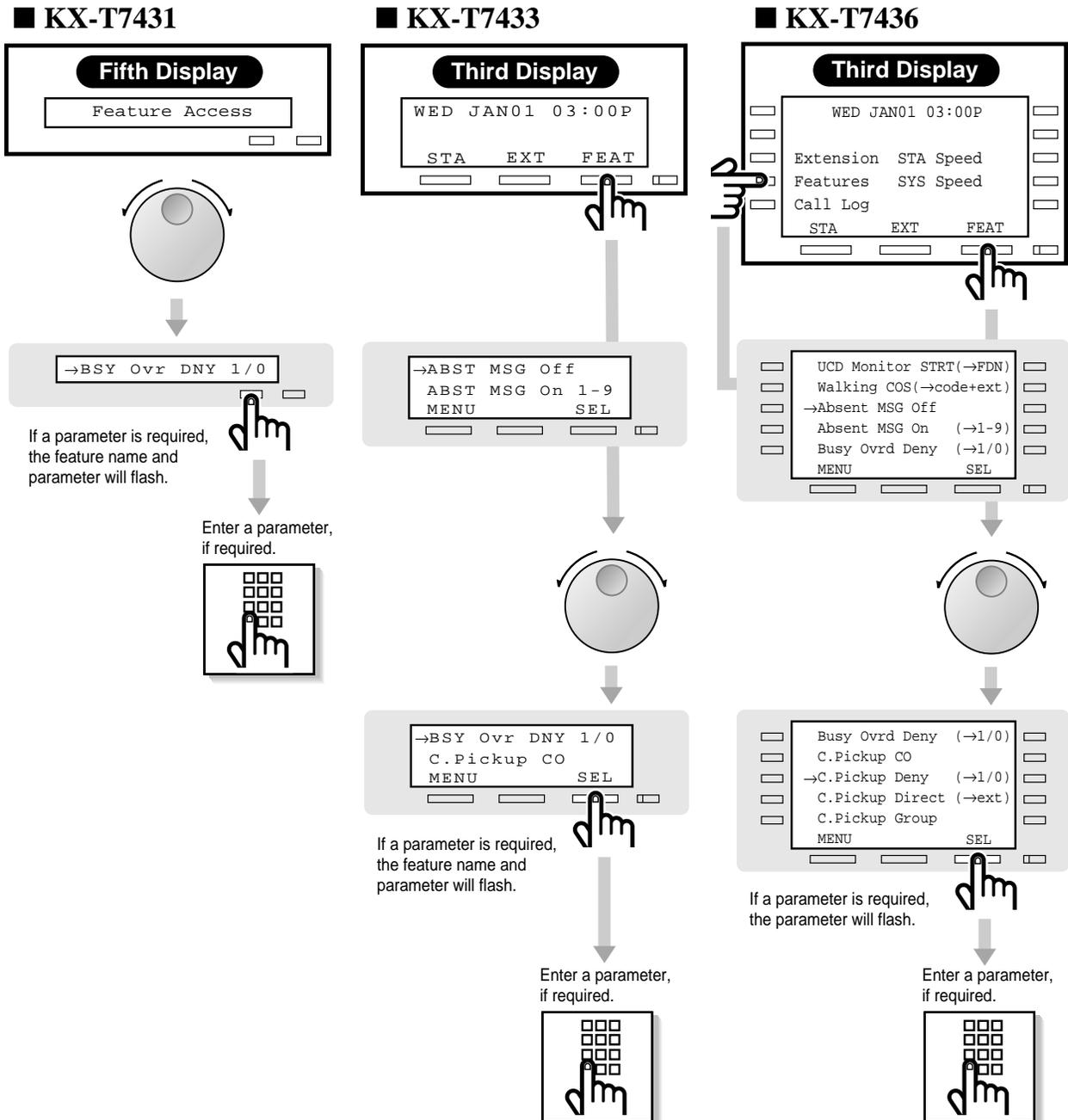
## Special Display Features

### System Feature Access Menu

You can access the features which are displayed in alphabetical order.

To access the features, you may shift the display to the Jog Dial Operation display by pressing the MODE or SHIFT button first. Then follow the procedures below.

To access the features while receiving a call (e.g. ringing), press the INTERCOM/DN button first. Then follow the procedures below.



## 4.5

# *Special Display Features*

---

### ***KX-T7431***

1. **Rotate the Jog Dial** until the desired item is displayed.
2. Press the **SELECT** button.
3. Enter the parameter, if required.

### ***KX-T7433***

1. Press the **FEAT** (S3) button.
2. **Rotate the Jog Dial** until the desired item is at the arrow.
3. Press the **SEL** (S3) button.
4. Enter the parameter, if required.
5. On-hook, if required.

### ***KX-T7436***

1. Press the **Features** (F4) or **FEAT** (S3) button.
2. **Rotate the Jog Dial** until the desired item is at the arrow.
3. Press the **SEL** (S3) button.
4. Enter the parameter, if required.
5. On-hook, if required.

### ***Notes***

- When using a KX-T7436, you can press the Function button (F1 through F10) on the same line of the desired item instead of the SEL (S3) button.
- When using a KX-T7436, you can press the Feature (F4) button in any display (initial through third).
- Before rotating the Jog Dial, you can press the corresponding alphabet key to select the desired letter.  
<Example> Press 2 twice to display “B” items.

# 4.5

# Special Display Features

## System Feature List

You can access the following features which are displayed in alphabetical order. For more details about the features and the required parameters, refer to the respective features in Section 4.3, “Station Features and Operation”, and Section 4.4, “Operator / Manager Service Features”.

DISPLAY (KX-T7436/KX-T7235)	DISPLAY (KX-T7431/KX-T7433)	FEATURE DESCRIPTION
Absent MSG Off	ABST MSG Off	Cancel the absent message.
Absent MSG On (→1-9)	ABST MSG On 1-9	Set an absent message.
BSY Out Cancel (→PHY)	BSY Out Cancel	Cancel the Trunk Busy-out setting.* <sup>1</sup>
BSY Out Confirm (→PHY)	BSY Out Confirm	Confirm the Trunk Busy-out setting.* <sup>1</sup>
BSY Out Set (→PHY)	BSY Out Set	Busy out a specific trunk.* <sup>1</sup>
Busy OvrD Deny (→1/0)	BSY Ovr DNY 1/0	Deny or allow other people from joining your conversation.
C.Pickup CO	C.Pickup CO	Pick up a CO call for another extension.
C.Pickup Deny (→1/0)	C.PickupDNY 1/0	Deny or allow other people from picking up your calls.
C.Pickup Direct (→ext)	C.PickupDRT ext	Pick up a specific extension’s call.
C.Pickup Group	C.Pickup Grp	Pick up a call within your extension group.
C.Waiting (→0-3)	C.Waiting 0-3	Cancel or set the Call Waiting feature (Call Waiting, OHCA or Whisper OHCA).
Call Park (→00-99)	Call Park 00-99	Place a call on hold in a system parking area.
Callback Busy Cancel	Callback Cancel	Cancel the setting which reserves a busy line.
Data Line On/Off (→1/0)	Data Line 1/0	Refuse or accept an indication tone, e.g. call waiting tone.
Door Open (→1-8)	Door Open 1-8	Unlock the door.
Doorphone Call (→1-8)	Doorphone 1-8	Call the doorphone.
Extrn BGM On/Off	Ext-BGM On/Off	Turn on/off the background music through the external pagers.* <sup>1</sup>
Extrn MODEM CTL (→1-5)	Extrn MODEM 1-5	Control the external modem by sending a pre-assigned AT Command.
FWD Cancel Once (→ext)	FWD Cancel Once	Cancel the Call Forwarding feature set at other extensions.* <sup>1</sup>
LCS Password (→abcabc)	LCS # abcabc	Assign the password for the Live Call Screening feature.
Log Lock Call (→abcabc)	Log Lock abcabc	Deny other people from seeing your call log.
Log OvrT On/Off (→1/0)	Log OvrT 1/0	Select how the 31st call is treated, either it is disregarded or overwrites the oldest call.

## 4.5

# Special Display Features

DISPLAY (KX-T7436/KX-T7235)		DISPLAY (KX-T7431/KX-T7433)		FEATURE DESCRIPTION
Login/Logout	(→1/0)	Login/out	1/0	Join or leave an extension group.
Message Off	(→ext)	MSG Off	ext	Cancel a message waiting notification.
Message On	(→ext)	MSG On	ext	Leave a message waiting notification so that the called party may call you back.
Night On/Off	(→1/0)	Night Mode	1/0	Change the day/night mode.
OGM Playback	(→1-8)	OGM Play	1-8	Playback the outgoing message.* <sup>1</sup>
OGM Recording	(→1-8)	OGM Record	1-8	Record an outgoing message.* <sup>1</sup>
Page Deny On/Off	(→1/0)	Page Deny	1/0	Deny or allow being paged.
Page-Ext Answer	(→1-2)	Page-E ANS	1-2	Answer the page through a speaker.
Page-GRP Answer		Page-GRP ANS		Answer the page through a telephone in the same paging group.
Paging External	(→0-2)	Page Extrn	0-2	Page through the speaker.
Paging Group	(→#,01-16)	Page GRP	01-16	Page to all or a particular paging group.
Parallel On/Off	(→1/0)	Parallel	1/0	Set whether a Single Line Telephone connected in parallel will ring or not when receiving a call.
Pickup Dialing	(→1/0)	Pickup Dial	1/0	Set or cancel the feature, calling to a pre-set party by going off-hook.
Pickup DL Prg	(→..+#)	Pickup DL PG..#		Store the extension or phone number to call a party by going off-hook.
Remote DND	(→ext)	Remote DND		Set or cancel the DND feature set at other extensions.* <sup>1</sup>
Remote Timed Reminder		R-Timed Remind		Set the alarm ringing time for any extension.* <sup>1</sup>
Station Lock	(→abcabc)	St. Lock abcabc		Prevent other people from making an outgoing CO call from your extension.
Station Program Clear		STA. Prog Clear		Clear the features set at your telephone.
Timed Reminder		Timed Reminder		Set the alarm ringing time.* <sup>2</sup>
TRK Route CTL	(→PHY)	TRK Route CTL		Verify the status of a specific trunk.* <sup>1</sup>
UCD Monitor End		UCD Monitor End		Cancel the monitoring of a UCD Group.
UCD Monitor STRT	(→FDN)	UCD Monitor STR		Start the monitoring of a UCD Group.
Walking COS	(→code+ext)	WK.COS code+ext		Call using your privileges at another extension.

## 4.5

# *Special Display Features*

---

- \*<sup>1</sup> Only available for the Manager and the Operators.
- \*<sup>2</sup> After selecting this message, follow the steps as follows.
  - KX-T7436: steps of the “Timed Reminder” feature in “KX-T7235 Display Features – System Feature Access Menu (Features on the Ninth Display)” in this section.
  - KX-T7431 and KX-T7433: steps after dialing the feature number (761) and 1 of the “Timed Reminder” feature in Section 4.3, “Station Features and Operation.”

# *Section 5*

## *DSS Console Features*

### *Contents*

<b>5.1</b>	<b><i>Configuration</i></b> .....	<b>5-2</b>
	<i>Location of Controls</i> .....	5-3
	<i>Feature Buttons</i> .....	5-5
<b>5.2</b>	<b><i>DSS Console Features</i></b> .....	<b>5-6</b>
	<i>Station Programming</i> .....	5-6
	<i>Direct Station Dialing</i> .....	5-25
	<i>One-Touch Dialing</i> .....	5-25
	<i>One-Touch Access for System Features</i> .....	5-25
	<i>Call Transfer</i> .....	5-26
	<i>ANSWER and RELEASE Buttons Operation</i> .....	5-27
	<i>Monitoring an outside line activity</i> .....	5-28

**<Note>**

All illustrations of the DPT (paired telephone) used in these operating instructions are based on model KX-T7235.

With a Directed Station Selection (DSS) Console, you can make or transfer calls and access system features with the touch of a button. The DSS Console must be connected to the Panasonic KX-TD500 System and paired with a PT (Proprietary Telephone). System Programming is required to designate the extension number of the paired PT. With a paired telephone, you can carry out the following operations using the DSS Console:

- Direct access to an extension (Direct Station Dialing)
- Quick access to an outside party (One-Touch Dialing)
- Quick access to a system feature (One-Touch Access for System Features)
- Easy transfer to an extension (Call Transfer)

The above functions are enabled simply by pressing buttons on the console which are pre-programmed as function buttons through Station Programming.

Panasonic KX-T series DSS Consoles are categorized as follows:

KX-T7240/ KX-T7040	DSS Console (32-DSS buttons, 16-PF buttons)
KX-T7440	DSS Console (66-DSS buttons)
KX-T7441	DSS Console for Attendant (48-DSS buttons, ANSWER button, RELEASE button)

### ***Conditions***

- The DSS Console and the PT should be placed side by side on your desk.
- Up to 8 DSS Consoles can be connected to a PT.
- A single line telephone cannot be utilized in conjunction with the DSS Console.
- For System Programming, please refer to the Installation Manual of the KX-TD500 System.

### ***Programming References***

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Paired Extension

# 5.1

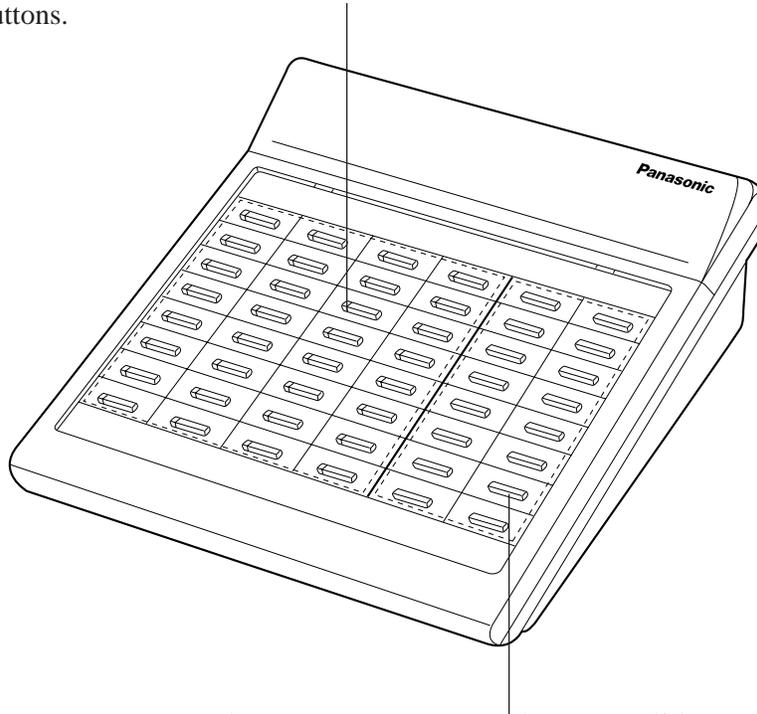
# Configuration

## Location of Controls

### ■ KX-T7240/KX-T7040

#### DSS Buttons with Busy Lamp Field (BLF) (01 through 32):

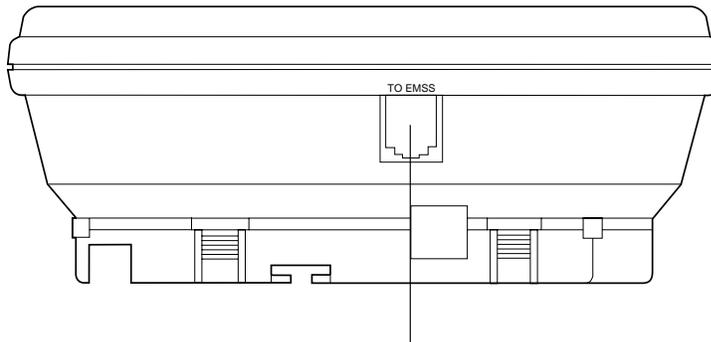
Used to access extensions. The BLF indicates the busy or idle status of each corresponding extension in the system. These buttons can also be changed to other function buttons.



#### PF (Programmable Feature) Buttons (01 through 16):

These buttons are provided with no default settings. With a paired telephone, you can program the buttons as other function buttons.

<Back View>



Used to connect to the KX-TD500 System

# 5.1

# Configuration

## Location of Controls

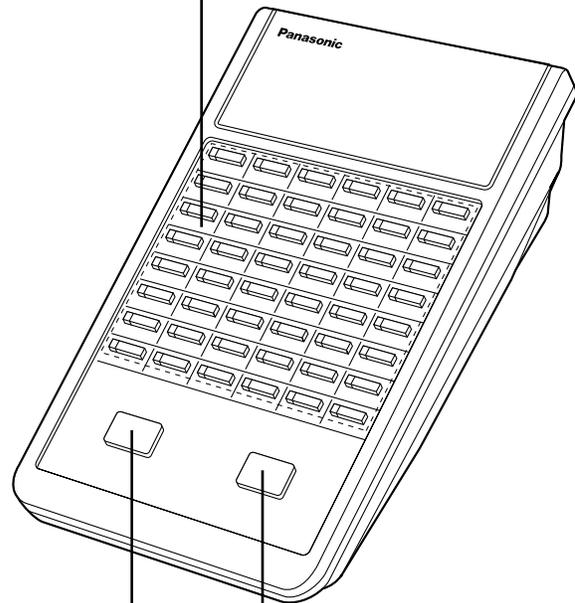
### ■ KX-T7440

DSS Buttons with  
Busy Lamp Field (BLF) (01 through 66)



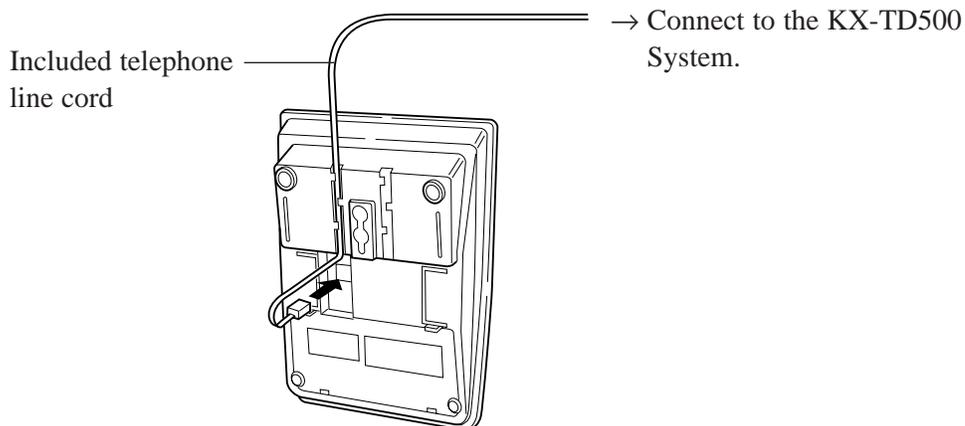
### ■ KX-T7441

DSS Buttons with  
Busy Lamp Field (BLF) (01 through 48)



ANSWER Button      RELEASE Button

## Connection



***Feature Buttons***

DSS Consoles have the following types of Feature Buttons:

***DSS Buttons with Busy Lamp Field (BLF)***

Used to access extensions. The BLF indicates the busy or idle status of each extension in the system. These buttons can also be changed to other function buttons.

***PF (Programmable Feature) Buttons [KX-T7240 only]***

These buttons are provided with no default settings. With a paired telephone, you can program the buttons as other function buttons.

***ANSWER Button [KX-T7441 only]***

Used to answer an incoming call.

***RELEASE Button [KX-T7441 only]***

Used to disconnect the line.



## 5.2

# DSS Console Features

---

### Answer Button (Assignment)

You can assign a Flexible DSS or PF button as an Answer button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**PT and DSS Console**

[DSS Console]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]
(DSS) <input type="text"/> or (PF) <input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="9"/> <input type="text" value="4"/>	AUTO DIAL <input type="text" value="STORE"/>
Press the desired <b>DSS</b> or <b>PF</b> button.	Dial 94.	Press <b>STORE</b> .

<PT Display Example>

Answer

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- For the KX-T7441, the ANSWER button is provided as a fixed feature button.

## 5.2

# DSS Console Features

---

### Conference (CONF) Button (Assignment)

You can assign a Flexible DSS or PF button as a Conference (CONF) button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

**PT and DSS Console**

[DSS Console]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]
(DSS) <input type="text"/> or (PF) <input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="7"/> <input type="text" value="0"/>	AUTO DIAL <input type="checkbox"/> STORE
Press the desired <b>DSS</b> or <b>PF</b> button.	Dial 70.	Press <b>STORE</b> .

**<PT Display Example>**

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 5.2

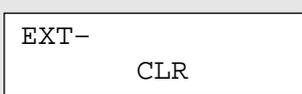
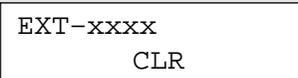
# DSS Console Features

### Direct Station Selection (DSS) Button (Assignment)

You can assign the desired extension number to a DSS button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

#### PT and DSS Console

[DSS Console]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]
			
Press the desired <b>DSS</b> button.	Dial <b>1</b> .	Enter the desired extension number (3 or 4 digits).	Press <b>STORE</b> .
<p>&lt;PT Display Example&gt;</p> 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The STORE indicator lights.</li><li>• The display shows the initial programming mode.</li></ul>	
<p>&lt;PT Display Example&gt;</p>  (-xxxx:extension number)			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To erase an incorrect entry, press the <b>CLR (S2)</b> button or the <b>TRANSFER (CLEAR)</b> button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)</li></ul>			

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 5.2

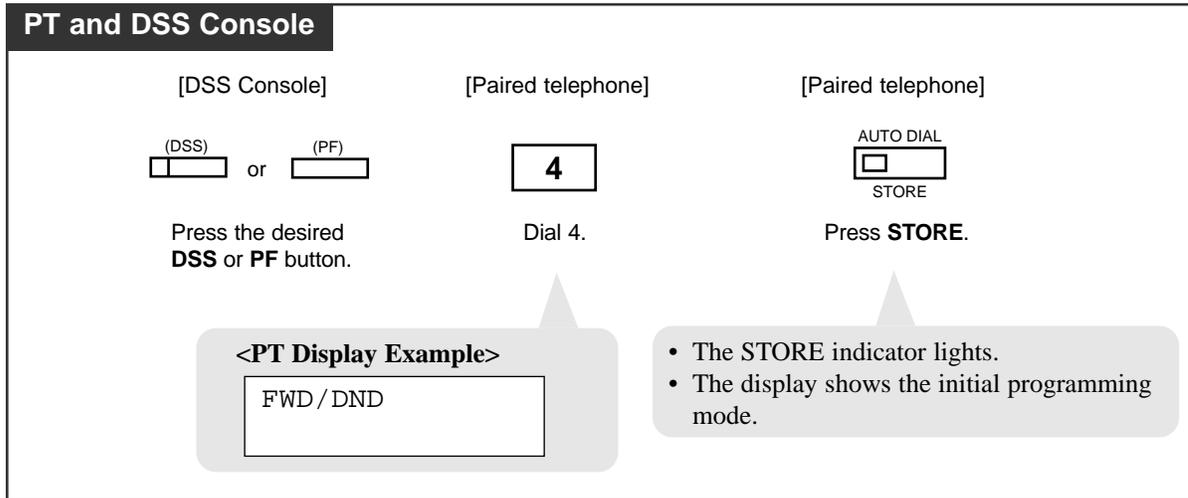
# DSS Console Features

---

### FWD/DND Button (Assignment)

You can assign a Flexible DSS or PF button as an FWD/DND button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 5.2

# DSS Console Features

### Group-CO (G-CO) Button (Assignment)

You can assign a DSS button as a Group-CO button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

#### PT and DSS Console

[DSS Console]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]
			
Press the desired <b>DSS</b> button.	Dial #.	Enter the trunk group number (01 through 48).	Press <b>STORE</b> .

**<PT Display Example>**

TRK GRP-  
CLR

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- A G-CO button assigned to a DSS button is available for monitoring the call activity only, not available for making and receiving a call.

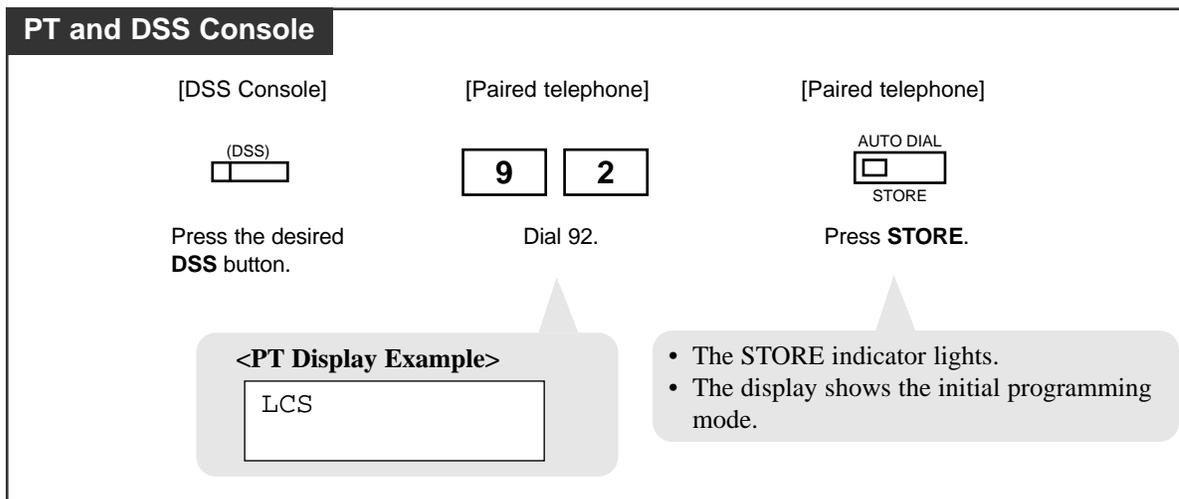
## 5.2

# DSS Console Features

### Live Call Screening (LCS) Button (Assignment)<sup>†</sup>

You can assign a Flexible DSS button as a Live Call Screening (LCS) button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

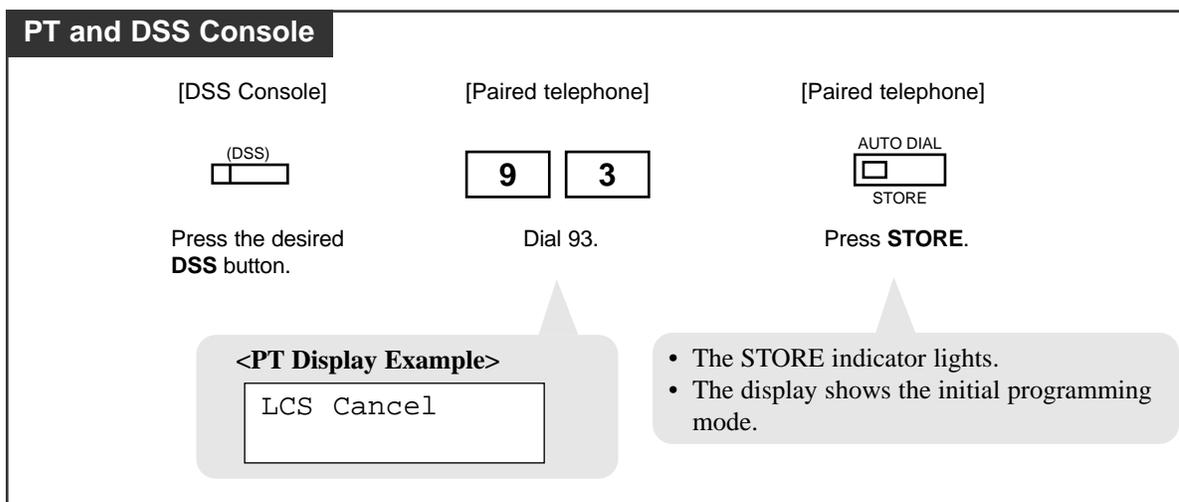


— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Live Call Screening (LCS) Cancel Button (Assignment)<sup>†</sup>

You can assign a Flexible DSS button as a Live Call Screening (LCS) Cancel button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 5.2

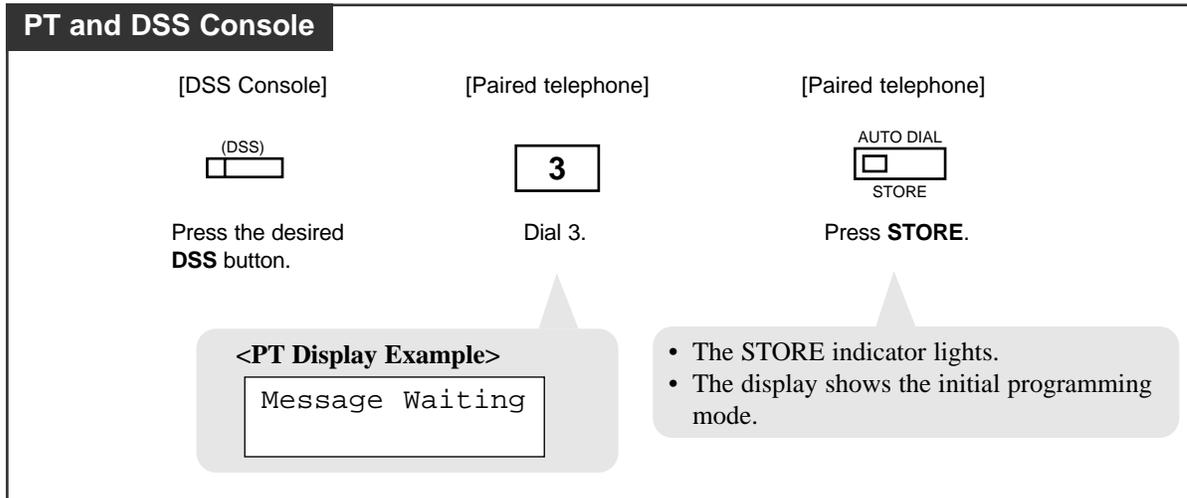
# DSS Console Features

---

### Message Waiting (MESSAGE) Button (Assignment)

You can assign a Flexible DSS button as a Message Waiting (MESSAGE) button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 5.2

# DSS Console Features

### One-Touch Dialing Button (Assignment)

You can assign a DSS or PF button as a One-Touch Dialing button. The number can be an extension number or a telephone number. Up to 16 digits can be stored into each memory location.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

#### PT and DSS Console

[DSS Console]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]
(DSS) or (PF) <input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/>	<input type="text" value="desired no."/>	AUTO DIAL <input type="checkbox"/> STORE
Press the desired DSS or PF button.	Dial 2.	Enter the desired number (extension number, phone number, etc).	Press <b>STORE</b> .

**<PT Display Example>**

CLR

- Up to 16 digits can be stored.
- When you assign an outside phone number, you must enter a line access code first.
- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 5.2

# DSS Console Features

### One-Touch Access Assignment for System Features

You can assign the desired feature number to a DSS or PF button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

#### PT and DSS Console

[DSS Console]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]
(DSS) <input type="text"/> or (PF) <input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/>	<input type="text" value="feature no."/>	AUTO DIAL <input type="checkbox"/> STORE
Press the desired DSS or PF button.	Dial 2.	Enter the desired feature number.	Press <b>STORE</b> .

**<PT Display Example>**

CLR

- Up to 16 digits can be stored.
- If you wish to access the “Station paging answer” feature, enter the feature number 43.
- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].



## 5.2

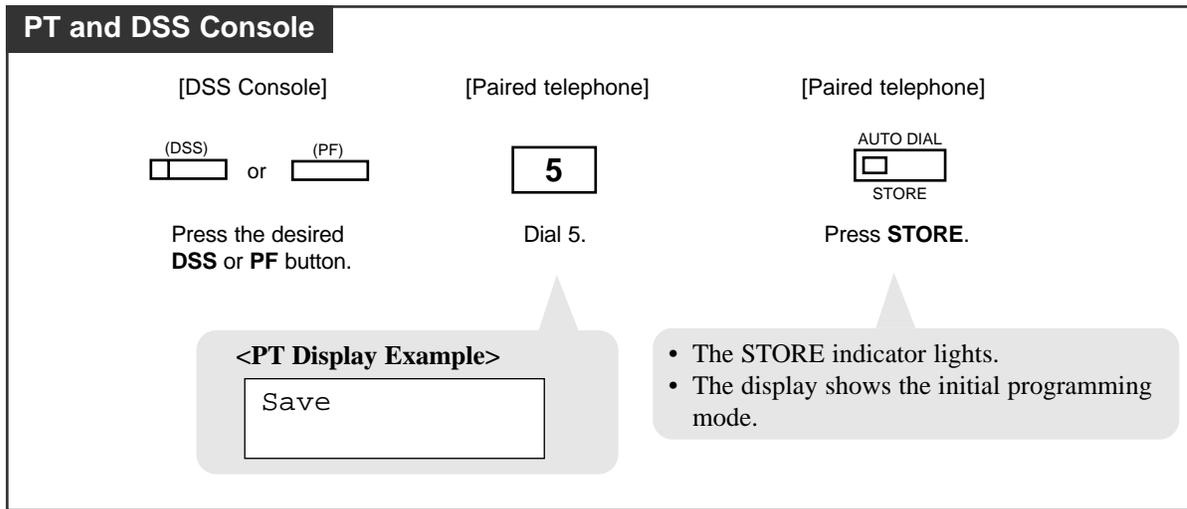
# DSS Console Features

---

### *SAVE Button (Assignment)*

You can assign a Flexible DSS or PF button as a SAVE button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 5.2

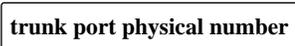
# DSS Console Features

### Single-CO (S-CO) Button (Assignment)

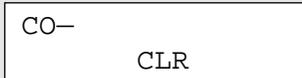
You can assign a DSS button as a Single-CO button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

#### PT and DSS Console

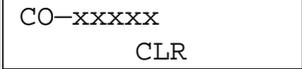
[DSS Console]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]
			
Press the desired <b>DSS</b> button.	Dial <b>0</b> .	Enter the trunk port physical number.	Press <b>STORE</b> .

**<PT Display Example>**



- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

**<PT Display Example>**



(-xxxxxx: trunk port physical number)

- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button.  
(The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

### Conditions

- You can assign the same CO line to an S-CO and a G-CO button respectively.
- An S-CO button assigned to a DSS button is available for monitoring the call activity only, not available for making and receiving a call.

## 5.2

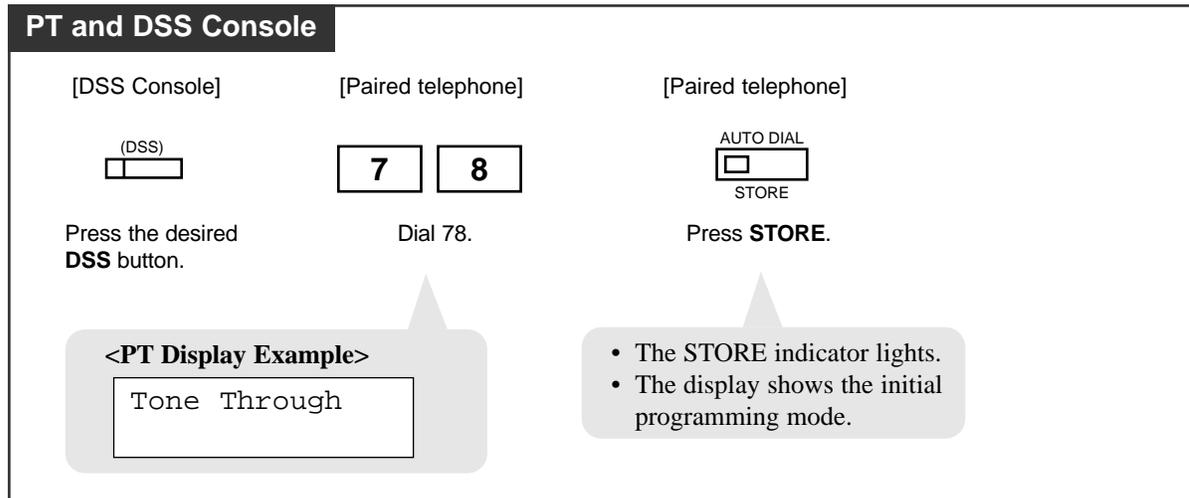
# DSS Console Features

---

### Tone Through Button (Assignment)

You can assign a Flexible DSS button as a Tone Through button.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

## 5.2

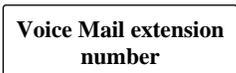
# DSS Console Features

### Two-Way Record Button (Assignment)<sup>†</sup>

You can assign a Flexible DSS button as a Two-Way Record button.  
This allows you to record a conversation into your own mailbox.

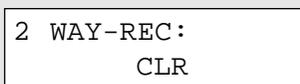
— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

#### PT and DSS Console

[DSS Console]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]	[Paired telephone]
			
Press the desired <b>DSS</b> button.	Dial 90.	Enter the Voice Mail extension number. (3 or 4 digits).	Press <b>STORE</b> .

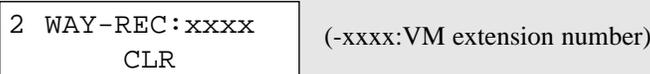
<PT Display Example>



- The STORE indicator lights.
- The display shows the initial programming mode.

<PT Display Example>



- To erase an incorrect entry, press the **CLR (S2)** button or the **TRANSFER (CLEAR)** button. (The TRANSFER button becomes the CLEAR button in the Station Programming mode.)

— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

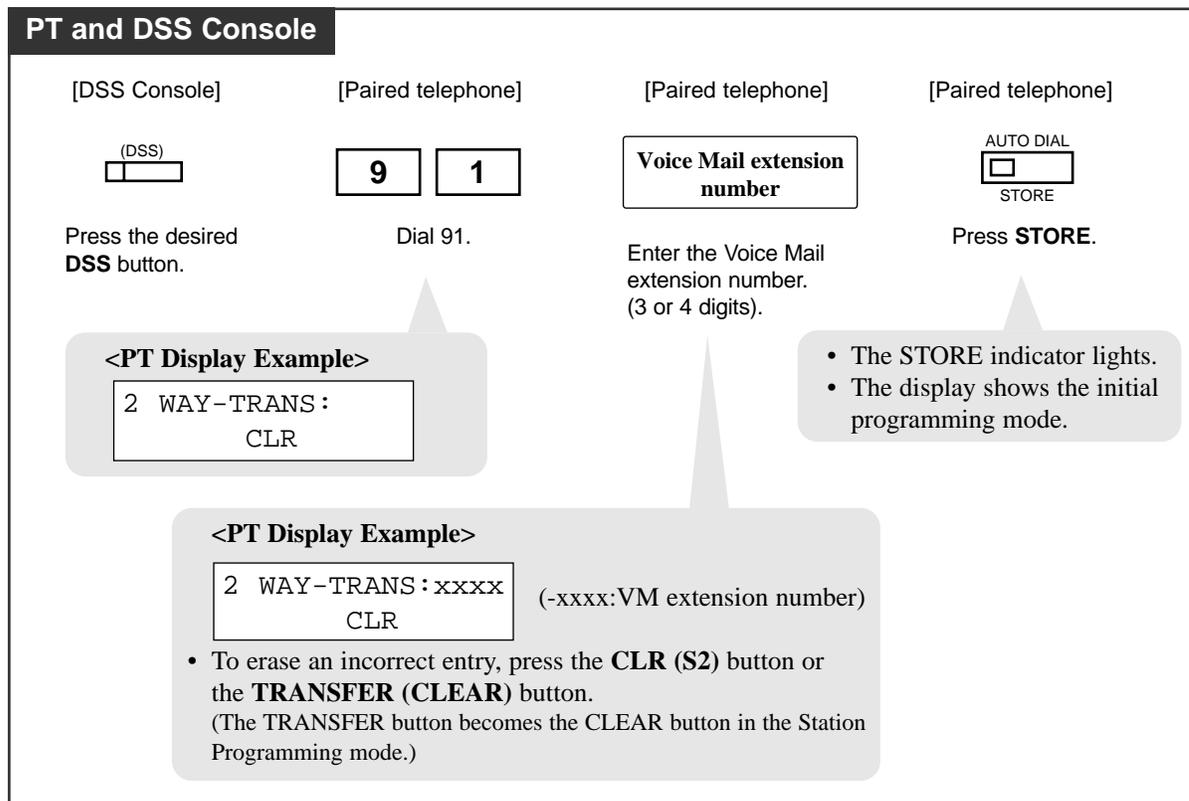
## 5.2

# DSS Console Features

### Two-Way Transfer Button (Assignment)<sup>†</sup>

You can assign a Flexible DSS button as a Two-Way Transfer button.  
This allows you to record a conversation into your own mailbox.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].



— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

<sup>†</sup>: Available when the Digital Super Hybrid System is connected to a Digital Proprietary Telephone capable Panasonic Voice Processing System. (one that supports digital proprietary telephone integration; e.g. KX-TVS100).

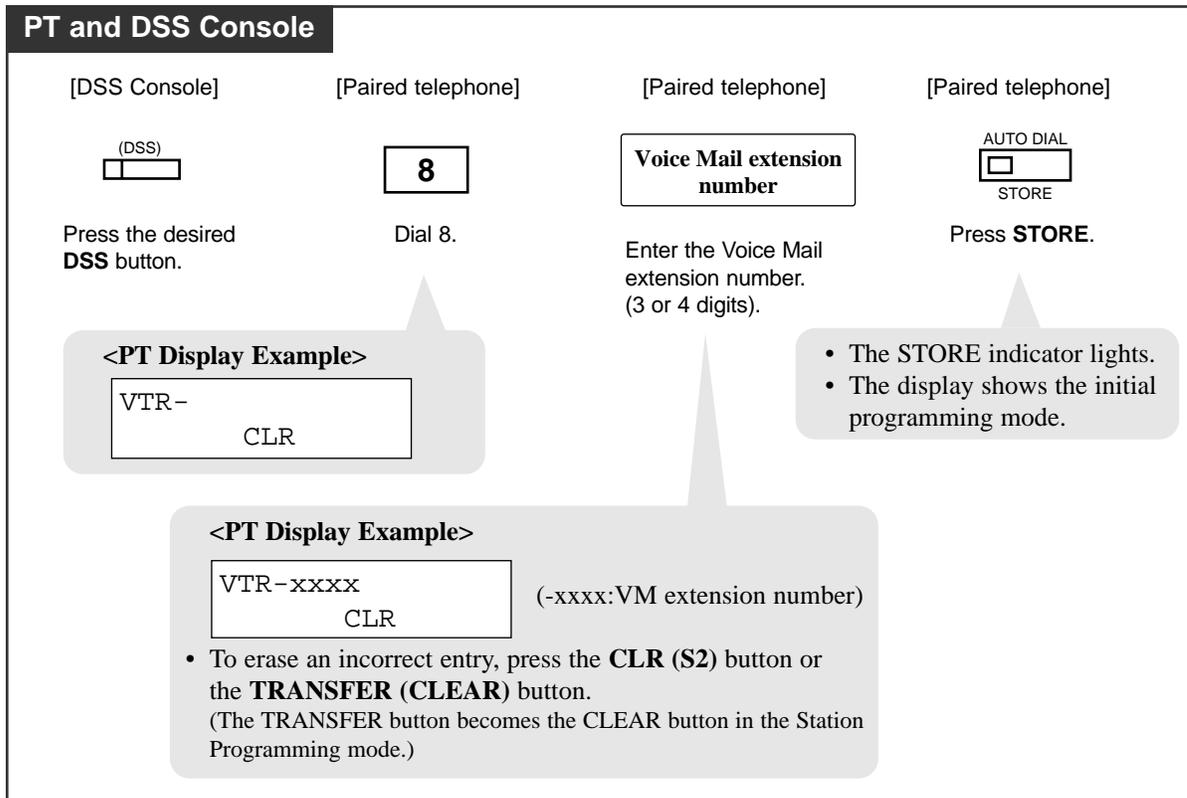
## 5.2

# DSS Console Features

### Voice Mail (VM) Transfer Button (Assignment)<sup>†</sup>

You can assign a Flexible DSS button as a VM Transfer button.  
This allows you to record a conversation into your own mailbox.

— Be sure that you are in the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM] [9] [9].

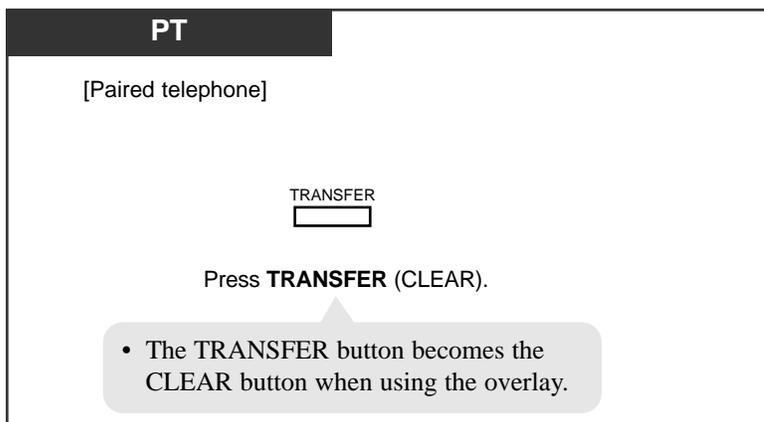
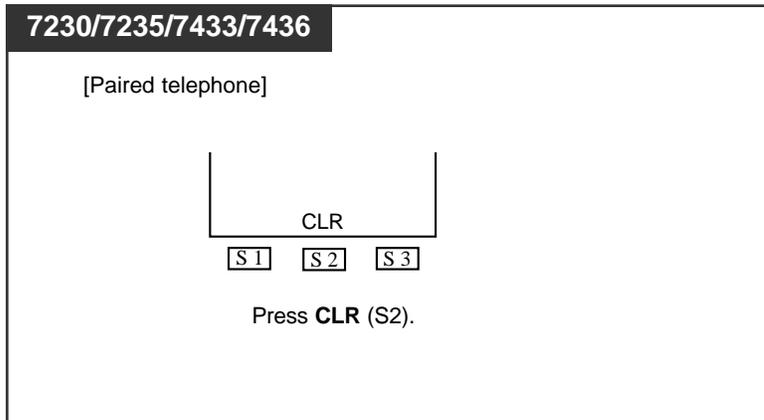


— To exit the Station Programming mode: Press [PROGRAM].

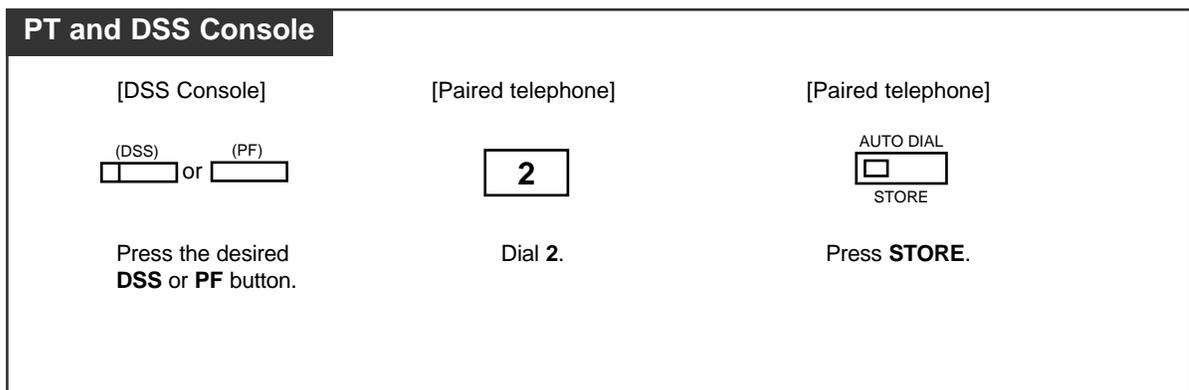
## 5.2

# DSS Console Features

### ■ To correct an error while programming



### ■ To erase after programming



**Conditions**

- DSS buttons can be changed to any of the following feature buttons by Station, User or System Programming:
  - a) Account Button
  - b) *Another* DSS Button (Every DSS button can be assigned to another extension number.)
  - c) Answer Button
  - d) Conference (CONF) Button
  - e) FWD/DND Button
  - f) Group-CO (G-CO) Button
  - g) Live Call Screening (LCS) Button<sup>†</sup>
  - h) Live Call Screening (LCS) Cancel Button<sup>†</sup>
  - i) Message Waiting (MESSAGE) Button
  - j) One-Touch Dialing Button
  - k) Release Button
  - l) SAVE Button
  - m) Single-CO (S-CO) Button
  - n) Two-Way Record Button<sup>†</sup>
  - o) Two-Way Transfer Button<sup>†</sup>
  - p) Voice Mail (VM) Transfer Button
  - q) Tone Through Button
- PF buttons can be changed to any of the following feature buttons by Station, User or System Programming:
  - a) Account Button
  - b) Answer Button
  - c) Conference (CONF) Button
  - d) FWD/DND Button
  - e) One-Touch Dialing Button
  - f) Release Button
  - g) SAVE Button
- When the STORE button is pressed after programming, you will hear beep tones as follows.
  - One beep : The entry is changed from one that was stored previously.
  - Two beeps : The entry is the same as on stored previously.

**Programming References**

- Station Programming (Section 2)
  - Flexible Button Assignment
- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.4.3 Line - DSS Console
    - Paired Extension

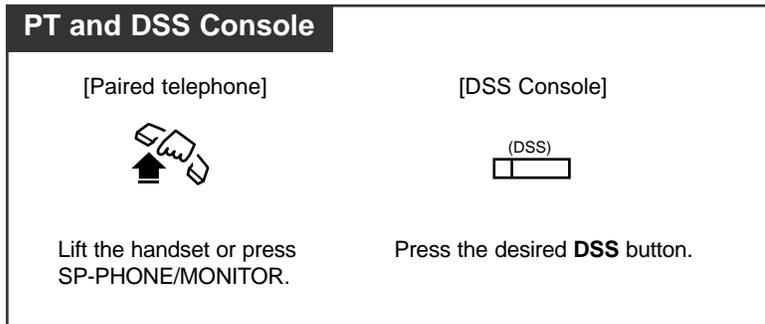
## 5.2

# DSS Console Features

---

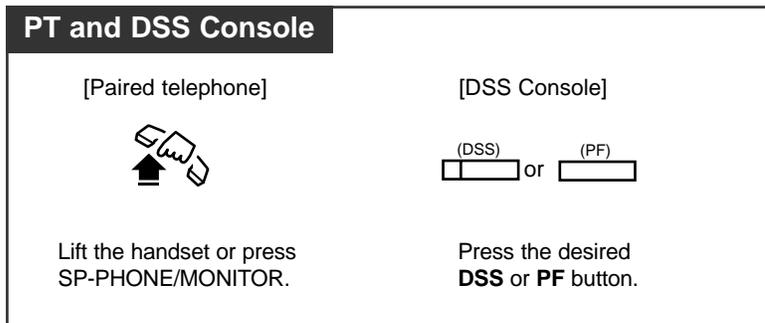
### Direct Station Dialing

An extension can be called and accessed, simply by pressing a DSS button. The BLF shows if the extension is busy.



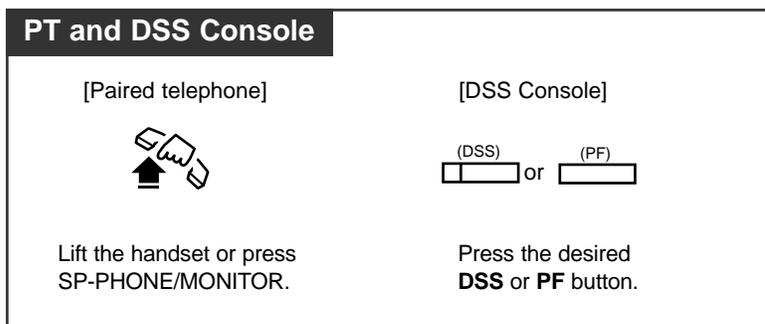
### One-Touch Dialing

The stored number is dialed automatically by pressing a programmed DSS or PF button.



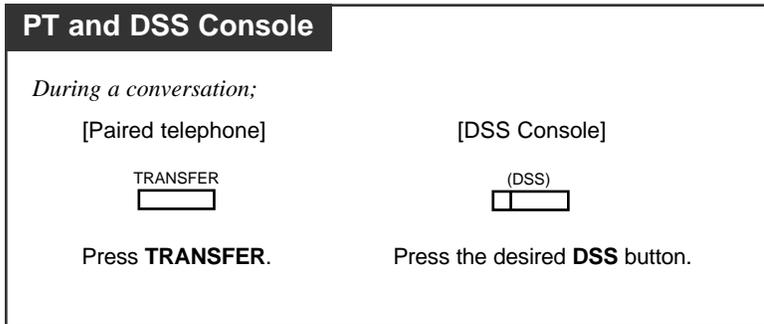
### One-Touch Access for System Features

You can access system features by pressing a programmed DSS or PF button.



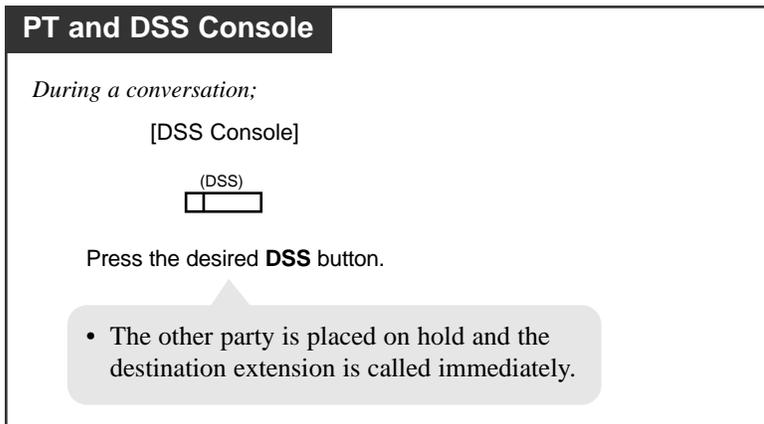
### *Call Transfer*

A call can be transferred to an extension by using the DSS button.



### *One-Touch Transfer*

An outside call can be transferred to an extension with One-Touch operation. The One-Touch Transfer function must be set through System Programming.



### *Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (25) Pressing DSS Key Operation in CO talking

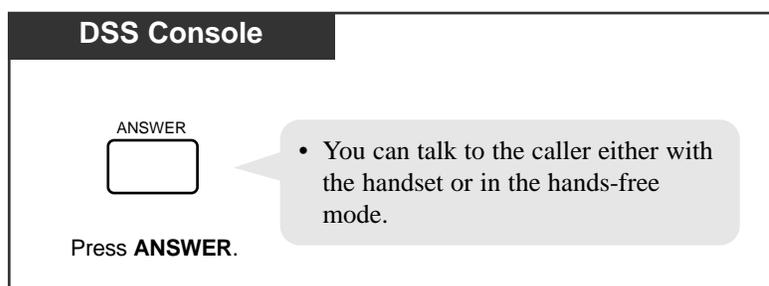
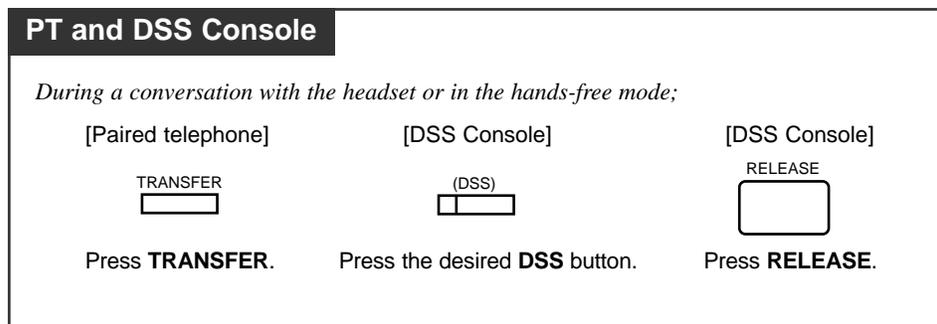
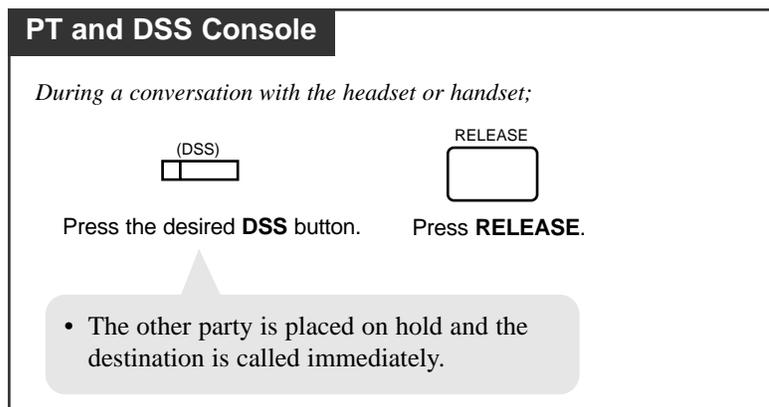
***ANSWER and RELEASE Buttons Operation***

The DSS Console for Attendant KX-T7441 is provided with the ANSWER button and the RELEASE button which are useful for operators who use headsets.

For other DSS Consoles, ANSWER button and RELEASE button can be assigned to a DSS or PF button.

With the ANSWER button, you can answer all incoming calls to the paired telephone.

With the RELEASE button, you can disconnect the line during or after a conversation or complete a Call Transfer.

***Answering a call******Call Transfer******One-Touch Transfer***

*Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.2.7 System - System Option
    - (25) Pressing DSS Key Operation in CO talking

*Monitoring an outside line activity*

You can monitor the activity of an outside line by assigning an S-CO button (See “Single-CO (S-CO) Button Assignment” on page 5-18) and/or a G-CO button (See “Group-CO (G-CO) Button Assignment” on page 5-11).

*Conditions*

- This feature is not available for the DSS Console connected to a PLC or HLC card.
- This feature is available for the DSS Console connected to a DLC or DHLC card whose LPR version is 1 or above.
- You can confirm the “LPR Version” in Section 4.1.1.3 “Card Properties (DHLC/ESLC/DLC)” of the Installation Manual.

# *Section 6*

## *Appendix*

### *Contents*

<i>Display Examples .....</i>	<i>6-2</i>
<i>Feature Number List.....</i>	<i>6-9</i>
<i>Tone List .....</i>	<i>6-14</i>
<i>Troubleshooting.....</i>	<i>6-16</i>

## Display Examples

Due to the Bilingual Display Selection Feature, you can select the display in English or French. The left part is the English display and the right part is the French display.

ENGLISH DISPLAY	FRENCH DISPLAY	DESCRIPTION
Set Time & Date	REGLER HEUR/DATE	Factory setting. — Shown on the manager's display only.
FRI JAN01 12:00A	VEN JAN01 12:00A	The current date and time are not set. — Pressing "*" while on-hook alternates between this display and the self extension number and name display.
1234:	1234:	Make or receive an intercom call, name is not assigned.
1234:Tony Viola	1234:Tony Viola	Make or receive an intercom call; name is assigned. Confirm key programming on the DSS or MESSAGE button.
2345: Busy	2345: OCCUPE	Destination extension is busy.
4567: DND	4567: NPD	Destination extension is set to "Do Not Disturb (DND)".
5678: Free	5678: LIBRE	Called by "Camp-On" (intercom recall).
3456:MDM Access	3456: ACCES MDM	Destination is modem for remote access.
1234567890	1234567890	Called by a CO line with the Caller ID*-number. * Caller ID: Provides you with a caller's information, such as his/her name and telephone number, on the CO line assigned to receive Caller ID service calls. This requires a subscription for caller identification services. For more details, please consult with your dealer.
Panasonic	Panasonic	Called by a CO line with the Caller ID*-number.
950-1001PP12345&	950-1001PP12345&	Confirm key programming on the REDIAL, SAVE, or One-Touch Dialing button.
1234:Tony Viola	1234:Tony Viola	Make or receive an intercom call after the call is transferred; name is assigned.
1234→10101:Tony	1234→10101:Tony	Called by a CO line after a call is transferred.
2345: Busy	2345: OCCUPE	Destination extension is busy after the call is transferred.
4567: DND	4567: NPD	Destination extension is set to "Do Not Disturb (DND)" after the call is transferred.
Account	COMPTE	Confirm key programming on the Account button.

ENGLISH DISPLAY	FRENCH DISPLAY	DESCRIPTION
Alarm 10:15AM	AVERT. 10:15AM	Complete to set or called by "Timed Reminder" (one-time mode). Confirm "Timed Reminder" programming.
Alarm 10:15AM*	AVERT. 10:15AM*	Complete to set or called by "Timed Reminder" (everyday mode). Confirm "Timed Reminder" programming.
Alarm Cancelled	AVERT. ANNULE	Cancel "Timed Reminder".
Alarm Not Stored	AVERT. NON REGLE	Confirm "Timed Reminder" programming when it is not stored.
All Call Page	RECH INT ET EXT	Access to "Paging — All".
At Ext 1234	At Ext 1234	Absent Message 3.
Back at 11:00	Back at 11:00	Absent Message 4.
BGM On	MUSIQUE:OUI	Start BGM.
BGM Off	MUSIQUE:NON	Stop BGM.
Busy	OCCUPE	Resource is busy.
Busy Ovrde Allow	ENT. TIERS:OUI	Cancel "Executive Busy Override Deny".
Busy Ovrde Deny	ENT. TIERS:NON	Complete to set "Executive Busy Override Deny".
C.Pickup Allow	PRSE APPL:OUI	Cancel "Call Pickup Deny".
C.Pickup Deny	PRSE APPL:NON	Complete to set "Call Pickup Deny".
C.Parked at 01	MISE EN ATT A 01	Complete to set "Call Park".
C.Waiting Off	APPEL EN ATT:NON	Cancel "Call Waiting".
C.Waiting BSS	AVERT.-PST OCC.	Complete to set "Call Waiting BSS".
Callback Ext1234	RAPPEL PSTE 1234	Complete to set "Camp-On".
Callback 10101	RAPPEL 10101	Complete to set "Camp-On".
Callback TRG 01	RAPPEL GR LR 01	Complete to set "Camp-On".
Callback CO *	RAPPEL LR *	Complete to set "Camp-On" when there is no idle CO line.
10101	10101	Idle CO line is captured.
10101:Tony	10101:Tony	Called by a CO line.
10101 0:01'15	10101 0:01'15	Duration time of incoming CO call.
10101 & 10102	10101 & 10102	Conference with two CO lines. Called by hold recall. — "Conference, Unattended"
10101: Free	10101: LIBRE	Called by "Camp-On" (CO line recall).

ENGLISH DISPLAY	FRENCH DISPLAY	DESCRIPTION
10301:AB COMPANY	10301:AB COMPANY	Received a CO call with a Caller ID; the CO line number and the CO line name are assigned.
Conference	CONFERENCE	Confirm key programming on the Conference button.
CO in Use	LR OCCUPEE	The selected CO line is busy.
CO Not Assigned	LR NON ASSIGNEE	The desired CO line is restricted (not assigned).
CONT RNGOFF BGM	CONT SONN-N MUS	Ringer Volume is off.
Contrast:***	CONTRAST:***	Display Contrast — Adjustment.
Data Mode Off	PROTECTION:NON	Cancel “Data Line Security”.
Data Mode On	PROTECTION:OUI	Complete to set “Data Line Security”.
Day Mode	SERVICE DE JOUR	Day mode status. (Cancel Night mode.) — “Night Service”
Do Not Disturb	NE PAS DERANGER	Confirm key programming on the FWD/DND button. Complete to set “Do Not Disturb (DND)”.
Door 1 Open	PORTE 1 OUVRIR	Complete to open the door.
Doorphone 1	PORTIER TEL. 1	Make or receive a doorphone call.
E1234 & 10101	P1234 & 10101	Conference with an extension and CO line.
E1234 & E2345	P1234 & P2345	Conference with two extensions.
Enter ACCNT Code	ENTRER NO COMPTE	Pressing Account Button. — “Account Code Entry”
Ext Data Clear	DONN. PST ANNUL.	Execute “Station Program Clear”.
External BGM Off	MUS. EXT. : NON	Stop BGM through external pager. — “Background Music (BGM) — External”
External BGM On	MUS. EXT. : OUI	Start BGM through external pager. — “Background Music (BGM) — External”
Extrnl Page All	RECH EXT. - TOUS	Access to “Paging — External” (- to all external pagers).
Extrnl Page 1	RECH. EXT. 1	Access to “Paging — External” (- to a specific external pagers).
FWD(ALL) Ext1234	RNV(TOUS)PST1234	Complete to set “Call Forwarding — All Calls”. Confirm key programming on the FWD/DND button.
FWD(B/NA)Ext1000	RNV(O/SR)PST1000	Complete to set “Call Forwarding — Busy/No Answer”. Confirm key programming on the FWD/DND button.
FWD(BSY) Ext2345	RNV(OCC) PST2345	Complete to set “Call Forwarding — Busy”. Confirm key programming on the FWD/DND button.

ENGLISH DISPLAY	FRENCH DISPLAY	DESCRIPTION
FWD(CO) 91201431	RNV(LR) 91201431	Complete to set "Call Forwarding — to Outside Line". Confirm key programming on the FWD/DND button.
FWD(From)Ext1234	RNV(DE) PST1234	Complete to set "Call Forwarding — Follow Me".
FWD(NA)Ext3456	RNV(SR)PST3456	Complete to set "Call Forwarding — No Answer". Confirm key programming on the FWD/DND button.
FWD Cancel E1234	ANNUL. RNV P1234	Cancel "Call Forwarding — Follow Me (All Calls)" at another extension.
FWD/DND Cancel	ANNULER RNV/NPD	Cancel "Call Forwarding" or "Do Not Disturb (DND)".
Gone Home	Gone Home	Absent Message 2.
Group Page 01	RECHERCHE GR 01	Access to "Paging — Group" (- to a particular paging group).
Group Page All	RECH. GR - TOUS	Access to "Paging — Group" (- to all paging groups).
Handset: **	COMBINE : **	Volume Control — handset on handset mode.
Headset: **	CASQUE: **	Volume Control — headset on headset mode.
In a Meeting	In a Meeting	Absent Message 6.
Locked No. :123	CODE VERR. : 123	Complete to set "Call Log Lock, Incoming". Complete to set "Electronic Station Lockout".
Message Cancel	MESSAGE ANNULE	Cancel Absent Message.
MODEM Command 1	COMMANDE MODEM 1	Complete to send an AT Command to the external modem. — "External Modem Control"
MW at Ext 1234	MESS. PST 1234	Complete to set "Message Waiting".
MW Not Accepted	MESS ATT. REFUSE	Not complete to set "Message Waiting".
MW Cancel:E1234	MESS ANNUL:P1234	Cancel "Message Waiting" of desired extension.
MW Cancelled	MESS ATT. ANNULE	Cancel one's own "Message Waiting".
Night Mode	SERVICE DE NUIT	Night mode status. (Cancel Day mode.) — "Night Service"
No Held Call	AUCUN APPEL ATT.	There is no held call when retrieving call on hold or parked call.
No Incoming Call	AUCUN APPEL ENT.	There is no incoming call when trying to pick up the call.
Not Valid	NON VALIDE	Illegal operation.

ENGLISH DISPLAY	FRENCH DISPLAY	DESCRIPTION
OGM 1 Play:28	REP 1 LECT:28	When playing back the OGM.
OGM 1 Rec.:12	REP 1 ENR.:12	When recording the OGM.
Out Until 12/12	Out Until 12/12	Absent Message 5.
Paging Deny Off	APPEN GEN. NON	Cancel "Paging — DENY".
Paging Deny On	APPEN GEN. OUI	Complete to set "Paging — DENY".
Parallel Off	PARALLELE : NON	Cancel "Paralleled Telephone Connection".
Parallel On	PARALLELE:OUI	Complete to set "Paralleled Telephone Connection".
Park at 00 N/A	ATT. A 00N.VAL	Not complete to set "Call Park".
PT-PGM Mode	TP-MODE PROG	Entered the Station Programming mode.
RCL:Tony Viola	RAPL:Tony Viola	Called by transfer recall, with name. — "Call Transfer"
RCL:Ext 1234	RAPL:PST 1234	Called by transfer recall, without name. — "Call Transfer"
Restricted	RESTREINT	An outgoing call is restricted.
Ringer : ***	SONN. : ***	Volume Control — ringer on idle status.
SP:*****	HP:*****	Volume Control — speaker on hands-free mode.
Transfer to CO	TRANSFERT A LR	The destination extension is set "Call Forwarding — to Outside Line".
Unlocked	DEVERROUILLE	Cancel "Call Log Lock, Incoming". Cancel "Electronic Station Lockout".
Will Return Soon	Will Return Soon	Absent Message 1.

*Examples — in Station Programming mode*

ENGLISH DISPLAY	FRENCH DISPLAY	DESCRIPTION
Account	COMPTE	Account button is assigned.
C.W. Tone1	TON.APPEL1	Select Call Waiting tone.
Clear Ready?	ANNULER DONNEES?	Available to clear Station Programming data.
CO-10101	LR-10101	Single-CO (S-CO) button is assigned.
Conference	CONFERENCE	Conference (CONF) button is assigned.
1400:CO Lock	1400:LR VERR.	Complete to lock the outside calls of other extension. — “Remote Station Lock Control”.
1400:ICM Lock	1400:INTCM VERR.	Complete to lock the intercom calls of other extension. — “Remote Station Lock Control”.
1400:Unlock	1400:DEVERR.	Cancel “Remote Station Lock Control”
Ext-1234	PST-1234	DSS button is assigned.
FWD/DND	RNV/NPD	FWD/DND button is assigned.
Hands-free:Off	MAINS LIB.:NON	Disable “Full One-Touch Dialing” mode.
Hands-free:On	MAINS LIB.:OUI	Enable “Full One-Touch Dialing” mode.
Handset	COMBINE	Select Handset mode.
Headset	CASQUE	Select Headset mode.
10101 <=>EXT1001	10101 <=>PST1001	Confirm jack number and extension number.
Loop-CO	BOUCLE DE LR	Loop-CO (L-CO) button is assigned.
Message Waiting	MESS. EN ATTENTE	Message Waiting (MESSAGE) button is assigned.
DAY/NIGHT	JOUR/NUIT	Day/Night button is assigned.
Not Stored	NON MEMORISE	No programming is assigned.
Pref.In :CO-02	ENT.PREF:LR-02	Select “Prime Line (Outside Line) Preference — Incoming”.
Pref.In :NO	ENT.PREF:NON	Select “No Line Preference — Incoming”.
Pref.In :Ring	ENT.PREF:SONN	Select “Ring Line Preference — Incoming”.
Pref.Out:CO-02	SOR.PREF:LR-02	Select “Prime Line (Outside Line) Preference — Outgoing”.
Pref.Out:ICM	SOR.PREF:INTCM	Select “Prime Line (INTERCOM) Preference — Outgoing”.
Pref.Out:Idle	SOR.PREF:LIB.	Select “Idle Line Preference — Outgoing”.
Pref.Out:No	SOR.PREF:NON	Select “No Line Preference — Outgoing”.

ENGLISH DISPLAY	FRENCH DISPLAY	DESCRIPTION
Save	SAUVEGARDE	SAVE button is assigned.
Tone Call	APPEL-TON.	Select Ring-Calling mode.
Tone Type-2	TON. TYPE-2	Select ringing tone for a CO button or intercom calls.
TRK GRP-03	GR LR -03	Group-CO (G-CO) button is assigned.
VTR-1010	TMV-1010	Voice Mail (VM) Transfer button is assigned.
Voice Call	APPEL VOCAL	Select Voice-Calling mode.
092-555-2111	092-555-2111	One-Touch Dialing button is assigned.

### *Conditions*

- If the displayed characters exceed sixteen digits, “&” is shown at the right-hand edge.
- The duration time display is only shown when you make or receive an outside call. Count start time for outgoing calls can be programmed as desired.
- When you confirm key programming, be sure to press a button while on-hook. If the “Full One-Touch Dialing” feature is set, dialing mode will start when pressing PF (Programmable Feature), DSS (Direct Station Selection), SAVE or REDIAL button.

## Feature Number List

Numbers listed below are the initial factory settings (default value). There are flexible feature numbers and fixed feature numbers. To change the flexible feature numbers, follow the procedures described in Section 4 “System Programming” in the Installation Manual.

### Flexible Feature Numbers

Feature	Default	Additional Required Digits
1st hundred block extension	10	00-99
2nd hundred block extension	11	00-99
3rd hundred block extension	12	00-99
4th hundred block extension	13	00-99
5th hundred block extension	14	00-99
6th hundred block extension	20	00-99
7th hundred block extension	21	00-99
8th hundred block extension	22	00-99
9th hundred block extension	23	00-99
10th hundred block extension	24	00-99
11th through 16th hundred block extension	—	00-99
Absent Message set/cancel	750	1-9 / 0
Account Code Entry	49	Account code + #(99)
Automatic Callback Busy (Camp-On) cancel	46	
Background Music (BGM) — External on/off	35	
Call Forwarding set/cancel	710	2-6 / 0
Call Forwarding — Follow Me set/cancel	710	7/8
Call Hold	50	
Call Hold, Retrieve outside call	53	trunk port physical no.
Call Hold, Retrieve intercom call	51	extension no.
Call Log Incoming, Overwrite Mode set/cancel	56	1/0
Call Log Incoming, Log Lock	57	000-999 twice
Call Log Incoming, Log Unlock	57	000-999 (same lock code)
Call Park/Call Park Retrieve	52	00-99
Call Pickup, CO Line	4*	
Call Pickup, Directed	41	extension no.
Call Pickup, Group	40	
Call Pickup Deny set/cancel	720	1/0
Call Waiting set/cancel	731	1, 2, 3/0
Data Line Security set/cancel	730	1/0
Do Not Disturb (DND) set/cancel	710	1/0
Doorphone Call calling	31	1-8

Feature	Default	Additional Required Digits
Doorphone Call door open	55	1-8
Electronic Station Lockout set	762	000-999 twice
Electronic Station Lockout cancel	762	000-999
Executive Busy Override Deny set/cancel	733	1 / 0
External Feature Access	6	
External Modem Control	791	1-5
Live Call Screening (LCS) Password set	799	000-999 twice
Live Call Screening (LCS) Password cancel	799	000-999
Log-In/Log-Out	45	1 / 0
Message Waiting set/cancel	70	1+extension no. / 0+extension no.
Message Waiting call back	70	2
Night Service set/cancel	78	1 / 0
Operator Call	0	
Other PBX 01-16	—	00-99
Outgoing Message (OGM) recording/playback	36	1 / 2+1-8
Outward Dialing — Local Access/ARS	9	
Outward Dialing — Trunk Group Access	8	01-48
Paging — All	32 / 33	✖
Paging — External	32	0 / 1-2
Paging — External Answer/TAFAS Answer	42	1 / 2
Paging — Group	33	01-16
Paging — Group Answer	43	
Paging Deny set/cancel	721	1 / 0
Paralleled Telephone Connection set/cancel	39	1 / 0
Pickup Dialing (Hot Line) assign/set/cancel	74	2+phone no. +# / 1 / 0
Quick Dial 1-8	—	
Redial, Last Number	#	
Remote DND (Do Not Disturb) set/cancel	722	destination extension no.
Remote FWD (Call Forwarding) Cancel-Once	723	destination extension no.
Timed Reminder, Remote set	7✖	1+extension no. +hhmm <sup>*1</sup> +(0 / 1)+(0 / 1)
Timed Reminder, Remote cancel/confirm	7✖	0+extension no. / 2+extension no.
Station Program clear	790	
Station Speed Dialing	3✖	0-9
Station Speed Dialing programming	30	(0-9)+phone no. +#
System Speed Dialing (for SLT)	✖	000-999 (system speed dial number)
TIE Line Access	77	
Timed Reminder set	761	1+hhmm <sup>*1</sup> +(0 / 1)+(0 / 1)
Timed Reminder cancel/confirm	761	0 / 2
Trunk Busy-out set/cancel	726	(1 / 0)+trunk port physical no.
Trunk Busy-out confirm	726	2+trunk port physical no.

# 6

## Appendix

---

---

Feature	Default	Additional Required Digits
Trunk Route control	724	trunk port physical no.
UCD Monitor mode set/cancel	725	FDN / *
Walking COS set	47	Walking COS password+your extension no.
Walking Station start	727	1
Walking Station end	727	0+source extension no.

\*1 hhmm

hh: hour (01 - 12)

mm: minute (00 - 59)

*Fixed Feature Numbers*

Feature	Default
<b><i>While a busy tone is heard:</i></b>	
Automatic Callback Busy (Camp-On)	6
Busy Station Signaling (BSS)	1
Off-Hook Call Announcement (OHCA)	1
OHCA, Whisper	1
Executive Busy Override	2
<b><i>While Do Not Disturb tone is heard:</i></b>	
Do Not Disturb (DND) Override	1
<b><i>During calling or talking:</i></b>	
Account Code Delimiter	#/99
Alternate Calling — Tone/Voice	*
Conference	3
Door open	5
Pulse to Tone Conversion	*#
<b><i>When the telephone is on-hook:</i></b>	
<i>Background Music (BGM) on/off</i>	1
Day/Night mode display	#
Time display/Self-Extension Number display switching	*
<b><i>When a CO call is arriving</i></b>	
<b>(Receiving the Caller ID information) :</b>	
Switching CO Line Name/Caller ID Number/Caller ID Name	*

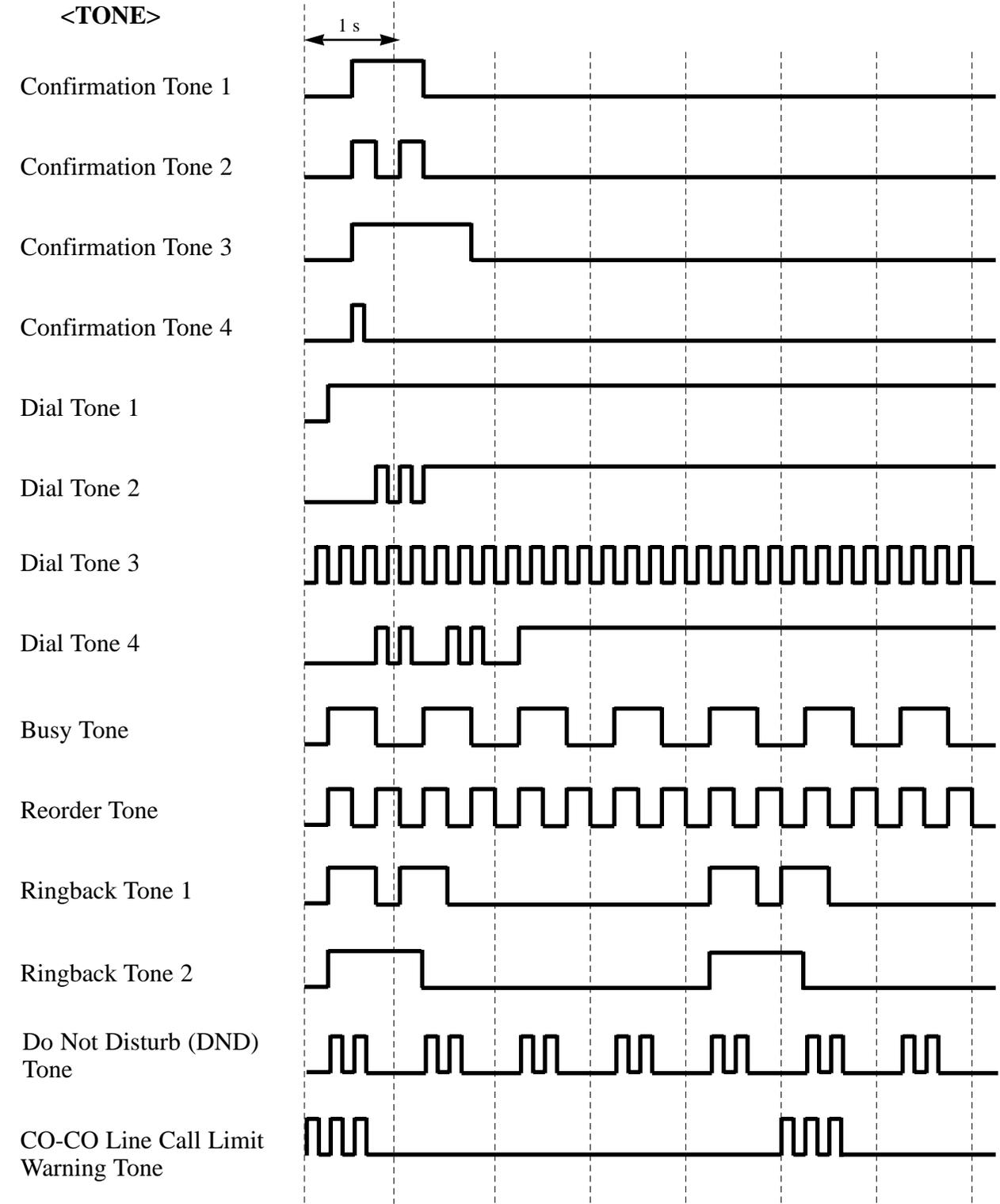
***Conditions***

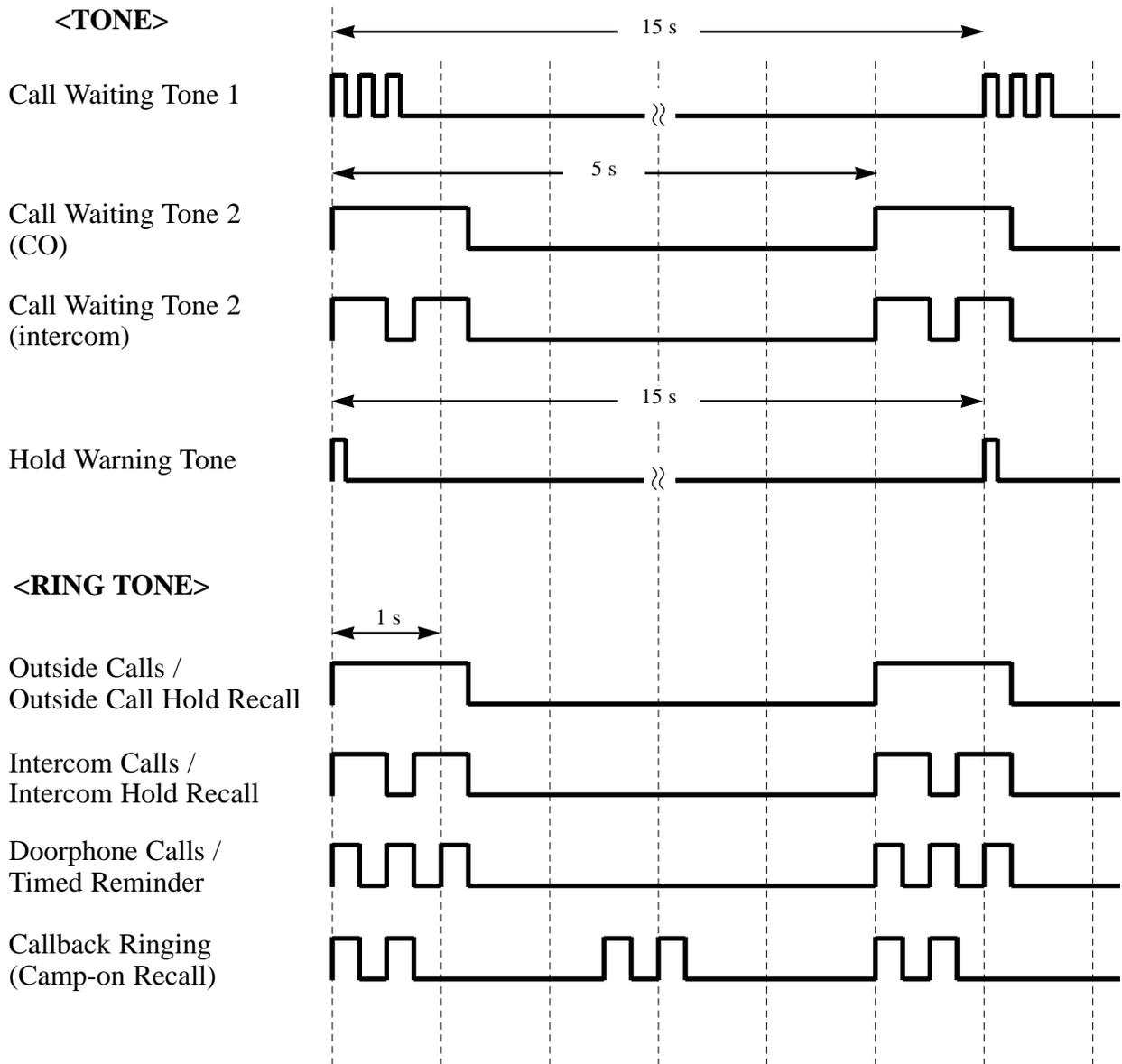
- Extension numbers can be three or four digits in length. Any number can be set as the leading first or second digit.
- Flexible feature numbers can only be dialed while a dial tone is heard.
- When “\*” or “#” are included in a feature number, it will not be possible for users with dial pulse (DP) telephones to access the feature.

*Programming References*

- System Programming — Installation Manual, Section 4
  - 4.1.3 Configuration – Extension Port Assignment
    - Attribute
    - DN
  - 4.2.2 System – Numbering Plan

**Tone List**





## *Troubleshooting*

### *If a power failure should occur...*

Your KX-TD500 System enables conversations between specific CO lines and extensions (Power Failure Transfer), and supports system data backup.

### *Power Failure Transfer*

Specific extensions are automatically connected straight to specific CO lines. This provides CO line conversations between the pre-assigned extensions and CO lines:

- All other conversations are disconnected during a power failure.
- Digital proprietary telephones (DPTs) cannot be used during a power failure. SLTs can work in the event of a power failure.
- When power is restored after a power failure, your system automatically re-starts operation, maintaining as much of the previous system data as possible.

Problem	Probable Cause	Possible Solution
Nothing is heard in the hands-free mode.	The "Headset" mode is selected.	When the headset is not used, set the mode to "Handset." Refer to "Handset/Headset Selection" in Station Programming (Section 2), or "Initial Setting" (Section 1.1).
The unit does not ring.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The CO number is not programmed.</li> <li>• The Ringer Volume is set to "OFF."</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For programming CO numbers, refer to the Installation Manual.</li> <li>• Increase the Ringer Volume. Refer to "Initial Setting" (Section 1.1).</li> </ul>
The display flashes the following message: <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px 0;">THU JAN01 12:00A</div>	The system internal clock does not work properly.	Consult with an authorized Panasonic Factory Service Center.

**Panasonic Consumer Electronics Company,**  
**Division of Matsushita Electric Corporation of America**  
One Panasonic Way, Secaucus, N J 07094

**Panasonic Sales Company,**  
**Division of Matsushita Electric of Puerto Rico, Inc.**  
Ave. 65 de Infantería, Km. 9.5, San Gabriel Industrial Park  
Carolina, Puerto Rico 00985

Printed in Japan

**PSQX1495ZA KA0999MO0 (M)**